Bit by Bit

هدية مجانية
غير مخصصة للبيع

NEW Hello!

2021

& King Lear

2nd Sec.

الصف الثانى الثانوى
التعليم العام والأزهرى
الفصل الدراسى الأول

Unit 1 Staying Healthy

Objectives

- **Reading**
  A poster about how to perform first aid
- **Writing**
  A persuasive email to a friend
- **Listening**
  A news report about medical support for athletes
  An explanation of the immune system
- **Speaking**
  Suggesting solutions to problems
  Persuading
- **Language**
  Must / Have to
- **Life skills**
  Resilience

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary with Derivatives

infect (v.ed)	يُعدِي / ينقل مرض	muscles (n / v.d)	عضلات / نفوذ / قوة
infection (n)	عدوَى / مرض	boost (v.ed)	يدعم / يقوِّي - يعزز
infectious (adj)	مُعدِي	cell (n)	خلية/ زنزانة
infected (adj)	مصاب بالعدوى	immune system	الجهاز المناعي بالجسم
perform (v.ed)	يقوم بـ/ يؤدي / يعزف/ يمثل	virus (n)	فيروس
performance (n)	أداء / عرض	organ (n)	عضو من اعضاء الجسم / آلة موسيقية
react (v.ed)	يتفاعل / يستجيب	play (n)	مسرحية
reaction (n)	رد فعل / استجابة	character (n)	شخصية روائية او تمثيلية - صفات
severe (adj)	حاد / قاسى / عنيف	operate (v.d)	يشغّل / يجري عملية
technique (n)	أسلوب فني/ طريقة	operation (n)	تشغيل / عملية
technician (n)	اخصائى تقنى	allow (v.ed)	يسمح بـ / لـ
technical (adj)	تقنى	allowance (n)	اعانة -مصروف - جرعة مسموح بها
heart (n)	قلب / محور	guide (v.d / n)	يرشد - مرشد
lungs (n)	الرئتين	guidance (n)	نصيحة - استشارة / ارشاد
brain (n)	مُخ / ذكاء		

Listening

news report (n)	تقرير إخباري	covid-19	فيروس كورونا
athlete (n)	لاعب رياضي	pump (v.ed / n)	يضخ - مضخة
athletic (adj)	رياضى	responsibility (n)	مسؤولية
educate (v.d)	يعلّم / يتعلم	responsible (adj)	مسؤول
heart centre (n)	مركز لعلاج القلب	separate (adj / v.d)	منفصل - يفصل
expert (n)	خبير	footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم
trophy (n)	كأس / جائزة للفوز بمسابقة	sadly (adv)	من المحزن
damage (n / v.d)	تلف/ دمار - يتلف/ يدمر	survive (v.d)	يبقى حيًا
fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ	details (n)	تفاصيل

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
pioneer (n)	رائد (في مجال ما)	protect (v.ed)	يحمي
heart care	العناية بالقلب	championship	بطولة
establish (v.ed)	يؤسس	destroy (v.ed)	يدمر
emergency services	خدمات الطوارئ	cause (v.ed)	يسبب
examination (n)	فحص	ordinary (adj)	عادي
Executive Director	مدير تنفيذي	serious (adj)	خطير
major (adj)	رئيسي	as often as	كثيرا قدر المستطاع
publish (v.ed)	ينشر	leaves (n)	أوراق شجر
chance (n)	فرصة	cough (v.ed / n)	يسعل (يكح) / سعال
as well as	بالإضافة الي	healthily (adv)	بطريقة صحية
cycle (v.ed)	يركب دراجة	labels (n)	ملصقات

Reading

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
flat (adj / n / adv)	مستو / مسطح – شقة – ثابت	breathing (n)	عملية التنفس
place (v.d / n)	يضع – مكان	immediately (adv)	في الحال / توا
chest (n)	صدر	CPR*	إنعاش القلب والرئتين
awake (adj)	واعي – متيقظ	encourage (v.d)	يشجع
regularly (adv)	بانتظام	encouragement (n)	تشجيع
cold (n / adj)	برد – بارد	persuade (v.d)	يقنع
fast food (n)	وجبات سريعة	persuasion (n)	إقناع
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا	persuasive (adj)	مقنع
first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية	injury (n)	إصابة
normal (adj)	عادي / طبيعي / سوي	bleed (v. bled)	ينزف
sudden death	الموت المفاجئ	reply (v.ied / n)	يرد / يجيب
close (adj)	قريب جدا	shoulder (n / v.ed)	كتف - يحمل على عاتقه
sign (n / v.ed)	لافتة – علامة – يوقّع	worried (adj)	منزعج

Language Focus & Workbook

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
bandage (n. v.d)	ضمادة – يضمد	salt (n / v.ed)	ملح - يملّح
wrap (v.ped)	يلف ضمادة حول / يغلّف	fat (n)	دهون
cloth (n)	قطعة قماش	advertisement (n)	اعلان
avoid (v.ed)	يتجنب	microscope (n)	مجهر
tight (adj)	محكم / ضيق	diet (n)	نظام غذائي
safety (n)	أمان / سلامة	support (v.ed / n)	يدعم - دعم
available (adj)	متاح / متوفر	official (adj / n)	رسمي - موظف
theatre (n)	مسرح	brilliant (adj)	بارع
blood (n)	دم	Olympic champion	بطل أوليمبي

* CPR = cardiopulmonary resuscitation

B Language study

Definitions

- **perform (v)** : do an action
- **infection (n)** : a disease caused by a virus or bacteria
- **react (v)** : do something because something else has been done
- **severe (adj)** : describes an illness or injury that is very serious
- **technique (n)** : a way of doing something with a skill
- **boost (v)** : help someone or something to improve or get better
- **cell (n)** : the smallest separate part of a plant or animal
- **immune system (n)** : a way that your body protects you from disease
- **organ (n)** : a part of your body that performs a job; e.g. the brain or heart
- **virus (n)** : a very small living thing that causes disease
- **play (n)** : a piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre
- **character (n)** : a person that an actor plays
- **an act (n)** : a larger part of a play
- **a scene (n)** : a small part of a play which happens in one place
- **sword (n)** : a long, sharp knife
- **divide (v)** : separate something into two or more parts
- **duty (n)** : something you do because it is right or part of your job
- **foolish (adj)** : not sensible or clever
- **kingdom (n)** : a country that has a king or queen
- **riches (n)** : a lot of money or things
- **beauty (n)** : something that looks nice or attractive
- **title (n)** : the official name of a job

EXPRESSIONS

free to enter	الدخول مجاني	in the first place	فى المقام الأول
miss the chance	يفوته فرصة	heart examination	فحص القلب
do something with a skill	يؤدي شيئ بمهارة	stay up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر
perform / do CPR	ينعش القلب والرئتين	take / do a first aid course	يدرس دورة اسعافات اولية
call for help	يتصل طلبا للمساعدة	put his feelings into words	يعبر عن مشاعره بالكلام
make sure	يتأكد	do / take up a sport	يمارس رياضة
normal breathing	التنفس الطبيعي	signs of injury	علامات الإصابة
divide something into	يُقسّم شيئ إلى	perform / do first aid	يقوم بالاسعافات الاولية
make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	give an answer to a question	يجيب على سؤال
for life	مدي الحياة	stay calm	يظل هادئا
in collaboration with	بالتعاون مع	take full tests of........	يختبر.......
give infection to	ينقل العدوى لـــ	miss a chance	يفوته فرصة

two-day course	دورة تدريبية لمدة يومين	check every detail	يتحقق من كل جزئية
lock his fingers	يشبك اصابعه	get ill	يمرض
have the flu	مصاب بالانفلونزا	send blood around	يضخ الدم حول
have the first aid kit available	اجعل حقيبة الإسعافات الاولية متاحة لك	take up a sport	يبدأ ممارسة رياضة

Prepositions

on top of	فوق / أعلى	rise up	يرتفع
to the right of	على يمين	reply to	يرد على
educate ... about	يعلّم ... عن / بخصوص	react to	يتفاعل مع
care about	يهتم بشأن	closer to	أكثر قربا من
disagree about	لا يتفق بخصوص	lie on	يرقد / يمدد على
in the correct way	بالطريقة الصحيحة	walk up	يصعد
put on gloves	يرتدي القفازات	fall down	يسقط
get into	يدخل إلى	fight against	يقاتل ضد
forget about	ينسى	protect from / against	يحمي...... من
press down	يضغط لأسفل	pull out	ينزع
come off	يقع - يسقط		

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word		Synonym	Antonym
foolish	احمق / غبي	stupid - silly - crazy	rational - wise - intelligent
severe	حاد	serious - strict - tough - extreme	mild - easy - light
boost	يدعم / يرفع من	improve - promote - support	reduce - discourage
perform	يقوم بـ/ يؤدى	do - play - present	abandon - avoid - cease
flat	مستو / تماما	level - smooth - straight	rough - bumpy - pretty
normal	طبيعى	natural - ordinary - reasonable	abnormal - extraordinary
tight	ضيق / محكم	narrow - close - strained	loose
support	يؤيد / يدعم	encourage - sponsor - foster	discourage - weaken - oppose
active	نشيط / فعال	lively - effective - enthusiastic	inactive - idle - lazy
pump	مضخة / يضخ	supply - push - inject	compress - contract
separate	منفصل / يفصل	independent - isolated	connected - attached
infection	مرض / عدوى	disease- illness	sanitation - purification - health

Spot the difference

damage	دمار - تلف (إسم لا يعد)	damages	تعويضات مالية (إسم معدود)
bacteria	بكتيريا (اسم جمع)	bacterium bacterial	جرثومة (إسم مفرد) صفة - بكتيري
heart	عضلة القلب	hurt	يؤذي / يضر
check	يفحص	cheek	الخد
move	يتحرك / ينتقل	remove	يزيل
boost	يعزز - يقوي	boast	يتباهى - يتفاخر
pump	يضخ - مضخة	bomb	قنبلة - يلغم مكان بقنبلة
available	متاح / متوفر	valuable	ذو قيمة
react to	يستجيب لـ	react with	يتفاعل كيمائيا معًا
health	صحة	wealth	ثروة
do / perform / carry out an operation	يقوم بإجراء عملية جراحية (طبيب)	have / undergo an operation	يخضع لعملية جراحية (مريض)

Language Notes

1 spend + فترة زمنية + v. ing

- بعد الفعل spend عندما يليه فترة زمنية نستخدم v. ing

She spends too much time playing video games.

2 Verbs & nouns

- بعض الأفعال يمكن تحويلها إلى أسماء بإضافة "ion" وأفعال أخرى تتحول إلى أسماء بإضافة "ance":

instruct →	instruction	guide →	guidance
operate →	operation	allow →	allowance
act →	action	perform →	performance

3 remind

- **remind + مفعول به + of / about + v. ing / اسم** يذكّر.......بـ.......

That song reminds me of our first meeting.

Would you remind the manager about the time of the meeting?

- **remind + مفعول به + to + inf.** يذكّر.......أن.......

Please, remind me to buy some milk on our way back.

4 Subjects & genders

إذا كان جنس الفاعل بالجملة (كونه مذكر أو مؤنث) واضح من السياق، نستخدم بعده ضمائر المفعول او الملكية التي تتفق معه - وإذا كان الجنس عام غير محدد نستخدم his / her أو ضمير جمع them / their

Each girl should hand in her homework right now.
Each boy should keep his clothes clean.
If you find an injured person, try to give them / his or her first aid as soon as possible.
All students should bring their calculators with them.

5 look forward to + v. ing / noun

I'm looking forward to hearing from you.
All students are looking forward to the summer holiday.

6 Tag questions with "right?"

- يمكن تكوين سؤال مذيل باستخدام (right) بعد جملة خبرية عندما يريد المتكلم أن يتلقي رد إيجابي بكلمة (yes) من المستمع:

You haven't got a ticket, right?
You would want other people to help you, right?

- ويمكن أن تستخدم أيضا للتعبير عن غضب المتكلم من المستمع:

This is your last chance, right?
I'm not doing overtime, right?

7 hurt / injure / wound

- **hurt (v.)** يؤلم / يؤذى
  My arm hurts.
  You're hurting my arm.
- **injure (v.)** يصيب فى حادث او شجار
  Two people have been critically injured in an accident.
- **wound (v.)** يجرح (بسكين أو مسدس مثلًا)
  The guards have wounded six people.

8 Adverbs + sentences

- هناك ظروف يمكن أن تبدأ بها الجملة ويأتى بعدها جملة كاملة مثل:

- **Personally** شخصيًا
- **Unfortunately** لسوء الحظ
- **Fortunately** لحسن الحظ
- **Undoubtedly** يقينًا - مما لا شك فيه
- **Interestingly** من المثير للأهتمام
- **Sadly** من المحزن

Fortunately, Egypt became a pioneer in athletic heart care in 2018.
Sadly, the young man didn't survive after he had an accident.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I helped the old woman .... the street.
   a. to cross b. have crossed c. cross d. A&C are corect
2. My sister spent the last two weeks .... for her exams.
   a. to revise b. revise c. revising d. revised
3. My father is going to undergo an........ next week.
   a. operate b. operation c. operating d. operated
4. If you find an ill or injured person, you must check the area around .... to make sure it's not dangerous.
   a. me b. him c. her d. them
5. Your appearance reminds me .... an old friend.
   a. to b. of c. with d. for
6. ...., the two girls got home safely in the end.
   a. Fortunately b. Fortunate c. Fortune d. Ufortunately

Reading

How to perform first aid

(1) If you find an ill or injured person, you must check[1] the area around him/her first to make sure it isn't dangerous. Then move closer[2] to the person and look carefully at them. Do they seem to be very ill? Do they have severe injuries[3]?

(2) If the person is awake[4] but not bleeding, you have to ask them how they feel and what happened. Check their body for signs[5] of injury or infection[6]. You don't have to touch the person's body to do this.

(3) If the person doesn't reply[7], touch their shoulder[8] or their foot and shout to see if they react[9], and remember to check for normal breathing[10].

(4) If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the emergency services[11] immediately[12] (123).

(5) If you know how to perform CPR[13], you have to do this to help the person start breathing again. However, you mustn't do CPR unless the person is lying on their back on a flat surface[14] such as the floor.

(6) Place your hand on the centre of the person's chest[15]. Put your other hand on top of the first hand and lock your fingers[16] together. Make sure that your shoulders are above your hands.

(7) You don't have to press down[17] on the person's chest very much - only five to six centimetres. Keep your hands on their chest and allow[18] it to rise up[19] again. You have to do this 100 to 120 times a minute until the person starts breathing again.

Arabic meaning

1. يفحص
2. يقترب
3. إصابات حادة
4. واعي
5. علامات
6. عدوى
7. يستجيب
8. كتف
9. يبدي رد فعل
10. التنفس الطبيعي
11. خدمات الطوارئ
12. في الحال
13. يقوم بإنعاش القلب والرئتين
14. سطح مستو
15. صدر
16. يشبك أصابعه
17. يضغط لأسفل
18. يسمح بـ
19. يرتفع

Tapescript

Athletic Heart Centre (AHC)

Most of us know that we need to stay healthy and many of us enjoy sports. But, some young athletes[1] believe that they don't need to worry about heart problems until they get very ill. However health experts agree that athletes must get a special heart examination[2] before they can be completely sure that they don't have a problem.

For example, in 2006, Mohamed Abdelwahab was an Egyptian footballer from Fayum who seemed to be very healthy. At that time, football clubs didn't have to check their players' hearts, but then Abdelwahab fell down while he was training. Sadly, although the emergency services took him to hospital, Abdelwahab didn't survive[3].

Fortunately[4], Egypt became a pioneer[5] in athletic heart care in 2018 when it established[6] the first Athletic Heart Centre in the Middle East in Wadi el Nil Hospital.

It was decided that the AHC had to have the best technology to check very detail of an athlete's heart. And Dr Hazem Khamis, the Hospital Director, has said that the centre will help to protect everyone who enjoys sport in Egypt, and it will work with Liverpool John Moores University to help athletes abroad.

Dr Ahmed Ashraf Eissa, who is the Executive Director[7] of the centre, also believes that anyone who does any kind of sport should check the health of their heart first. For example, the members of the Egyptian national team take full tests of their hearts before major[8] competitions, such as the World Handball Championships. And now Dr Hazem and Dr Ahmed have published[9] a book together so that everyone can understand the importance of having a healthy heart. It's called Athletic Heart: Between Dreams of a Trophy and Sudden Death.

Young athletes, and their families, mustn't miss this chance[10] to learn about the importance of heart examinations to stay fit and healthy.

Arabic meaning

1. لاعب رياضي
2. فحص
3. يبقى حيا
4. لحسن الحظ
5. رائد (في مجال)
6. يؤسس
7. مدير تنفيذي
8. رئيسي
9. ينشر
10. فرصة

Tapescript

The Immune System

Our organs[1] are the parts of our bodies that help us to do things, like the brain[2] that thinks, or the heart that sends blood around our bodies. The immune system[3] comes from the cells[4] and organs that work together to protect us from diseases.

The immune system does this by destroying[5] things that get into our bodies like viruses. A virus is a very, very small thing that causes[6] a disease. The disease could be something ordinary[7] like the kind of cold we all get sometimes, or it could be something serious[8] like the COVID-19, which first appeared at the end of 2019.

Arabic meaning

1. أعضاء
2. المخ
3. جهاز المناعة
4. خلايا
5. يدمر
6. يسبب
7. عادي
8. خطير

When a virus gets into a part of the body, a message[9] is sent to the immune system. Then the immune system reacts by sending cells to find the virus. Cells are the smallest, separate living things in our bodies and they are small enough to fight against a disease.

9. رسالة
10. يقوي
11. أوراق شجر
12. علي الأقل

Some people's immune systems work better than other people's. We all want our immune systems to be strong so we can stay healthy, so what can we do to help?

We can boost[10] our immune system by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables, especially vegetables with green leaves[11]. We also need to exercise regularly. We don't have to run 50 kilometres every day, but we need to be as active as possible.

We also need to make sure that we get enough sleep. For most people that means at least[12] seven hours every night. Finally, we must do things like washing our hands regularly, which will help us to avoid getting a virus or an infection in the first place.

We also need to do things like covering our mouths when we cough to stop other people getting an infection or virus.

Reading

Arabic meaning

1. يدرس دورة اسعافات اولية
2. القيام بالاسعافات الاولية
3. مواقف صعبة
4. خبير
5. يبدو رائع

Hi Fares,

How are you?

It's great that some of your friends are going to take a first aid course[1] next week! I really think you should join them because everyone has to know how to do first aid. You never know when someone you know will injure themselves and you'll have to help them.

You would want other people to help you too, right?

I'm sure you would be great at doing first aid[2] because you can think fast and you know how to stay calm in difficult situations[3]. You don't have to become an expert[4], just learn enough so you can help someone until the emergency services arrive. The two-day course your friends want to do sounds perfect[5].

Talk to you soon!

Mahmoud

Tapescript

Keeping a healthy heart

Of course, not everyone will become an athlete or a footballer, but that does not mean we should forget about our hearts. So what should parents do to help their children stay free from heart disease?

Your heart pumps about 380 litres of blood through your body every hour. This is a lot of work. In fact, your heart has to work harder than any other muscle[1] in your body. That is why we need to keep it fit and healthy.

We all need to exercise for 30 minutes every day if we can. We should all get lots of exercise - that means mum and dad as well as[2] the children.

Try to walk, cycle[3], swim or play games outside as often as[4] you can. Play together as a family and it will be more fun. If a child decides to take up[5] a new sport, send them to visit a doctor to check their heart first. They'll probably be fine, but the doctor will need to do some tests to check.

Eat healthily[6], too. Show your children that they need to look at the labels[7] before they buy something. They mustn't eat too much of something if it has a lot of salt or fat in it.

Eat well, do lots of exercise and you should have healthy hearts for life[8]!

Arabic meaning

1. عضلة
2. بالإضافة الي
3. يركب دراجة
4. كثيرا قدر المستطاع
5. يبدأ
6. بطريقة صحية
7. ملصقات
8. مدي الحياه

Reading

To : healthytoday@gmail.com
From : shady@mail.com

Dear Health Today,

My cousins, Imad and Munir, are visiting me again for a few days, and it's always a pleasure[1] to see them. Unfortunately[2], because they are both less than seven years old, they sometimes forget how important it is to keep clean and stay healthy. At the moment, many people in my area have the flu[3] and so these things are even more important than usual.

What can I do to persuade[4] my cousins to change how they behave[5]? They often come very close[6] to show me things, like photos they have taken on their phones or something funny that they have found. And when they cough[7], they do not cover their mouths. They don't seem to understand why it is so important and it worries me a lot.

I'm also worried[8] when I see them come inside because I don't think that they always wash their hands after they have been playing outside, touching things and getting dirty.

They will clean their hands when I ask them, but I always have to remind[9] them to do it. I have heard that young children don't usually get very sick from flu[10] and so they don't give the flu to[11] older people, but I don't know if that is true. Do you think that I am right to worry?

I look forward to[12] hearing from you.

Yours,

Shady

Arabic meaning

1. بهجة / سعادة
2. لسوء الحظ
3. مصاب بالأنفلوانزا
4. يقنع
5. يتصرف
6. قريب جدا
7. يسعل
8. منزعج
9. يذكر
10. مريض بالانفلوانزا
11. ينقل عدوى الانفلوانزا لـ
12. يتطلع لـ

Video script

How to perform CPR

Have you heard of CPR? It's short for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and it's a technique you perform on a person who isn't responding and isn't breathing. CPR can help someone to stay alive until an ambulance arrives.

So, before you start performing CPR on someone, you need to call an ambulance. Then while you're waiting for the ambulance, you can start performing CPR with your hands. This is the easiest way of performing CPR and the technique that's used the most often.

Start by getting down on the floor next to the person and putting the base of your hand on the bone in the centre of their chest. Then, put your other hand on top of that hand and put the fingers from both hands together.

Move so that your shoulders are above your hands and press 5 or 6 centimetres down onto the person's chest. Then keep your hands on the person's chest, but stop pressing on it. The chest will come back up again.

Repeat this one hundred, or one hundred and twenty times a minute, every minute until the ambulance arrives.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary & derivatives

1. A .... can make lots of people very ill.
   a. microscope　b. virus　c. sword　d. heart
2. The skin is the body's largest ....
   a. origin　b. action　c. kingdom　d. organ
3. The advertisement will really .... the number of toys the shops sell.
   a. boost　b. boast　c. pump　d. press
4. You can see the .... of an onion using a simple microscope.
   a. wrap　b. peel　c. cell　d. smell
5. A good diet can help to support your ....
   a. shoulder　b. immune system　c. chest　d. first aid
6. Washing our hands will help us to avoid getting a virus or a/an .... in the first place.
   a. infection　b. operation　c. persuasion　d. responsibility
7. We must do things like covering our mouths when we ....
   a. read　b. talk　c. cough　d. shout
8. My grandmother is very ill with a serious lung ....
   a. injection　b. infection　c. direction　d. collection

9. The young man was able to -------- first aid on his wife when they had a car accident.
a. shout b. make c. act d. perform

10. The coach of the national team apologized for the team's poor -------- in the World Cup.
a. allowance b. guidance c. performance d. distance

11. Spider bites can be serious if they cause a person to have an allergic -------- .
a. reaction b. production c. section d. function

12. The risk of death from -------- cancer increases with exposure to car exhaust fumes and smog.
a. foot b. tongue c. lung d. shoulder

13. Tragic ends are a major theme in most of Shakespeare's -------- .
a. films b. plays c. games d. series

14. The -------- of Sherlock Holmes is one of the most popular figures in English literature.
a. person b. performance c. register d. character

15. The flight was canceled due to a/an -------- thunderstorm.
a. official b. bacterial c. normal d. severe

16. Operations on animals helped to develop organ transplant and open-heart surgery -------- .
a. trophies b. techniques c. muscles d. antiques

17. You have to reduce your intake of fat if you don't want to have another -------- attack.
a. heart b. shoulder c. blood d. rocket

18. Many people who are -------- with Covid-19 got the disease through contact with people who carried the virus.
a. infected b. performed c. operated d. allowed

19. You really have to use your -------- if you want to solve this puzzle.
a. drain b. sword c. brain d. duty

20. If someone irritates you, it is best not to -------- immediately. Think carefully before taking an action.
a. contact b. react c. extract d. distract

21. The man has really big -------- in his arms because he works out every day.
a. pumps b. muscles c. bones d. wraps

22. The -------- of our body are made up mostly of water.
a. cells b. techniques c. trophies d. dukes

23. The authorities are doing their best to stop the spread of Corona -------- .
a. character b. theatre c. system d. virus

24. The world's first open heart surgery -------- was performed in 1893.
a. infection b. duty c. operation d. character

25. The doctor said that he couldn't -------- on Grandpa until his his pressure was stable.
a. operate b. separate c. bleed d. examine

26. My parents never -------- me to argue with them when I was young.
a. made b. performed b. allowed d. wrapped

27. During their journeys in the Suez Canal, big ships are .... through radio and satellite communications.
a. shouted b. operated b. pumped d. guided

28. The problem is that our team hasn't won a major trophy for the past three years.- The word "trophy" means a ....
a. pump b. infection c. pot d. cup

29. The authorities must take .... to control violence that has spread in many areas of the state.
a. operation b. advantage c. operation d. action

30. Being a worldwide talented footballer, Mo Salah has been able to get fame and ....
a. guides b. organs c. bandages d. riches

31. Too much sunlight can .... your skin and make you look old.
a. average b. benefit c. damage d. allow

32. You need strong .... to lift this box.
a. brain b. heart c. lungs d. muscles

33. The athlete has made a lot of improvement under the .... of his new coach.
a. guidance b. allowance c. tolerance d. ignorance

34. In December 2019 a new disease, caused by a virus of the coronavirus family, was identified in China. It has been officially named ....
a. AIDS b. Covid-19 c. SARS d. Covid-17

35. The heart basically acts as a/an .... which circulates blood throughout our body.
a. pump b. lung c. cell d. athlete

6. Make sure you wind that .... tightly around your wrist so that it doesn't move.
a. infection b. guide c. bandage d. official

7. In breathing, the .... muscles expand and allow air to get into the lungs.
a. nose b. chest c. shoulder d. foot

8. The police were finally able to .... the bank robbers to release their hostages رهائن and give themselves up.
a. make b. wrap c. perform d. persuade

9. I cut my hand, but it wasn't serious. It only .... for a minute or so.
a. bled b. signed c. locked d. checked

. That factory has been .... waste into the river for years, and this government has done nothing about it.
a. infecting b. replying c. pumping d. signing

Expressions & Prepositions

. I'm very worried about my grandfather. He has a/an .... illness and needs a surgery.
a. infection b. severe c. injury d. bacteria

. When the man was finally rescued, he showed no .... of life.
a. signal b. sign c. note d. fine

43. You mustn't .... CPR unless the injured person is lying on their back on a flat surface.
a. do b. make c. get d. take

44. The new car was designed, developed, and manufactured in .... with Honda.
a. examination b. realization c. collaboration d. elevation

45. To stop the bleeding, ... a bandage firmly around the injured limb.
a. chop b. peel c. wrap d. remove

46. I don't want to .... the chance to apply for this job. Would you help me prepare my papers?
a. miss b. perform c. give d. lose

47. Our social club is launching a campaign to educate people .... the dangers of Covid-19 and how to avoid it.
a. with b. for c. about d. from

48. How did your mother react .... your insistence on going to the party?
a. to b. in c. for d. with

Vocabulary with other meanings & uses

49. You are the general manager, but the real .... behind the success of the project is the designs department.
a. beauty b. brain c. muscle d. operation

50. The prisoner was locked up in his .... all day after getting in a fight with another prisoner.
a. immunity b. cell c. organ d. official

51. The .... is a traditional musical instrument that has been used since the fourth century.
a. pump b. sword c. trophy d. organ

52. The whole crew on board the plane showed great .... in dealing with the problem.
a. immunity b. character c. allowance d. riches

53. Do you know how to .... our modern office machines?
a. operate b. pump c. bleed d. sign

54. His first .... as a new president should be to end the war and improve the people's living conditions.
a. fact b. technique c. act d. guidance

55. My car was completely damaged in the flood. I want to hire a lawyer to sue يقاضي the insurance company for ....
a. advantages b. averages c. damages d. benefits

56. Egypt and the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia are .... by the Red Sea.
a. separated b. isolated c. attached d. communicated

57. My uncle bought a new house in the .... of the new capital city.
a. head b. heart c. shoulder d. lung

Grammar

Present and past necessity and lack of necessity

Necessity الضرورة / الإلزام (لابد أن تفعل)

Present	Past
- must - have (got) to - need to + inf. - need + noun / v. ing	- had to – needed to + inf. - needed + noun / v. ing.

Lack of necessity عدم الضرورة (يمكنك أن تفعل أو لا تفعل)

Present	Past
don't have to / don't need to / needn't + inf. / it wasn't necessary (for me) to + inf.	- didn't have to/didn't need to + inf. - needn't have + p.p.

Prohibition الحظر / المنع / التحريم (لا تفعل)

Present	Past
mustn't / can't + inf.	mustn't have + p.p.

1 Present necessity الضرورة أو الإلزام في المضارع

A. must

1. تستخدم must عن الإلزام أو الإجبار طبقا لنصوص القوانين والتعليمات والإشعارات والاوامر المكتوبة على لافتات:
   - Drivers must stop when the traffic light is red.
   - Motorists must wear seatbelts.

2. تستخدم must للتعبير عن الإلزام طبقا لقواعد النظام داخل مكان
   - Students must obey the school rules.
   - All the staff must wear red neckties and blue T-shirts.

3. تستخدم must للتعبير عن الزام داخلي نابع من المتكلم (يرى أن الأمر ضروري ويتحتم عليه القيام به):
   - I must attend tomorrow's meeting.
   - I must go to bed now. It's almost midnight.

4. تستخدم must للتعبير عن النصيحة القوية أو التحذير بشدة أو ما يراه المتكلم مهما جدا من وجهة نظره
   - You must see a doctor. Your injury seems to be serious.
   - You must write your essay once again. It's full of mistakes.

5. تستخدم must للتعبير عن الدعوة بحماس أو بقوة لفعل شيئ (خصوصا العزومة على طعام أو شراب او زيارة)
   - You must take a piece of this cake. It's fantastic.
   - You must visit us in our new house.

نستخدم must في السؤال الذي يُقصد به التعبير عن انتقاد سلوك معين:

- Must you wear such a necktie in this hot weather?
- Must you phone your uncle now? It's too late?

نستخدم must في المبني للمجهول كما يلي:

Agent + must + be + p.p.

- Traffic rules must be followed.
- Helmets must be worn by cyclists.

لا نُستخدم must للتعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام في المستقبل، ولكن نستخدم بدلا منها .will have to + inf:

- When my father arrives, I'll have to tell him about my problem at school.
- When you come back from school, you will have to visit your aunt. She is ill.

يمكن أن تستخدم must كإسم بمعنى (ضرورة / شيئ ضروري)

- Regular exercise is a must, if you want to keep fit.
- It's a must that all applicants follow the rules.

هناك بعض تعبيرات يمكن استخدامها كبدائل ل must للتعبير عن الإلزام أو الضرورة أو الإجبار:

- It's necessary to / - It's obligatory to / - It's a must (for someone) to / - You need to

وكل هذه التعبيرات يأتي بعدها فعل بالمصدر

B. have (got) to

نستخدم have (got) to للتعبير عن إجبار مفروض من مصدر خارجي مثل حالات نقلِ محتوى القوانين والقواعد والنظم أو اوامر الآخرين – أو للتعبير عن أن هذا هو الخيار الوحيد المتاح أمام المتكلم أو المخاطَب:

- I have (got) to write this essay for homework. It's the teacher's instructions.
- When you travel to a foreign country, you have to carry your passport all the time.

والصيغة في المستقبل هي: **will have to + inf.**

- When I finish my exams, I'll have to join a sports club.

C. need to + inf. / need + noun / v.ing

نستخدم need to + inf. / need + noun/V.ing للتعبير عن الحاجة للقيام بشيئ أو ضرورة القيام بشيئ – وهي أقل درجة في الإلزام من must:

- To pass this test, you need to / must work harder.
- The car needs washing. = The car needs to be / must be washed.

والصيغة في المستقبل هي: **will need to + inf.**

- When I finish my exams, I'll need to enrol on a summer course.

2 Past necessity الضرورة أو الالزام فى الماضى

- had to/needed to + inf.
- needed + noun/v. ing

لتعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام في الماضي نستخدم أحد هذه الأشكال الثلاثة:

- The bus was late, so I had to / needed to take a taxi.
- I had to stop / needed to smoking at the doctor's orders.
- The room needed cleaning. It was too messy.
  = I needed to clean the room.
  = The room needed to be cleaned.

Test Yourself

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All passengers on board the plane .... wear seatbelts.
   a. need b. have to c. must d. may
2. It's getting late. I really .... now.
   a. must go b. necessary to go c. mustn't be d. a must to go
3. I .... visit my teacher in hospital. He treats me in a fatherly way at school.
   a. can b. have to c. must d. a must to
4. Obeying school rules is ....
   a. must b. should c. need d. a must
5. These plants .... watered. They are going to die.
   a. have to b. must c. need to be d. have got to
6. I .... go to the bank yesterday to open a savings account for my daughter.
   a. must b. had to c. have to d. needed
7. I .... wait for my father until he wakes up to take the money I need.
   a. have got b. needed to c. had to d. have to

2- Translate into English:

١. يجب ان تشاهد هذا المسلسل. إنه رائع.
٢. يجب أن تقف بالصف عند شراء التذاكر.
٣. هل يجب ان ترفع صوتك بهذا الشكل المزعج؟
٤. كان عليّ أن أستقل تاكسي لأن الاوتوبيس كان متأخرا.

3 Lack of necessity in the present عدم الضرورة فى المضارع

- don't have to / don't need to / needn't + inf.

للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة أو الإلزام في المضارع نستخدم أحد هذه الأشكال الثلاثة:

- You don't have to / don't need to / needn't buy any tomatoes. There are plenty in the fridge.
- You don't have to / don't need to / needn't take your umbrella. It's not too sunny.

4 Lack of necessity in the past عدم الضرورة في الماضي

A- didn't have to / didn't need to + inf.

للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة أو الإلزام في الماضي نستخدم أحد هذين الشكلين لنعبر عن الشيء لم يكن من الضروري القيام به – لذلك في الغالب لم يتم فعله أو القيام به:

- I didn't have to / didn't need to buy any bread. We had a lot of bread in the fridge.
- I didn't have to / didn't need to take my umbrella. It's wasn't too sunny.

B- needn't have + p.p.

للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة أو الإلزام في الماضي نستخدم هذا الشكل لنعبر عن أن الشيء لم يكن من الضروري القيام به – ولكنه تم القيام به رغم عدم ضرورته – وهو تعبير عن اللوم أو الندم على فعله:

- You needn't have bought any bread. We have a lot of bread in the fridge.
- You needn't have taken a taxi. The bus arrived just after you had left.

Test Yourself

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It isn't .... take your umbrella. It isn't raining.
   a. must b. have to c. necessary to d. need to
2. I .... tell him about my project. He already knew everything about it.
   a. didn't have to b. had to c. not necessary to d. must
3. I .... wait for long. The train was just on time.
   a. needn't have b. didn't need to c. didn't have d. mustn't
4. You .... write a long essay; a short one would be ok!
   a. must b. have to c. don't need d. don't have to
5. You dad .... repaired the kitchen tap yourself. Why didn't you call for a plumber instead?
   a. didn't have to b. needn't have c. didn't need d. don't have to

2- Translate into English:

١. لا أحتاج لكتابة التقرير بنفسي. يمكن للسكرتيرة أن تقوم بذلك.

٢. لم تكن بحاجة لشراء كل هذا الطعام. فلدينا ما يكفي للعشاء.

5 Prohibition in the present الحظر او المنع في المضارع

mustn't / can't + inf.

للتعبير عن الحظر او المنع في المضارع سواء مرتبط بالقانون أو القواعد والنظم أو الإلزام الخارجي نستخدم mustn't:

- Drivers mustn't use mobile phones while driving.
- You can't smoke here. It's a petrol station.

هناك تعبيرات أخري يمكن استخدامها كبديل لـ mustn't / can't في سياق الحظر أو المنع، مثل:

- It's illegal to - You are not permitted to - You are prohibited / forbidden / banned to - It's against the law to - You are not allowed to + inf.

وكل هذه التعبيرات يليها فعل بالمصدر – وكلها تساوي في المعنى (No + v. ing)

- You're not allowed to park here. = No parking.

بخصوص التعبير It's not allowed فهو لا يستخدم في بداية الجملة متبوعا ب to + inf. – للتعبير عن شيئ محظور او ممنوع القيام به – ولكن البديل يكون كما يلي:

- ~~It's not allowed to smoke here.~~ الجملة خطأ

You are not allowed to smoke here / Smoking is not allowed here. الجملة صحيحة

ولكن لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام التعبير It's not allowed كتكملة في نهاية الجملة لتفسير ما سبقه من سياق بالجملة:

- You mustn't use a pencil. It's not allowed.
- You mustn't feed animals in the zoo. It's not allowed.

Prohibition in the past الحظر او المنع في الماضي

mustn't have + p.p.

للتعبير عن الحظر او المنع في الماضي أو اللوم أو الندم على شيئ تم وهو مخالف للقوانين والقواعد والنظم، نستخدم mustn't have + p.p

- I mustn't have smoked in the petrol station.
- You mustn't have parked here. It's a private park.

Say & Don't say

1- Don't say : Look at this sign! It says "Children under eight have to be accompanied by adults in the swimming pool.""

Say : Look at this sign! It says "Children under eight must be accompanied by adults in the swimming pool."

– فعند نقل نصوص اللوائح والقوانين نستخدم must وليس have to

2- Don't say : I must wait for the bus as I don't have money to take a taxi. I have no choice..

Say : I have to wait for the bus as I don't have money to take a taxi. I have no choice.

– فعندما يكون المتكلم مجبرا على القيام بشيئ لانه ليس امامه خيار آخر نستخدم have to وليس must

3- Don't say : I needn't have gone to work yesterday as it was a public holiday. So, I took the children to the park.

Say : I didn't have to go to work yesterday as it was a public holiday. so, I took the children to the park.

– لاحظ أن: السياق في الجملة الاولى معناه أن حدث الذهاب للعمل قد تم رغم عدم الحاجة اليه – بما يتناقض مع الجزء الثاني من الجملة – انه اخذ الاطفال للحديقة العامة.
وهو ما يتفق مع المعنى بالجملة الثانية – فهو لم يذهب للعمل لذلك أخذ الأطفال للحديقة العامة.

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We ---------- run 50 kilometres every day, but we have to be as active as possible.
   a. have to b. must c. don't have to d. need
2. You ---------- put on gloves before helping someone who's bleeding. If you don't, you might give them an infection.
   a. have got b. must c. mustn't d. don't have to
3. When helping someone who is bleeding, you ---------- take a bandage or cloth and press it down on the area which is bleeding.
   a. mustn't b. don't have to c. have to d. must have
4. If anything is in the injured person's arm, you ---------- pull it out because it could hurt them more.
   a. must b. have got c. mustn't d. didn't have to
5. Wrap the bandage around the person's arm. You ---------- make it very tight, but make sure it can't come off.
   a. must b. have to c. mustn't d. needn't have
6. Athletes ---------- get a special heart examination.
   a. have got b. don't have c. mustn't d. must
7. Young athletes ---------- miss the chance to learn.
   a. can't have b. mustn't c. have to d. must
8. Modern hospitals ---------- have the best technology.
   a. have to b. mustn't c. don't have to d. needn't
9. You ---------- walk up the hill because there's a bus that goes there every ten minutes.
   a. must b. mustn't c. don't have to d. needn't have
10. Schools ---------- forget about health and safety of students.
    a. don't have to b. mustn't c. must d. have to
11. Schools ---------- encourage students to check the health of their heart with a doctor.
    a. have got b. don't have to c. needn't have d. must
12. Schools ---------- tell students who have an infection to stay at home.
    a. must b. have got c. mustn't d. don't have to
13. Schools ---------- ask students to do sport without checking their hearts.
    a. needn't b. have to c. mustn't d. don't have to
14. Last night, I went to bed so late. I ---------- finish my physics project.
    a. must b. mustn't c. had to d. needn't

15. She .... work yesterday, so she spent the whole day in the park by the river.
   a. needn't have gone b. shouldn't go c. mustn't go d. didn't have to go
16. All employees .... be on time for work. No exceptions or apologies are allowed.
   a. must b. mustn't c. needn't d. have got
17. You .... wear a tie if you want to go to that restaurant. It's one of their rules!
   a. must be b. have to c. don't have d. needn't have
18. If you are under 16, you .... to get your parents' permission before taking the visa.
   a. must b. needn't c. needn't have d. have got
19. I .... go away on business. My boss wants me to visit our firm in Japan.
   a. can't have b. must have c. have to d. don't have to
20. You .... try on this blouse. I'm sure you will like it so much.
   a. don't have to b. must c. had to d. needn't have
21. You .... forget to turn off the lights when you go to bed.
   a. don't have to b. must c. haven't got d. mustn't
22. You .... make noise. Your father is sleeping.
   a. mustn't b. needn't c. don't have to d. haven't got to
23. Do you .... work next weekend? We need to spend a day on the beach.
   a. must b. have to c. mustn't d. needn't
24. Bicyclists .... remember to signal when they want to turn right or left.
   a. mustn't b. must c. don't have to d. have got
25. You .... do that, Mom. Don't worry, I'll do it myself.
   a. needn't to b. mustn't to c. have got to d. don't have to
26. Amira! .... you leave your clothes all over the floor like this?
   a. Must b. Mustn't c. Have to d. Needn't
27. The medical prescription says you .... take these tablets four times a day!
   a. have got b. don't have c. must d. needn't have
28. I .... work on my English. I want to speak English fluently, like my friends.
   a. have to b. needn't c. don't have to d. must
29. This room has been a mess! I really .... find time to clean it!
   a. have to b. must c. have got d. mustn't
30. You .... litter your father's car or he'll get very angry with you!
   a. had to b. have to c. must d. mustn't
31. You really .... stop driving so fast or you'll have an accident!
   a. have got b. mustn't c. must d. don't have to
32. Children .... play with sharp objects.
   a. needn't b. mustn't c. don't have to d. needn't have
33. We've got plenty of time. We .... hurry.
   a. needn't b. mustn't c. have got to d. must
34. My mother keeps telling me that we .... wash our hands before having meals.
   a. must b. can't c. have got d. needn't
35. I .... go to work on Saturdays. It's my day off.
   a. needn't b. mustn't c. can't d. needn't have

36. It's a secret. You .... tell anyone about it.
a. needn't b. have got to c. must not d. don't have to
37. She .... speak so rudely to her parents.
a. didn't need b. needn't c. hasn't got d. mustn't
38. My mother has given me a letter to post. I .... forget to post it.
a. can't have b. needn't c. mustn't d. haven't got
39. You .... go to the meeting if you don't feel like it. It'll be very boring anyway.
a. don't have got b. mustn't c. needn't d. haven't got
40. You .... talk to the children in a fatherly way, or they will hate you.
a. don't have to b. mustn't c. have got d. must
41. I .... for the bus because his brother picked him up at the station.
a. needn't have waited b. mustn't have waited
c. didn't have to wait d. needn't wait
42. The teacher always tells us we .... cheat during a test.
a. don't have to b. must c. haven't got d. mustn't
43. You .... spend all your holiday money on the first day. You will need money for the rest of the week.
a. didn't need to b. mustn't spend c. don't have to d. needn't have
44. I was going to write my essay about Covid-19, but I .... change the topic when I couldn't find much information about it.
a. have to b. had to c. must d. need to
45. When I was at school, we .... wear a uniform.
a. ought to b. had to c. need to d. must
46. During the strike of the railway workers last week, many commuters .... hire a taxi to and from work.
a. had to b. needn't c. will have to d. must
47. I .... be at home by 10 o'clock otherwise my father said that he would not let me in.
a. must b. needn't c. have to d. have got
48. Mom! You .... put any salt on your food. If you insist on eating that much salt, you will have another heart attack!
a. don't have to b. didn't have to c. needn't d. mustn't
49. I .... take private lessons as my school teachers are very hard-working and understand my lessons very well.
a. must b. have to c. must not d. don't have to
50. There's no hurry. You .... that report until Friday of next week.
a. have to not finish b. mustn't have finished
c. needn't have finished d. don't have to finish
51. I .... at the office early because my boss always phones me in order to check if I have arrived or not.
a. have to b. can't be c. mustn't be d. must be
52. We need to buy petrol and we have no cash, father. You .... find your credit card.
a. needn't b. have got to c. mustn't d. have got

53. At my school, students .... uniforms. We can wear whatever we want.
 a. didn't have got to wear b. didn't have to wear
 c. don't have to wear d. had not wear

54. We can't wait any longer. Something .... at once to stop this chaos.
 a. must be done b. has been done c. can't be done d. needn't be done

55. I'm really out of shape and getting fat. I .... going to the gym regularly.
 a. must start b. don't have to start
 c. needn't have started d. have got started

56. Ali sees very badly, so he .... wear glasses all the time.
 a. must b. needn't c. has got d. mustn't

57. I .... take a taxi because the bus was on time.
 a. needn't have b. mustn't c. didn't need to d. haven't got

58. The sign says "No parking". That means you .... your car here.
 a. don't have to leave b. mustn't to leave
 c. needn't leave. d. can not leave your car here.

59. You .... go to the grocery store. We have enough milk in the fridge.
 a. needn't b. can't c. have got to d. must

60. Students must attend classes at fixed times. This sentence expresses ....
 a. a general law b. a strong invitation c. a suggestion d. a rule in a place

61. Students mustn't leave the room before the end of the test. This sentence expresses ....
 a. strong advice b. inner obligation c. prohibition d. obligation

Language Functions

• **Persuading someone to do something**

• إقناع شخص بعمل شيئ

• عندما نريد إقناع شخص بعمل شيئ نستخدم التعبيرات التالية:

- It's great that + جملة	- That's brilliant.
- I really think you should	- Everyone has to know ....
- You never know when	- You would want .....right?
- I really think you should ...	- I'm sure you/they would ...
- You never know when ...	- You would want other people to . . . right?
- I'm sure you would be great at	- You don't have to become ....
- That sounds perfect / fantastic	

Writing practice

A Translate into Arabic:

1. Over the past decade, CPR has changed. The currently-recommended technique is now incredibly simple. You don't have to put your mouth on a stranger's face. Also it can double the victim's chances of surviving a cardiac arrest.
2. Prevention is better than cure means that it's easier to stop something happening in the first place than to repair the damage after it has happened.
3. The human heart is an organ that pumps blood throughout the body via the circulatory system, supplying oxygen and nutrients to the tissues and removing carbon dioxide and other wastes.
4. World Trade Organization economists estimate that all regions of the world will suffer significant declines in exports and imports in 2020 because of the global outbreak of the coronavirus.
5. When I decided to take up boxing, my fitness life got a whole lot more interesting. Plus I started to work out in order to be in shape for the sport I was doing.

B Translate into English:

تعتبر الصناعة ركيزة أساسية في تقدم الأمم ونهضتها كما أنها تعد الأساس في بناء الحضارات، ولذلك فإن استمرار اغلاق المصانع خشية انتشار فيروس كورونا يمثل عقبة كبرى في الاقتصاد الوطني وله دور رئيسي في زيادة معدل البطالة.

الإنعاش القلبي الرئوي هو طريقة مفيدة لإنقاذ الحياة في العديد من حالات الطوارئ، بما في ذلك النوبة القلبية أو التعرض للغرق حيث يتوقف التنفس أو تتوقف ضربات القلب.

تعتبر المناورة "حسم ٢٠٢٠" رسالة ردع قوية لكل من يفكر في تهديد الأمن القومي المصري، وتوضح أن القوات المسلحة المصرية جاهزة لردع كل من يحاول الإقتراب من حدود الوطن.

في عام ٢٠١٨، افتتحت مصر أول مركز للقلب الرياضي في الشرق الأوسط، والذي يهدف إلى إجراء فحوصات كاملة للقلب للرياضيين، والتي بدورها يمكن أن تساعد في التخفيف من المخاطر التي قد تواجههم داخل الملاعب الرياضية المختلفة.

لاشك هناك انخفاضًا ملحوظًا في عدد الإصابات بفيروس كورونا في مصر، فمصر حاليا في مرحلة انحسار الوباء، ويتم حاليا إنتاج اللقاح، ومن المتوقع أن يكون متوفرا خلال هذا العام.

كلمات مساعدة

decade	عقد	advancement	نهضة
incredibly	بشكل مذهل	civilizations	حضارات
victim	ضحية	obstacle	عقبة
cardiac arrest	توقف نبض القلب	unemployment rate	معدل البطالة
prevention	وقاية	Resolve	حسم
via	بواسطة - عبر	maneuver	مناورة
circulatory system	الجهاز الدوري	deterrent message	رسالة ردع
nutrients	عناصر غذائية	deter	يردع
significant declines	انخفاضات كبيرة	economists	خبراء اقتصاديون
outbreak	تفشي / انتشار	epidemic	وباء
vaccine	لقاح	receding	انحسار

Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

- What is the best way to protect yourself from getting infected by the coronavirus?

Characters

KING LEAR

The King of Britain

الملك لير: ملك بريطانيا

GONERIL

King Lear's eldest daughter

جونيريل: الإبنة الكبرى للملك لير

REGAN

King Lear's second daughter

ريجان: وهي الإبنة الثانية للملك لير

CORDELIA

King Lear's youngest daughter

كورديليا: الإبنة الصغرى للملك لير

KING OF FRANCE

He wants to marry Cordelia

ملك فرنسا: يريد الزواج من كورديليا (الإبنة الصغرى للملك لير

DUKE OF BURGUNDY

He also wants to marry Cordelia.

دوق برجندي: كان هو ايضا يريد الزواج من كورديليا

DUKE OF ALBANY

Goneril's husband

دوق ألبانيا: زوج جونيريل

DUKE OF CORNWALL

Regan's husband

دوق كورن وول: زوج ريجان

DUKE OF KENT

A good friend of King Lear and his family

دوق كِنت: وهو صديق جيد للملك لير وأسرته

DUKE OF GLOUCESTER

A good friend of King Lear

دوق (حاكم) جلوستر (إسم مدينة بشمال غرب انجلترا) : وهو صديق جيد للملك لير

EDGAR:

Gloucester's eldest son

إدجار: وهو الإبن الأكبر لدوق جلوستر

EDMUND

Gloucester's youngest son

إدموند: وهو الإبن الأصغر لدوق جلوستر

» **FOOL**

Lear's clown

...ل : وهو مهرّج خاص لتسلية الملك

» **OSWALD**

A servant

...سوالد: خادم لدى الملك

» **OLD MAN**

A man who helps Gloucester

الرجل العجوز: مساعد دوق جلوستر

» **GENTLEMAN**

A friend of Kent

السيد: صديق كِنت

» **CAPTAIN**

One of Edmund's soldiers

نقيب: كان أحد جنود إدموند

» **DOCTOR**

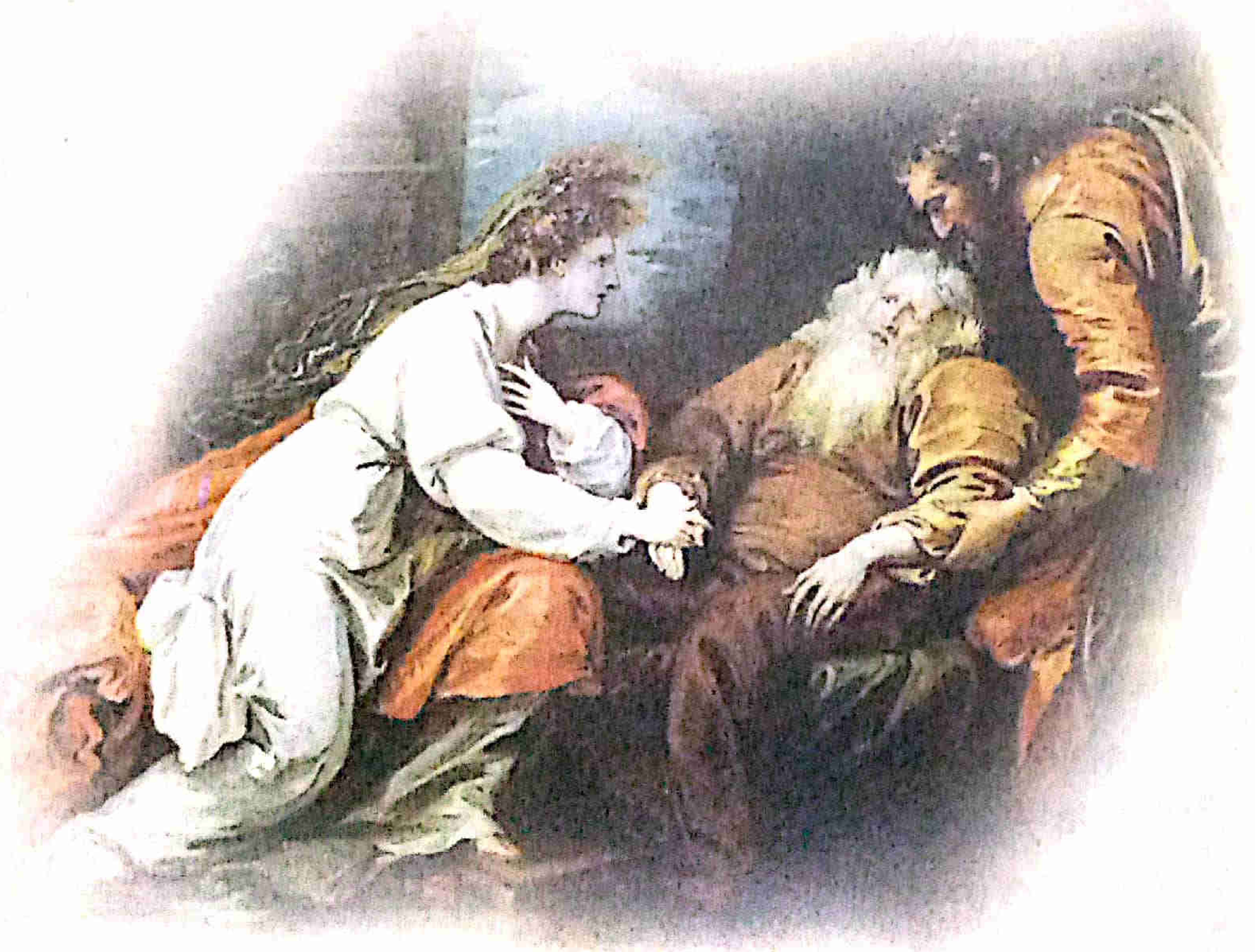
الطبيب

» **HERALD**

هيرالد

» **Servants, soldiers and messengers of the King and his family**

الخدم والجنود ورسل الملك وعائلته



Key Vocabulary

duke	دوق - حاكم	third (n)	ثُلث
act (n / v.ed)	فصل في مسرحية - فعل/ عمل - يمثل	sword (n)	سيف
action (n)	نشاط / أداء	duty (n)	واجب / مهمة
scene (n)	مشهد في فيلم او مسرحية / موقع	title (n)	لقب / عنوان كتاب او رواية
sir (n)	سيدي (أسلوب مؤدب في الخطاب)	foolish (adj)	أحمق / سخيف
kingdom (n)	مملكة	shout about	يبدي سعادة أو فخر
answer (n / v.ed)	إجابة/ رد - يجيب/ يرد	give away	يمنح - يهدي
divide (v.ed)	يقسِّم	giveaway (n)	هدية ترويجية
beauty (n)	جَمال	riches (n)	أشياء ثمينة / ثروات

Set Text

[In King Lear's Palace.]

(DUKE OF) GLOUCESTER : Ah, the Duke(1) of Kent ! Hello, my friend. Have you met my son, Edmund?

(DUKE OF) KENT : I haven't, Kent. He's a fine young man. You must be proud of him.

GLOUCESTER : I'm very proud of him.

EDMUND : I'm pleased to meet you, sir(2).

GLOUCESTER : Edmund is my second child. I also have another son, Edgar, who is about a year older than Edmund.

EDMUND : Listen! The King is coming.

[King Lear enters with Cornwall and Albany and his three daughters, Regan, Goneril and Cordelia. Gloucester and Edmund leave.]

KING LEAR : Listen, everyone. I want to tell you all about my plan. I've decided to give everything in my kingdom(3) to my three daughters, Goneril, Regan and Cordelia. I will also give an answer(4) to the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy. They have both asked to marry my youngest daughter, Cordelia.

First, look at this map of my kingdom. I have divided(5) it into three. I want to give the largest part to the daughter who loves me the most. So tell me, my daughters, which of you loves me the most? Goneril, you are the eldest, so you can speak first.

GONERIL: Father, I love you more than anything. No child can love a father more than I love you. I love you more than health, beauty(6) and riches(7).

CORDELIA: *[To herself.]* I love my father, but I don't know what to say!

KING LEAR: *[Pointing to the map.]* Goneril, you can have all this land, with its green forests(8) and beautiful countryside. Now, Regan, wife of Cornwall. What does my second daughter want to say?

Arabic meaning

1. دوق - حاكم
2. سيدى
3. مملكة
4. رد - إجابة
5. يقسِّم
6. جمال
7. أشياء ثمينة / ثروة
8. غابات

REGAN: Father, Goneril has described her love for you very well. But I have more to s... Your love is the only thing that makes me happy. I love nobody as much as y...

CORDELIA: [To herself.] What can I say? I don't have the words to say how much I lo... my father.

KING LEAR: Thank you Regan. I will give a third(9) of our beautiful kingdom to you or your children.

[To Cordelia.] Now, Cordelia, my youngest daughter. What can you say to make me give you more than I gave to your sisters?

CORDELIA: I can say nothing, father.

KING LEAR: Nothing? Cordelia, if you say nothing, I will give you nothing. Speak again.

CORDELIA: I cannot put my feelings into words(10). I love you as a daughter should love a father; but not more, and not less.

KING LEAR : But this is not kind, Cordelia. Change your speech(11) a little, or your future will change, too.

CORDELIA : You have always been a good father and it is my duty(12) to love you too. But my sisters say they only love you. How can this be true? Do they not love their husbands, too? If I marry, I will love my husband as much as my father.

KING LEAR : Cordelia. Do you really mean this? Can you be so young but also so cruel?

CORDELIA : Father, I am young but I am honest(13).

KING LEAR : Then you are not my daughter any more. You are now a stranger to me... don't know you.

KENT: But your majesty . . .

KING LEAR : Be quiet, Kent! I loved Cordelia, and I wanted her to look after me whe... was old. Now she must go! But first, call the King of France and the Duke... Burgundy!

While we wait for them, listen to what I say: Goneril and her husband Albany, ... Regan with her husband Cornwall, will have half of my kingdom each. They will have... the power(14) and riches that come with being a king. All I want is to keep the title(15) of Ki... but they will have everything else.

KENT : Your majesty,. What do you mean? I must speak honestly when my King is bei... foolish(16) . Your youngest daughter does not shout about(17) her love for you, b... that doesn't mean she loves you the least. You mustn't give(18) your country ... like this.

KING LEAR : Say nothing more to me, Kent!

KENT : I am not afraid to make you angry if it will help to protect you.

KING LEAR : Then you must go away too! Leave!

KENT : Let me stay and give you good advice, King Lear. You must learn to see better...

KING LEAR : Oh, you are a cruel man!

[He puts his hand on his sword (19)]

(DUKE OF) CORNWALL: Your majesty,(20) please stop!

9. ثُلث
10. ...طيع أن أعبر عن مشاعري
11. حديث
12. ...جب / مهمة
13. أمينة
14. سُلطة
15. لقب
16. أحمق
17. يُظهر
18. ...ع دون مقابل
19. سيف
20. جلالتك

KENT : I'll say it again, King Lear. You've done a terrible thing.

KING LEAR : Kent! You've got five days to leave my kingdom, or you'll be killed. Go!

KENT : Then I'll say goodbye to you, my dear King.

[To Cordelia.] I hope you stay safe, young lady, because you were honest. And now I say goodbye to all of you; I shall live my life in a new country.

[Gloucester enters with the King of France, the Duke of Burgundy and his men.]

GLOUCESTER : Here are the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy, your majesty.

KING LEAR : Burgundy, I will speak to you first. What do you expect to have if you marry my daughter Cordelia?

(DUKE OF) BURGUNDY: Your majesty, I only expect to have what you promised me.

KING LEAR: I am sorry, but things have changed. Sir, there she is. You can marry her.

BURGUNDY: I don't understand.

KING LEAR : You'll get my daughter and nothing more. Take her, or leave her. It's your choice[21].

BURGUNDY: I'm sorry, sir. I cannot marry her without some of your land.

KING LEAR : Then leave her, sir.

CORDELIA : Goodbye, Burgundy! I see now that you love things more than you love me, so I shall not be your wife.

KING LEAR : *[To the King of France.]* So, the great King of France, I don't want you to marry someone I hate; so I suggest you give your love to a better girl.

(KING OF) FRANCE : But sir, Cordelia was your favourite daughter! It is very strange that she has suddenly lost all your love. I cannot believe that Cordelia could do anything terrible to anyone.

CORDELIA: *[To King Lear.]* Father, understand that I show my love in my actions, not my words[22]. Please tell him that I haven't done anything wrong to make you hate me.

KING LEAR: I shall not. Go! You will have nothing from me!

KING of FRANCE : My beautiful Cordelia, you are richer for being poor and I love you more now that you are hated! I'm happy for you to be my wife.

[To the King.] Your daughter will be queen of my country. Say goodbye to them, Cordelia, although they've been unkind to you. You have lost your life here, but you'll find a better one with me.

KING LEAR : She is yours, King of France; I'll never see her face again. *[To Cordelia.]* Leave now, without my love. Come with me, Burgundy.

[King Lear leaves with Burgundy, Cornwall, Albany, and Gloucester]

21. لك حق الاختيار
22. بالأفعال لا بالكلمات

Exercises on King Lear

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. King Lear wanted to ---------- his kingdom into three parts.
   a. shout b. operate c. divide d. apply
2. The old king had a large amount of ---------- like silver and gold.
   a. riches b. titles c. organs d. athletes
3. During his life, William Shakespeare wrote 39 ---------- . The most popular of them are King Lear, Hamlet and Othello.
   a. poems b. plays c. novels d. songs
4. Lear is the main ---------- in Shakespeare's King Lear.
   a. character b. kingdom c. technique d. allowance
5. I arrived at the theatre late and missed the first ---------- of the play.
   a. action b. actor c. act d. stage
6. This movie contains certain ---------- which may scare young children.
   a. directors b. scenes c. actors d. trophies
7. Although he is 83 years old, ---------- Magdi Yacoub is still doing his duty as a heart surgeon.
   a. Duke b. King c. President d. Sir
8. A president governs a republic, but a king rules a/an ---------- .
   a. island b. oasis c. kingdom d. district
9. The problem is that every time I ask her about her home address, I get a different ----------
   a. answer b. scene c. allowance d. power
10. Yes, sir. But you still haven't ---------- my question about my exam results.
    a. replied b. reacted c. answered d. pumped
11. The teacher ---------- the class into four groups and started her lesson, giving each group a task to do.
    a. cut b. divided c. chopped d. infected
12. Sharm el-Sheikh and Hurghada are well known for their great natural ---------- . That's why they are popular with tourists all over the world.
    a. cruelty b. honesty c. trophy d. beauty
13. Please, divide the cake into ---------- . Take one and give your two sisters the other two.
    a. thirds b. halves c. quarters d. a half
14. It's the parents' ---------- to make sure their children receive a good education.
    a. homework b. title c. duty d. shoulder

15. Cordelia, the king's youngest daughter was sent away to another country and lost her .... as princess.
a. address b. name c. guide d. title

16. Well done, Ali. Your exam results are something to .... Congratulations my dear brother.
a. call for b. take up c. reply to d. shout about

17. Before he died, he .... most of his money to charity.
a. took over b. gave up c. shouted about d. gave away

18. Cordelia failed to shout about her true love for her father. This means she couldn't ....
a. give infection to her father
b. perform CPR for her father
c. miss the chance to love her father
d. put her feelings into words.

19. No one, except the police, has the authority to arrest someone else. This means that only the police have the .... of arrest.
a. ability b. energy c. power d. quality

20. Doctors must .... quickly to help patients in case of emergency.
a. contract b. attract c. react d. restart

21. Her .... ,The Queen, requests your presence at the royal palace at once.
a. majesty b. highness c. excellence d. pardon

22. You can wait for the doctor or leave and come another time. It's your ....
a. voice b. noise c. choice d. notice

23. Your son always finds it difficult to .... He often knows the answers to many of my questions, but he doesn't talk.
a. say nothing more to me
b. give his ideas away
c. put his ideas into words
d. give infection to me

24. The police arrived soon at the .... of the accident.
a. thought b. scene c. action d. character

25. She hasn't chosen a/an .... for her newest novel yet.
a. title b. address c. flat d. cell

26. The new store offers kitchen items as free .... to attract new customers.
a. runways b. giveaways c. surveys d. gateways

TEST 1 Unit 1

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Covid-19 is a/an ---------- disease which is not too bad for children, but can be much more serious for adults.
   a. precious b. suspicious c. humorous d. infectious
2. Approximately 90% of deaths from ---------- cancer are caused by smoking.
   a. mouth b. nose c. leg d. lung
3. The students are going to perform a play and the ---------- will be on Thursday.
   a. performance b. conference c. appearance d. entrance
4. In Arizona, 480 people are waiting for ---------- transplants. More than half of them need hearts.
   a. power b. organ c. virus d. brain
5. In the marriage ceremony, the bride was given away by her elder brother."was given away" here means ----------.
   a. was donated b. was led
   c. was given as a free gift d. was kidnapped
6. Passing a car on a curving road is not only ----------, but also extremely dangerous.
   a. genius b. foolish c. clever d. cleverness
7. Ali can't have stolen your purse. He was absent that day. It ---------- Shady, as he was caught stealing Mr. Salem's wallet.
   a. has to be b. can't have been c. needs to be d. must have been
8. You ---------- anyone that the key is always there in case someone steals something from our office.
   a. must not tell b. should have told c. needn't have told d. didn't need to tell
9. I must start revising my lessons for the exam. This sentence expresses ----------.
   a. inner obligation b. a general law c. a piece of advice d. a strong invitation
10. You ---------- for the interview after the conference if you are tired.
   a. needn't have stayed b. don't have to stay
   c. didn't have to stay d. hadn't got to stay
11. Oh dear, we seem to have run out of salt. I ---------- to the corner shop before dinner.
   a. needn't go b. needn't have gone
   c. must have gone d. will have to go
12. Ali! This is not the way you write an essay. You ---------- the instructions properly.
   a. didn't have to read b. needn't have read
   c. can't have read d. don't have to read

13. Your sister has the flu. She .... to school, or she might give infection to other students.
   a. doesn't have to go
   b. can't have gone
   c. mustn't go
   d. didn't have to go
14. You .... buy tickets for the concert. I got two for free from my friend's father.
   a. can't have bought
   b. needn't have bought
   c. must have bought
   d. can't buy
15. Majid .... at school because I haven't seen him all day.
   a. must be
   b. can't be
   c. has to be
   d. doesn't have to be
16. When Lucy had a baby, she .... give up work until they found someone to look after the baby.
   a. must
   b. has to
   c. had to
   d. must have

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Banking and banks are very important for the functioning of the modern world. Without banks the way we use money would not work. Banks enable people to save money, borrow money and to pay for things with ease and security.

Each country has its own banks that have branches in nearly every city so that they are convenient for people to use. There are also some very big multinational banks that have branches in most countries in the world.

As well as the local branches, each bank will also have a head office, where all central tasks are performed to let the local branches function. The people that work in the branches will be the bank manager, the person in charge, and various tellers who help the customers. There are also security guards.

Most customers will just need to see the tellers when they go to the bank if they are paying money into their account as either cash or a check. However, they might need to see the bank manager if they want to open an account or if they have become overdraw. Also if they want to borrow money and get a loan, only the bank manager will have to approve it.

As well as being able to use cash or checks to pay for things, banks also offer their customers the more convenient methods of using either a debit card or credit card. These methods are very convenient as you just need to carry a small plastic card to be able to pay for anything. When paying with plastic you will need to either sign a receipt or enter a PIN number to conform the purchase and that you are authorized to use the card.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. According to the text, what do banks enable people to do?
   a. Buy products
   b. Save money for the future
   c. Get money now that they have to pay back later
   d. All of the above

2. What is the purpose of the head office of a bank?
   a. To support the local branches to work properly.
   b. To offer services to local customers.
   c. To work with other banks
   d. To look impressive.
3. What do bank tellers do?
   a. They protect the money.
   b. They help the customers.
   c. They arrange loans for customers.
   d. They are in charge of the bank branch.
4. What happens when bank customers draw more money than they have in their accounts?
   a. They will need to see the security guard.
   b. They will have to go to the police station.
   c. They will have to have a meeting with the bank manager.
   d. They will have to borrow money from the bank.

B: Answer the following questions:

5. Which method do you think convenient when you pay for something? Why?
6. Find words in the passage with similar meanings to:
   a. easy to reach
   b. clerks
7. Suggest a suitable title for the passage.
8. What do you have to do to prove that you are the owner of a plastic card?

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- The European Investment Bank's board has approved outline finance worth €1.9 billion for Egypt to finance projects in transport and to support the small and medium-sized enterprises sector amid the COVID-19 crisis.

B: Translate into English:

أكد وزير التربية والتعليم ان كثافة الفصول لن تتعدى ال ٢٠ طالبا هذا العام كإجراء احترازي للحد من انتشار فيروس كورونا، مؤكدا أن الوزارة تعمل حاليا على إعادة توزيع حوالي ٦٠ ألف مدرسة على مستوى الجمهورية.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

The importance of performing first aid when other people need help

Unit 2 Eating around the world

Objectives

- **Reading**
  An excerpt from Old Jo's scrap bag.
  An old-fashioned thanksgiving by Louisa M. Alcott.
  Two articles about ways of eating around the world.
- **Writing**
  A questionnaire
- **Listening**
  Descriptions of international meals.
- **Speaking**
  Communicating opinions and beliefs.
- **Language**
  Comparative and superlative adjectives
- **Life skills**
  Critical thinking; Respect for diversity; Negotiation

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary with Derivatives

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
amount (n) (v.ed)	كمية / قدر – يساوي / يبلُغ	survive (v.d)	ينجو / يبقى حيًا
celebrate (v.d)	يحتفل بـ	survival (n)	النجاة / البقاء على قيد الحياة
celebration (n)	احتفال	survivor (n)	ناجي / على قيد الحياة بعد كارثة
celebrity (n)	شخصية مشهورة / شُهرة	popular (adj)	شائع / محبوب
eat out (v. ate – eaten)	يأكل خارج المنزل	popularity (n)	شعبية / رواج
get together (v. got)	يجتمع / يتجمع	rare (adj)	غير كامل النضج – نادر الوجود
occasion (n)	مناسبة	special (adj)	خاص / مميز
occasional (adj)	عَرَضي (لا يحدث بانتظام)	expensive (adj)	غالي الثمن
prepare (v.d)	يجهز / يعدّ / يحضِّر	spicy (adj)	حار
preparation (n)	تجهيز / تحضير	sweet (adj) (n)	حلو المذاق/ لطيف – حلوى
preparatory (adj)	إعدادي / تمهيدي	personally (adv)	بشكل شخصي/ من وجهة النظر الشخصية
serve (v.d)	يخدم على المائدة / يقدم خدمة	personal (adj)	شخصي
service (n) (v.d)	خدمة/ فحص السيارة - يفحص سيارة	repeat (v-ed)	يكرر
traditional (adj)	تقليدي	repetition (n)	تكرار
tradition (n)	تقليد / عُرف	option (n)	اختيار
salty (adj)	مالح	optional (adj)	اختياري

Listening

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
questionnaire (n)	استبيان / استطلاع رأي	distant past	الماضي البعيد
helpful (adj)	متعاون / مفيد	product (n)	منتَج
details (n)	التفاصيل	festival (n)	مهرجان / عيد
particular (adj)	محدد / معين	curious (adj)	فضولي
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	curiosity (n)	فضول
normal (adj)	عادى	heavy (adj)	كثيف

fried (adj)	مقلى / محمر	chips (n)	البطاطس
spiciest (adj)	الأكثر تتبيلاً	roast lamb (n)	الضأن المشوى
frying (n)	قلى / تحمير	rarer than	
prawns (n)	جمبرى كبير الحجم	difference (n)	
saltier (adj)	أكثر ملوحة	complicated (adj)	
shellfish (n)	صدفيات	instead (adv)	من ذلك
dig out	يحفر	mostly (adv)	
cornbread (n)	خبز مصنوع من دقيق الذرة		

Reading

quantity (n)	كمية	the rest (n)	
fun (n) (adj)	متعة / ممتع	chopsticks (n)	للاكل (في الصين)
customer (n)	زبون	rude (adj)	
gather (v-ed)	يتجمع / يجمع	vertical (adj)	وضع رأسي
desserts (n)	الحلويات	horizontal (adj)	وضع أفقي
turkey (n)	ديك رومي	foreigner (n) (adj)	اجنبي - غريب / أجنبي
Thanksgiving (n)	عيد الشكر	mealtime (n)	تناول الطعام
old-fashioned (adj)	قديم الطراز	lunchtime (n)	الغداء
native (adj) (n)	محلي / وطني - ساكن أصلي	tamales (n)	مكسيكية
sweet potatoes (n)	البطاطا	herring (n)	(سمك مدخن)
pumpkin pie (n)	فطيرة القرع العسلي	confuse (v-d)	/ يحير
ful medames (n)	الفول المدمس	confusion (n)	/ حيرة
eggah (n)	عِجَّة	confused (adj)	/ متحير
passenger (n)	مسافر	confusing (adj)	/ محير
reach (v-ed) (n)	يصل الى - متناول اليد	Malaysia (n)	
noodles (n)	شرائح المكرونة	whole (adv)	
extract (n) (v-ed)	مقتطف / اقتباس - يستخلص	pasta (n)	مكرونة
extraction (n)	استخلاص / انتزاع	Indonesian (adj)	
feed (v-fed)	يطعم / يغذى	curry (n)	هندي
relative (n)	أحد الاقارب		

Language Focus & Workbook

Nasi goreing (n)	طبق اندونيسي (أرز باللحم)	biscuits (n)	بسكويت
oysters (n)	المحار	exist (v-ed)	يوجد
seafood ((n)	مأكولات بحرية	existent (adj)	موجود / حي
mochi (n)	طبق ياباني	existence (n)	الوجود
menu (n)	قائمة الطعام	look attractive	يبدو جذابا
Greenland (n)	جزيرة جرينلاند	takeaway food (n)	الأطعمة للأكل خارج المطعم
the British (adj)	البريطانيون	go abroad	يسافر للخارج
taste (v.d) (n)	يتذوق - مذاق / ذوق	climate change	التغير المناخي
croissant (n)	نوع من الخبز محلى بالسكر	likely (adj)	ممكن / مرجح
quality (n)	صفة / سمة	simple (adj)	بسيط / غير معقد

B Language Study

Definitions

- **traditional (adj)** : old ways of doing things that don't change
- **eat out (v. ate – eaten)**: have a meal outside your home
- **get together (v. got)** : meet people and spend time with them
- **occasion (n.)** : time when something special happens
- **prepare (v. d)** : get something ready to eat or use
- **serve (v. d)** : give people food or drink
- **amount (n) (v. ed)** : a quantity of something
- **celebrate (v. d)** : do something fun to show that an event is special

EXPRESSIONS

keep out of the way	أفسح الطريق / أخلِ الطريق	strong smell	رائحة قوية
there's such a lot to do	يوجد الكثير لفعله	feel anger / angry	يشعر بالغضب
New Year's Day	بداية العام الجديد	control anger	يتحكم في / يسيطر على الغضب
It's believed / thought that	يُعتَقَد أن	spend time/money to	يقضي الوقت / المال لكي
as you probably know	كما تعلم	at a time	في كل مرة / في المرة الواحدة
in my opinion	في رأيي	traditional dishes	أطباق / وجبات تقليدية
fall asleep	يغفو / ينام	the idea behind an event	الفكرة وراء الحدث
take place	يحدث / يقع	look like	يشبه
for me	بالنسبة لي	show respect to other people's beliefs	يحترم معتقدات الآخرين
anywhere in the world	في أي مكان بالعالم	As one year changes to the next	مع تغير سنة إلى أخرى
they don't mean to be rude	لم يقصدوا الوقاحة		
a great deal of	قدر كبير من		

Prepositions

decide on	يختار
spend money on	ينفق المال على
lie about	يكذب بخصوص
worried about	منزعج بسبب
popular in	مشهور / شائع في (مكان)
look after	يعتني بـ
careful about	حَذِر من
on TV	بالتليفزيون

- on the menu
- talk to
- find out
- ask about
- think about
- opinion about / of
- catch up with

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word		Synonym	Antonym
amount	كمية / قدر	quantity / volume / equal / approximate	–
fun	متعة / ممتع	amusement / pleasure / amusing	boredom / boring
get together	يجتمع / يتجمع	assemble / gather	scatter / separate
serve	يخدم على المائدة	supply / provide	hold / keep
traditional	تقليدي	customary / conventional	modern / novel / contemporary
survive	ينجو / يبقى على قيد الحياة	live / exist	die
popular	شائع / محبوب	common	uncommon
rare	غير كامل النضج / نادر الوجود	scarce	common
special	خاص / مميز	unique / exceptional	common / ordinary / normal
ill	مريض	sick / bad	healthy / good

Spot the difference

customer (n)	زبون	customary (adj)	مألوف
turkey (n)	ديك رومي	Turkey	دولة تركيا
lie about	يكذب بخصوص	lie to	يكذب على شخص
desserts	حلويات	deserts	صحارى
personally (adv)	بشكل شخصي	personal (adj)	شخصي
questionnaire	استبيان / استطلاع رأي	question	سؤال
serve (v)	يخدم / يقدم طعام	severe (adj)	حاد / قاسي
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	collaborate	يتعاون / يشارك
quantity	كمية	quality	سمة / صفة / جودة
asleep	نائم	sleepy	نعسان / خامل

Language Notes

1 amount / quantity

كمية / قدر

- تستخدم كلمة amount of / quantity of كإسم ويليها إسم مفرد غير معدود ويمكن ايضا اسم جمع معدود ثم فعل مفرد:

A large amount / quantity of money was spent on this project.

This large amount / quantity of books needs a great deal of time to read.

- عند استخدام amounts / quantities (جمع) نستخدم بعدها فعل جمع:

Very large amounts of money are required.

- لا تستخدم الصفات big / little قبل الكلمتين، ولكن نستخدم large / huge / small:

Use only a small amount of water at first.

The army needs huge quantities of weapons.

- عند الحديث عن أشخاص أو أشياء لها كيانات كبيرة لا نستخدم amount / quantity – ولكن نستخدم number:

There was a large number of people / of chairs in the room.

(~~NOT amount/quantity of people~~)

2 can / be able to

يستطيع أن / قادر على أن

- تستخدم الكلمتان للتعبير عن القدرة على فعل شيئ في المضارع – مع ملاحظة أن can اكثر شيوعا في الاستخدام:

She can / is able to speak English well.

I can / am able to swim across that stream.

- عند الحديث عن القدرة في الماضي على القيام بشيئ عام بصفة عامة، نستخدم could / be able to مع ملاحظة أن could أكثر شيوعا في الاستخدام:

She could / was able to read when she was three.

- عند الحديث عن التمكن من القيام بشيئ أو إنجاز شيئ في موقف محدد في الماضي (يتضمن صعوبة)، لا نستخدم could، ولكن نستخدم be able to / managed to / succeeded in + v. ing:

I was able to get some really good bargains in the sale.

(~~NOT I could get some really good bargains in the sale.~~)

After climbing for several hours, we managed to / were able to get to the top of the mountain.

(~~NOT ... we could get to the top of the mountain.~~)

- عند نفي القدرة على القيام بشيئ في الماضي سواء بصفة عامة أو في موقف محدد، نستخدم could / be able to – كلاهما صحيح:

In spite of climbing for hours, we couldn't / weren't able to get to the top of the mountain.

3 ill / sick

يخدم الكلمتان بمعنى (مريض) بعد الافعال be / become دون استخدام إسم موصوف بعدهما:

Manal is ill and can't come to school.

Your uncle became very sick after his picnic.

إسم موصوف نستخدم sick ويجوز أيضًا استخدام ill قبل اسم موصوف

She was at home looking after her sick / ill baby.

يستخدم ill إذا سبقها ظرف:

This ward is for mentally ill patients.

وكان السياق بمعنى (رديئ / سيئ / شرير)، نستخدم ill ويليها إسم:

He suffered ill treatment from his step father.

صيغة المقارنة من الصفتين ill / sick هي worse وصيغة التفضيل هي worst:

I felt ill / sick in the morning, but in the afternoon I felt worse. So, I had to see a doc

يستخدم sick أيضا بمعنى (يتقيأ vomit):

The girl ate so much that she was sick.

4 inheritance / heritage

ميراث

في حالة الحديث عن الميراث المادي من ثروة أو عقار أو ما شابه، نستخدم inheritance:

He was not a good son, so he did not receive any inheritance when his father died.

في حالة الحديث عن الميراث المعنوي من عادات وتقاليد ومعتقدات وأمجاد موروثة من الماضي نستخدم heritage / inheritance

We should be proud of our cultural inheritance / heritage.

5 spend money to + inf. / spend money on + v. ing

ينفق المال لكي.... / ينفق المال على ...

He spent a lot of money to decorate his new house.

He spent a lot of money on the decorations of his new house.

He spent $ 2000 to get a visa.

He spent $ 2000 on the visa.

6 a good bearkfast / lunch / dinner

أسماء الوجبات اليومية (breakfast / lunch / dinner) لا تسبقها أداة النكرة (a / an) إلا إذا سبقها صفة – وكذلك لا تسبقها أداة التعريف (the) إلا إذا كان بالسياق ما يفيد التحديد:

She had a good breakfast before going to school.

The lunch we had yesterday at my uncle's was very delicious.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I have read a large .... of books over the past five years.
a. amount b. quality c. quantity d. A & C are correct

2- We have only a .... amount of sugar. You need to go and buy us some.
a. small b. little c. big d. large

3- Having trained very well, I .... win the squash game last night.
a. can b. could c. succeeded in d. was able to

4- Don't worry. These pills have no .... effects.
a. sick b. ill c. injured d. wounded

5- Her .... consisted of a large amount of money and several cars
a. heritage b. heir c. inheritance d. inherit

6- .... breakfast is an essential meal, especially for children.
a. The b. A c. An d. No Word

Reading

An Old-Fashioned Thanksgiving

In September 1620, a ship called the Mayflower arrived in North America with 102 passengers(1). Many died, but some were able to grow food and survive(2) with help from Native(3) Americans. Thanksgiving(4) is a day when families get together(5) to remember these events(6). It is celebrated(7) in the USA every year on the fourth Thursday in November.

In 1882, Louisa M. Alcott wrote a short story called An Old-fashioned(8) Thanksgiving. Here is an extract(9):

When the woke, there was still a large amount(10) of snow outside. Tilly made a good breakfast for the seven children.

"Now, about dinner" she said as they all finished eating. "Ma said that we could have whatever we liked, but she didn't expect us to have a traditional(11) Thanksgiving dinner."

"Have you ever cooked a turkey(12)?" asked Roxy "Ma said I should decide what to do," replied Tilly. "All you children have to do is keep out of the way(13), and let Prue and me work."

The younger children walked out of the kitchen and into another room. As Tilly and Prue started to prepare(14) the big meal, they got out all the spoons, dishes, pots and pans that they could find.

"Now, sister, we'll have dinner at five," said Tilly. "Pa will be here by that time and he'll be surprised to find us ready to serve(15) the food. There's such a lot to do(16), and I'm a bit worried about the turkey. It's so big!"

"I know" said Prue. "I fed it all summer and now it will feed me," she laughed.

Arabic meaning

1. مسافرون / ركاب
2. يبقى حيًا
3. ساكن أصلي (غير وافد)
4. عيد الشكر
5. يجتمع
6. أحداث
7. يُحتفل به
8. قديم الطراز
9. اقتباس
10. كمية
11. تقليدي
12. ديك رومي
13. أخل الطريق / أفسح الطريق
14. يجهز / يحضر
15. يقدم الطعام
16. هناك الكثير للقيام به

Tapescript

Amy : So, did you ask your parents about visiting our home for Thanksgiving, Hoda?

Hoda : Yes. They like me to try new things and they thought it would be a great idea. My mum was very curious(1) about the food you eat.

Amy : You'll love the food at Thanksgiving, Hoda. Have you had turkey(2) before? It's a lot like chicken but it's very big.

Hoda : Well , I like chicken, so that should be okay. What else do you have?

Amy : We have a special kind of bread, called cornbread(3) . It's delicious(4), And we have sweet potatoes(5). They're like normal(6) potatoes, but much nicer.

Hoda : That sounds great. What do you have for dessert(7)?

Amy : My mum makes the most wonderful pumpkin pie(8). It's very sweet and heavy(9)! Sometimes I fall asleep(10) after I eat it, so I'll try not to eat too mu

Hoda : Now I'm feeling hungry.

Amy : Me too. But the best thing about Thanksgiving is that we all have to help with the cooking. It's a great time to meet and catch up with(11) friends and family. That's why we're all really looking forward to seeing you.

Hoda : Great. I can't wait!

Arabic meaning
1. فضولى
2. ديك رومى
3. خبز من الذرة
4. لذيذ
5. بطاطا
6. عادى
7. حلو بعد الأكل
8. فطيرة اليقطين
9. كثيف
10. يغفو / ينام
11. ينضم الى

Tapescript

Nasi goreng

Nasi goring(1)! is a meal with rice from Indonesia. In fact, the words 'nasi goreng' mean fried(2) rice' in Indonesian.

Many people believe that Nasi goreng is one of the spiciest(3) meals in Indonesia, but for most people it's simply the best meal you can eat. Nasi goreng is made by frying(4) rice and adding vegetables and either chicken or prawns(5) to the pan. It's a bit saltier(6) than some other Indonesian meals and it often comes with a fried egg on top. Nasi goreng is usually cheaper than most other meals in Indonesia. You can get it either in restaurants or from people who cook food on the side of the road.

Oysters

Oysters(7) are a type of shellfish(8) that people dig out(9) of the earth under the sea. They're rarer than(10) most other types of seafood(11) and you can only eat them for seven months of the year. During these months, thousands of oysters are eaten in France because many people believe they're one of the most special foods you can eat. This means that oysters are usually one of the most expensive meals on the menu in French restaurants.

Arabic meaning
1. جورنج (أكلة أندونيسية)
2. مقلى / محمر
3. الأكثر تتبيلا
4. قلى / تحمير
5. جمبرى كبير الحجم
6. أكثر ملوحة
7. محار
8. صدفيات
9. يحفر
10. أكثر ندرة من
11. أطعمة البحر (سى فورد)

Mochi

Mochi[12] are sweet, round rice cakes which are smaller than most of the cakes people eat. They look like little balls and they're made in many different colours. In Japan, where they come from, mochi are the most popular[13] type of cake and the Japanese eat large amounts[14] of them. Mochi were first made about one thousand years ago and people thought that they brought good luck. Today, different colours and types of mochi are more popular than others on different special occasions[15].

For example, when the Japanese celebrate New Year's Day, flat[16], white mochi is the most popular type of mochi to eat.

12. موتشي (كعك ياباني)
13. شائع
14. كميات
15. مناسبات
16. مسطح

Tapescript

When you're writing a questionnaire[1], you need to ask the right questions. Some questions are a lot more useful than others. And, very often, small changes to a questionnaire can make a lot of difference[2].

Firstly, it's important that the questions are easy to understand, so it's always helpful to use simple language. If you use complicated[3] language, people will need to read or hear the questions two or three times.

Secondly, it's important to use words with clear meanings. Words like 'most' and 'many' mean different things to different people. So, use words that are easier to understand, such as 'almost all' and 'almost none' instead[4]. Thirdly, don't have too many options[5]. People get confused[6] when there are more than six options to choose from.

Don't ask personal[7] questions, like questions about money. People don't like talking about these things.

Remember to ask one question at a time. Don't put two questions into one, for example: 'How often do you eat out with your family? Some people will eat out quite often, but not with their family. And others might eat with their family all the time, but only at home.

Finally, make sure the answers to your questions are easy to remember.

Don't ask about events in the distant[8] past, especially if they are about something that was boring.

Then, when you know the questions you want to ask, think about the best time to ask people. If you're going to ask people about a recent event, for example, do it before they start to forget.

Arabic meaning

1. استبيان
2. اختلاف
3. معقد
4. بدلا من ذلك
5. خيارات
6. مرتبك / متحير
7. شخصي
8. بعيد

Tapescript

Food in the UK

The UK did not used to be known for its good food, but it has got a lot better in recent years. Probably the most popular dish is fish and chips[1].The fish and potatoes are fried and they are usually very salty. Fish and chips is usually cheaper than most other takeaway food[2], too. The British[3] also like spicy food. Indian food is usually the spiciest and Indian restaurants are very popular.

One of the most traditional dishes in the UK is roast lamb[4], which people often eat for Sunday lunch with potatoes and vegetables. The British also like a lot of sweet things such as ice cream. In 2018, the British ate more 320,000 ice creams. They mostly[5] eat ice cream in the summer when the weather is h

Arabic m
1. البطاطس
2. وجبات سريعة
3. البريطانيون
4. لحم الضأن المشوي
5. غالبا

Reading

A. Personally[1], I think it's important to respect our older relatives[2]. When South Korean families eat together, the oldest person at the table always starts to eat first. The rest[3] of the family waits until this person has finished eating before they finish their meals. It is believed[4] that this shows your respect for the most important people in your family.

B. As you probably know[5], people in China usually use chopsticks[6] to eat their food.
However, you need to be careful about[7] what you do with them when you're eating there. It is considered very rude[8] to put your chopsticks vertically[9] into your bowl of food, for example. I understand that[10] this is a Chinese tradition[11], but for me[12], foreigners[13] who do this don't mean to be rude at all.

C. In my opinion[14], lunchtime isn't the best time of day for eating a large meal. However, in Russia it is thought that[15] people should eat their largest meal of the day between 1 o'clock and 3 o'clock in the afternoon. In the evening, people usually eat some light food[16], such as bread and cold meat followed by tea. This is a traditional way of eating in Russ

Arabic me
1. وجهة نظري الشخصية
2. أقارب
3. الباقي
4. يُعتقد أن
5. كما تعلم
6. عصي للأكل (في الصين)
7. حذر بشأن
8. وقاحة
9. وضع رأسي
10. أنا أفهم أن
11. عادة أو تقليد صيني
12. بالنسبة لي
13. الأجانب
14. في رأي
15. يُعتقد أن
16. طعام خفيف

Extra Reading

As one year changes to the next, many countries around the world choose to celebrate the start of the New Year with special food. However, different countries eat very different things to enjoy the occasion[1].

In Mexico, for example, many people eat out[2] at the many restaurants around the country on New Year's Day[3]. The most popular dish is always tamales, which is made from meat, cheese and vegetables that are cooked inside banana leaves.

However, when the New Year arrives in Japan people make special little cakes from sweet rice. Then they get together[4] with their family and friends to eat them and celebrate.

In Spain, it is traditional[5] to eat twelve grapes[6] to welcome the New Year. The Spanish people eat this particular amount[7] of grapes late at night, when the clock reaches midnight, or twelve o'clock, and they have one grape for each hour of the clock.

In Poland, people start to prepare[8] a fish called 'herring'[9] at least five days before they eat it. They put the fish in a jar with water, onions and sugar and then they wait for the big day.

Finally, in Greenland, it is traditional for the men to serve a special meal of whale[10] for women to enjoy. It takes months for the meat to become ready to eat and people say the smell[11] is very strong.

Arabic meaning

1. مناسبة
2. يأكل خارج المنزل
3. يوم رأس السنة
4. يجتمع
5. تقليدي
6. حبات العنب
7. قدر / كمية
8. يجهز / يحضر
9. الرنجة
10. الحوت
11. الرائحة

Video script

Festival meals from different countries

People in different countries celebrate different festivals, but they all cook special meals for their families when they're celebrating together. Let's look at three examples of special meals from around the world.

Many Egyptians celebrate the festival of Eid-alAdha every year. The most popular meal to eat on this occasion is a traditional fattah. Egyptian families usually eat fattah for breakfast.

In Britain, Christmas is the most popular festival of the year. British families come together on this occasion to eat a special meal, which is usually roasted turkey with potatoes and other vegetables.

And, finally, let's go to China where the New Year is the most important festival of the year. Families like to have lots of different things on the table when they get together to eat at Chinese New Year. This usually includes spring rolls, noodles, fish and chicken.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary & derivatives

1. Most people prefer eating ------, in restaurants, especially on holidays.
   a. with b. into c. out d. away
2. Drinking moderate ------ of coffee is actually good for you.
   a. survivors b. customer c. native d. amounts
3. My grandparents ------ their 50th wedding anniversary last year.
   a. served b. inherited c. celebrated d. produced
4. This soup is too ------. I can't eat it.
   a. delicious b. tasty c. special d. salty
5. She studied for three days in order to ------ for her final exam.
   a. celebrate b. trust c. survive d. prepare
6. You can't pass an exam without careful ------.
   a. questionnaire b. preparation c. celebration d. extraction
7. According to the new exam system, traditional ways of studying need to be complet changed. The word "traditional" is opposite in meaning to ------.
   a. customary b. contemporary c. especial d. unique
8. We didn't leave a tip for the waiter because the ------ was really terrible.
   a. illness b. service c. practice d. justice
9. Eating coloured eggs on Sham El Nassim is a popular ------ in Egypt.
   a. celebration b. option c. customer d. tradition
10. It's ------ in the U.S. to have turkey for Thanksgiving dinner.
    a. traditional b. preparatory c. tradition d. professional
11. That girl was the only ------ of the car accident in which all her family were killed.
    a. survival b. survive c. survivor d. survives
12. Very few animals can ------ the extreme cold of the Arctic.
    a. die b. survive c. live d. deserve
13. Excuse me. This steak is overcooked. I don't like it this way. I told you I like my steak ----
    a. homeless b. rare c. well-done d. severe
14. My parents are organizing a dinner to ------ my success at school.
    a. serve b. cook c. lie d. celebrate
15. ------ is a traditional public holiday in the USA and Canada, when families have a l meal together to celebrate and be thankful.
    a. Festival b. Celebration c. Extraction d. Thanksgiving
16. What makes this village distinctive is that people here have their own ------ dr folklore and handicrafts.
    a. occasional b. rational c. traditional d. fictional

17. Our teacher doesn't give anyone of us a/an ...... treatment. He treats the whole class in the same way.
a. preparatory b. special c. popular d. optional

18. I have always had a ...... of admiration for your ability to adapt to different situations.
a. great deal b. much c. many d. lots

19. In our village, farmers grow large ...... of wheat and corn.
a. charities b. abilities c. quantities d. desserts

20. The party was really good. We had great ....
a. pleased b. fun c. funny d. exit

21. The audience were so happy and excited about the performance that they asked the singer to ...... it several times.
a. feed b. extract c. repeat d. serve

22. ......, I think most parts of this book are easy enough for all students to understand.
a. Personal b. Particular c. sickly d. Personally

23. It's a traditional rule for my family to get ...... at lunch time every day to have lunch.
a. together b. separated c. stuck d. isolated

24. While working, I like a/an ...... cup of coffee. Whenever my sister is free, I ask her to make me one.
a. traditional b. personal c. occasional d. final

25. Why don't you allow your daughter to help you ...... the meals? She is no longer a child.
a. close b. prepare c. confuse d. deceive

26. What would you like to have for ......, sir? – Ice cream, please.
a. sweet b. desert c. sugar d. dessert

27. The party is very informal, so you don't need to wear anything ....
a. casual b. personal c. special d. private

28. Bicycles are the most ...... vehicles on the planet, with over a billion riders worldwide.
a. loyal b. popular c. rare d. horizontal

29. When we want to celebrate a special ......, my mother prefers to prepare food at home.
a. occasion b. extraction c. confusion d. popularity

30. The ...... of singing the alphabet song several times a day helps young children learn the letters.
a. disposition b. repetition c. suspicion d. depression

31. Our talk is top secret. I don't want you to ...... a word of this to anyone.
a. prepare b. repeat c. delete d. serve

32. The best thing I like about this restaurant is that the food is ...... while it's still hot and delicious.
a. inherited b. serviced c. fed d. served

33. Movie stars and sports ...... have always had a lot of influence on what young people wear.
a. details b. questionnaires c. foreigners d. celebrities

34. ...... is still one of the most popular dishes among Egyptian and Sudanese families, especially for breakfast.

a. Thanksgiving b. Chopsticks c. Meat pie d. Ful Medames

35. Your son has ...... the point in his life where he needs to be treated as an adult. He 20 years old now.

a. arrived b. mounted c. reached d. fetched

36. The oils ...... from olives and some other plants are used for cooking.

a. expanded b. extracted c. practised d. succeeded

37. My sister goes to an international language school. Most of the teachers there are ......, from other countries.

a. foreigners b. strangers c. locals d. extracts

38. According to scientists, gold ...... on Mars, Mercury and Venus.

a. reaches b. feeds c. serves d. exists

39. Sorry, I can't complete this .... It asks some very personal questions.

a. questionnaire b. thanksgiving c. pumpkin d. chopstick

40. If you have the qualifications required for the job market, you will have plenty of career ...... to choose from.

a. celebrities b. products c. extracts d. options

41. Is there any ...... kind of cheese you want for the pizza, or should I just buy whatever is on sale?

a. irregular b. particular c. helpful d. foreigner

42. He suffered ill-treatment at the police station. This means ....

a. He was given the wrong medicine at the police station.
b. They behaved badly towards him at the police station.
c. They were gentle and generous with him at the police station.
d. The medicine he was given at the police station was ineffective.

Expressions & Prepositions

43. Have you decided ...... a date for the wedding?

a. in b. on c. for d. up

44. He spent a lot of money ...... his sister's wedding celebration.

a. with b. about c. out d. on

45. Movie stars always lie ...... their age. They don't tell their real age.

a. to b. in c. about d. with

46. Is there any fish ...... the menu today?

a. to b. on c. in d. with

47. What time did the accident ...... place?

a. take b. give c. get d. have

48. The children ...... a complete lack of respect for their new classmate.
   a. gave b. got c. spent d. showed

49. The doctor said you must take only one spoonful of this medicine at ....
   a. time b. a once c. a time d. no time

50. When you feel angry, it's very important to ...... your anger, or you might get into trouble.
   a. show b. control c. disappear d. think

51. My dream is to be able to speak English like a/an ...... speaker who was born in England or the USA.
   a. vertical b. personal c. extracted d. native

52. Let's ...... together this weekend. It would be nice to see you.
   a. have b. get c. make d. do

Vocabulary with other meanings and uses

53. A committee will meet tomorrow morning to decide on the person who will ...... Mr. Adnan as chairman.
   a. succeed b. fail c. inherit d. survive

54. The profit is expected to ...... to three million dollars this year.
   a. inherit b. invest c. receive d. amount

55. This celebration is intended to honour the employees who ...... the company for 20 years or over.
   a. saved b. served c. trekked d. survived

56. I'm so sorry, the lift has been out of ...... for a week. You'll have to use the stairs.
   a. release b. practice c. notice d. service

57. Always keep chemicals and medicines out of ...... for children.
   a. get b. arrive c. go d. reach

58. In the past, tooth ...... were done without using painkillers مسكنات الألم.
   a. passengers b. relatives c. extractions d. quantities

59. Wild bears are becoming ......, and will soon become extinct.
   a. popular b. salty c. rare d. spicy

Grammar

Comparative and Superlative Adjectives

• الصفة هي كلمة تصف الإسم وتأتي عادة قبل الإسم الذي تصفه - إلا إذا كان الإسم الموصوف هو فاعل الجملة - في هذه الحالة تأتي الصفة بعد الأفعال

- I met a clever boy / The boy was clever.
- I saw a beautiful girl / The girl looked beautiful.

• هناك نوعان من الصفات:

- الصفات ذات المقطع الواحد (القصيرة) مثل (tall / short / big / thin)
- الصفات التي تتكون من أكثر من مقطع (الطويلة) مثل (expensive / interesting / important)

1. Comparative Adjectives صفات المقارنة

• لتكوين صيغة المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة، نستخدم الشكل التالي:

طرف المقارنة الثاني + than + er + صفة قصيرة + فعل + طرف المقارنة الأول

- Ahmed is taller than Ali.
- A train is faster than a car.

• لتكوين صيغة المقارنة من الصفات الطويلة، نستخدم الشكل التالي:

طرف المقارنة الثاني + than + صفة طويلة + more / less + فعل + طرف المقارنة الأول

- Ashgan looks more interested in the game than Salma.
- Water is more important than oil.

• لاحظ ما يلي عند تكوين صيغة المقارنة باستخدام صفة قصيرة:

- مع الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف e نضيف لها حرف (r) فقط:

late ⟶ later than

- مع بعض الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك نضعّف الحرف الساكن الأخير (نكرره) قبل إضافة (er):

big ⟶ bigger than

- مع الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن، نحذف حرف (y) ونضضيف (ier):

happy ⟶ happier than

• هناك صفات لا تخضع لهذه الصيغة في حالة المقارنة - وهي كالتالي:

good ⟶ better than	bad ⟶ worse than	far ⟶ farther / further than
much / many ⟶ more than	little ⟶ less than	

- There must be a better way than this to ask for your rights. This is too rude.
- Alexandria is further / further than Tanta.

- هناك صفات يصلح معها الشكلين (إما إضافة er لها أو استخدام more / less قبلها عند وضعها في صيغة المقارنة) - ومن أمثلة هذه الصفات:

quiet – clever – narrow – simple

- This street is narrower (more / less narrow) than ours.
- This class is quieter (more / less quiet) than that.

Why do we use Comparative Adjectives?

- **To compare two things or persons** لعقد المقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين
  - I want to buy this house because it's larger (than my current house).
  - Read this book. It's more beneficial (than playing computer games)
  - Koshari is cheaper than chicken.
- **To describe how something changes** لوصف التغير التدريجي الذي يحدث في شيء
  - The weather is getting hotter.
  - I'm becoming more interested in my new job.

Attention to the following notes!

- عند التعبير عن درجة صفة المقارنة نستخدم قبلها slightly / a little / a bit / a lot / much
  - Your mobile is slightly / a little / a bit / a lot / much cheaper than mine.
  - This hotel is slightly / a little / a bit / a lot / much more expensive than all the hotels in the area.
- عند المقارنة بين صفتين في نفس الشخص (إحدى الصفتين أقل أو أكثر من الاخرى)، نستخدم more / less قبل الصفة حتى ولو كانت صفة قصيرة – ولا يمكن استخدام er في هذه الحالة:
  - She is more cruel than strict. (~~NOT crueler~~)
  - He is more lucky than intelligent. (~~NOT luckier~~)
- عند التعبير عن التغير المستمر في وقوع صفة (ويعبر عن ذلك وجود الأفعال get / become) ولا يكون بعد الصفة كلمة than ، يمكن استخدام أحد الشكلين التاليين مع الصفة القصيرة:

more and more / less and less + short adj.
short adj. + er

– أما مع الصفة الطويلة فنستخدم قبلها more and more / less and less فقط

- The weather has been getting more and more hot / hotter and hotter these days.
- Smartphones have become more and more popular with young children.

- تستخدم الصفتان farther / further عند مقارنة المسافات المادية دون فرق في المعنى – ولكن عند الحديث شيء إضافي او بُعد معنوي، نستخدم further فقط:
  - Aswan is farther / further away from Cairo than Al-Menia.
  - Do you have any further questions to ask? (~~NOT farther~~)
  - Please, I can't stand any further delay. (~~NOT farther~~)
- تستخدم الصفتان elder / older بمعنى (أكبر) – ويمكن استخدام اي منهما عند وصف ترتيب أفراد الأسرة:
  - Salman is my elder / older brother.

  – ولكن عند المقارنة بين شخصين نستخدم older فقط:
  - My brother Salman is older than me. (~~NOT elder~~)

[illegible]

[illegible] + as + adv + not as / not so + [illegible]

- Salem is not as / not so tall as Majid.
- This car is not as / not so expensive as that.

Comparative and superlative adverbs [illegible]

[illegible]

المقارنة	- more + adv. + than
التفضيل	- the most / the least + adv.

- Could you talk more quietly than that? (NICE question)
- Ahmed drives more carefully than Ali does.
- Salma works the most quietly of all the students.
- Of the three drivers, Mary drives the most carefully.

الظروف القصيرة التي تستخدم كصفات أيضا مثل

hard - early - late - long - near - high - low

[illegible] adv. + er + than [illegible] the + adv. + est [illegible]

- Please, work harder than that.
- Salem works the hardest.
- Mary runs faster than John does.
- Mary runs the fastest of all the runners on the team.

Irregular adverbs [illegible]

- Mona plays tennis better than Huda does.
- On our tennis team, Majid plays tennis the best.
- I did worse on the test than Ali did.
- On that test, I did the worst in the class.
- My paper airplane flew farther than yours did.
- My paper airplane flew the farthest of all.

[illegible]

slightly / a little / a bit / a lot / much + comparative adv. + than

- I forget things much more often nowadays than I used to.

[illegible]

by far / by far and away + superlative adv.

- In our office, typists work by far the hardest.

Test Yourself

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mount Everest is .... Kilimanjaro.
   a. higher than b. the highest c. high as d. a high
2. Ali speaks Spanish .... than I do.
   a. fluently b. as fluently c. so fluently d. more fluently
3. Travelling by train is .... cheaper than travelling by plane.
   a. more b. much c. many d. most
4. My car is .... than yours. Mine is a used one.
   a. cheap b. lot cheaper c. a lot cheaper d. the cheaper
5. Excellent! You did a .... job this time. Keep up.
   a. better b. worst c. worse d. best

2- Translate into English:

١ - كان أحمد أكثر هدوءًا من سالم عندما سمع الخبر.

٢ - سيارتي أفضل من سيارتك. فهي أحدث منها.

2. Superlative Adjectives صفات التفضيل

• لتكوين صيغة التفضيل من الصفات القصيرة، نستخدم الشكل التالي:

فاعل + فعل + the + صفة قصيرة + est

• Majid is the tallest boy in the class.

• لتكوين صيغة التفضيل من الصفات الطويلة، نستخدم الشكل التالي:

فاعل + فعل + the most / the least + صفة طويلة

• The internet has become the most important source of information.

• هناك صفات لا تخضع لهذه الصيغة في حالة التفضيل - وهي كالتالي:

good ⟶ the best	bad ⟶ the worst	far ⟶ the farthest / the furthest
much / many ⟶ the most	little ⟶ the least	

• This is the worst film I have ever seen.
• It was the best meal I had ever had.

Why do we use superlative Adjectives?

• To compare one thing/person to a group (more than one)

لمقارنة شيئ أو شخص بمجموعة أكثر من واحد

• The Carolina Reaper is the spiciest chilli in the world
• This is the most / the least difficult exam I have ever had.

عن الصفات المتطرفة في درجتها والتي تصل لحدها الأقصى
- **To describe extremes**
  - Water is the most important liquid ever.
  - This is the hottest day ever.

Attention to the following notes!

التعبير عن درجة صفة التفضيل نستخدم قبلها أو في نهاية الجملة **by far / by far and away**
- She is by far the best student in the class.
- The computer is the most useful invention by far and away.

نستخدم **best / most** بدون **the** قبلها ليكون معناها **very much**:
- I love / like / admire this village most / best.

إعادة صياغة جملة بها صيغة تفضيل لتحويلها الى صيغة مقارنة، يمكن اتباع أحد الأشكال التالية:
- Mona is the tallest girl in the class.

= No girl in the class is taller than Mona.
- There's no girl who is taller than Mona in the class.

= There's not any girl in the class who is taller than Mona.

التعبير عن تناسب طردي بين صفتين – بمعنى (كلما حدث كذا... حدث كذا...)، نستخدم الشكل التالي:

The + comparative adj. + the + comparative adj.

- The more carefully you drive, the safer you arrive.
- The harder you study, the more marks you get.
- The sooner the better.

صيغة التفضيل نستخدم حرف الجر **in** اذا كان يليه إسم يدل على مكان أو إسم يدل على مجموعة مثل **team / class**
نستخدم حرف الجر **of** اذا كان يليه إسم يدل على شخص:
- Mohamed is the best player in the team. (~~NOT of the team~~).
- Of all his classmates, Salem is the shortest. (~~NOT In all his classmates~~)

عند المقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين فقط، نستخدم **the** وبعدها صيغة مقارنة أو صيغة تفضيل – كلاهما صحيح – وإن
كانت صيغة المقارنة أكثر شيوعًا في الاستخدام:
- I like Sara and Hala, but I think Sara is the nicer / the nicest of the two.
- Of my two friends, Ali is the more helpful / the most helpful.

التعبير عن التساوي في درجة الصفة الواحدة لدى شخصين أو شيئين، نضع الصفة كما هي بين **(as ... as)** كما يلي:
- Ali is as tall as Salim.
- My car is as expensive as yours.

وعند نفي التساوي في الصفة نضع الصفة بين **(not as / not so ... as)** كما يلي:
- Nada is not so / not as clever as Shaimaa.

إعادة صياغة جملة بها صيغة التساوي في الصفة **(as ... as)**، نستخدم **(the same + noun)**:
- Ali is (not) as tall as Salim. = Ali and Salem are (not) the same age.
- My house is (not) as big as yours. = My house and yours are (not) the same si[ze]

بعد **than / as** نستخدم ضمير مفعول أو ضمير فاعل يليه فعل:
- You are taller than me. / You are taller than I'm.
- I study as hard as her. / I study as hard as she does.

- تستخدم صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل بصفة عامة مع الصفات المتدرجة في درجاتها (Gradable) مثل الصفة tall - فهناك شخص طويل وشخص أطول منه وهكذا - وكذلك الصفة important - فهناك شيء مهم وشيء أقل أو أكثر أهمية منه.
- لكن هناك صفات أخرى غير متدرجة (Non-gradable) بمعنى أنه ليس هناك حد أقصى منها أو حد أقل - مثل الصفات

right / wrong / alive / dead / enormous / exhausted / amazing

- فليس هناك شخص ميت dead وشخص أقل أو أكثر موتًا - وليس هناك شخص منهك وشخص أقل أو أكثر إنهاكًا... وهكذا.

Test Yourself

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The River Nile is .... river in the world.
   a. as long b. the longest c. longer than d. longest
2. This is .... runner I have ever seen.
   a. the fast b. faster than c. fastest d. the fastest
3. The oldest tree .... the world is nearly 10.000 years old.
   a. in b. of c. for d. to
4. I have more books than .... does.
   a. her b. hers c. she d. she's
5. Alexandria is not as .... as Cairo.
   a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. the biggest

2- Translate into English:

١ - تعتبر الأهرامات من أشهر المعالم السياحية على مستوى العالم.
٢ - كلما مارست الرياضة أكثر كلما كنت أكثر لياقة.

Say, Don't say

1- Don't say : This lesson is less / more easier than the previous one.
Say : This lesson is (much / far) easier than the previous one.
- لأنه قبل صيغ المقارنة لا نستخدم more / less ولكن يمكن استخدام much / far / a lot

2- Don't say : My father was more furious than my mother when they heard the news.
Say : My father was more angry than my mother when they heard the news.
- لأنه مع الصفات القوية (التي تحمل معنى الحد الأقصى منها)، لا نستخدم صيغ المقارنة أو التفضيل، ولكن نحول الصفة الى صفة متدرجة لكي نضعها في صيغة المقارنة - هنا حولنا furious (يستشيط غضبًا) إلى angry (غضبان)

3- Don't say : My school is as bigger as yours.
Say : My school is as big as yours.
- لأنه بعد as / so نستخدم صفة درجة أولى (بدون إضافات)

4- Don't say : The most polite you are, the most respect you gain.
Say : The more polite you are, the more respect you gain.
- لأنه مع the ... the ... نستخدم صفات مقارنة وليس صفات تفضيل

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Which do you think is .... city in the world?
   a. exciting b. more exciting c. the most exciting d. most exciting
2. I'm 155 cm tall, and so is my friend. My friend is .... me.
   a. as tall as b. taller than c. tall as d. as tall than
3. Ali runs fairly faster than all the teenagers. This means Ali runs .... of all the teenagers.
   a. the faster b. the fastest c. faster than d. as fast
4. She must be rich. She spends money in a day .... than I earn in a month.
   a. many more b. the least c. the most d. a lot more
5. In my opinion, fish tastes .... than oysters.
   a. much better b. less better c. the best d. much good
6. That meal was too salty, it was .... meal I've had at that restaurant!
   a. as good as b. better than c. the worst d. the best
7. Nasi goreng is .... many other Indonesian meals, but it's very popular in Indonesia.
   a. not so spicy b. spiciest than c. the spiciest d. spicier than
8. I've had a full day's rest now and I feel much ...., at least well enough to get out of bed.
   a. better b. the best c. good d. worse
9. .... stressed a person is, the more likely he or she is to die young.
   a. So b. The more c. As much d. The most
10. The survey confirmed that house prices are .... higher in the South than in the North.
    a. so b. more c. as d. much
11. Canadian wolves are .... wolves in the world. They are twice as big as a large dog.
    a. larger than b. the largest c. as large d. largest
12. Of all the problems she has faced, this one is by far ....
    a. badly b. as worse c. so badly d. the worst
13. The higher we climbed, ... the air became, which made it difficult for us to proceed.
    a. the colder b. the coldest c. so cold d. as cold
14. The amazing thing about this stone is that the longer you keep it, ... it gets.
    a. as shiny b. the shiny c. the shiniest d. the shinier
15. The berry tree in our garden is almost .... the house itself.
    a. as tall as b. the tallest c. much taller d. so tall
16. The earlier we start organising the event, ... prepared we will be on the day.
    a. the best b. so good c. better than d. the better
17. The holiday we spent in Canada turned out to be .... expensive than we'd expected.
    a. so b. much c. less d. a little

18. American cookies are .... Japanese Mochi.
 a. sweeter than b. as sweet c. the sweetest d. much sweeter
19. Slow down! You are .... me and I can't keep up.
 a. as fit as b. the fittest c. much fitter d. fitter than
20. The crime rate in this city is .... than in other parts of the country.
 a. higher than b. the highest c. as high d. a lot higher
21. Except for the tiger, the lion is .... member of the cat family.
 a. the largest b. so large c. as large d. the larger
22. Alexandria is .... colder in winter than I had imagined.
 a. so b. as c. much d. so
23. .... the trial progressed, the more apparent it become that he was guilty.
 a. The further b. The furthest c. Much farther d. More further
24. The problem with my grandfather is that the older he gets .... forgetful he becomes.
 a. the most b. the more c. more d. much
25. The film was performed some famous comedy stars, but it wasn't .... we had expected.
 a. so funny that b. funnier c. more funny d. as funny as
26. The police report says that this robbery is .... in the bank's history.
 a. the bigger b. much bigger c. the biggest d. by far biggest
27. I think Mohamed Ali Klay was .... boxer that ever lived.
 a. the greater b. the much great c. as great as d. the greatest
28. I'm afraid Hamdy seems to get .... he used to be and almost never studies.
 a. the cleverest b. as clever as c. not so clever as d. more clever than
29. I was ill before the exam and I did .... out of the whole class.
 a. the worst b. as bad as c. so bad as d. worse than
30. The more you practise the language, ... you'll become at speaking it.
 a. good b. the best c. better d. the better
31. Why don't you try to find a .... computer game and save your money.
 a. cheaper b. more cheaper c. cheapest d. so cheaper
32. Abeer and Omar are the same height. They are .... each other.
 a. as tall as b. taller than c. as tall than d. more tall than
33. You can choose any of these cars, but I think the .... of them all is the silver one.
 a. best b. little c. most d. better
34. The Amazon is not as long as the Nile. The Nile is .... of the two.
 a. as long as b. the long c. longer than d. the longer
35. Ahmed is a bit .... today than he usually is. What's the matter?
 a. so cheerful b. more cheerful c. most cheerful d. as cheerful
36. How do you feel now? – I don't feel .... I must see a doctor as soon as possible.
 a. any better b. no better c. more better d. as better as
37. I don't read as .... books as you do. I wish I could read more.
 a. much b. more c. most d. many
38. Dr. Magdi Yacoub is one of the world's .... heart surgeons.
 a. best b. the best c. better d. most
39. Mona is .... the cleverest student in the school.
 a. a lot b. a little c. far d. by far

40. In my opinion, fish tastes .... than oysters.
a. a lot better b. less better c. more better d. the best

41. Salah is the fastest player .... the team.
a. at b. than c. in d. of

42. Which is the .... boys' name in your class?
a. popular b. biggest c. most popular d. as popular

43. This book was .... than the last one she wrote. I didn't like it.
a. bad b. best c. worst d. worse

44. Don't worry about your child. He is .... than stupid. He just needs some motivation and encouragement.
a. lazier b. as lazy c. more lazy d. most lazy

45. I don't spend as .... money as you do.
a. much b. more c. most d. many

46. The .... building in my town is the main mosque. No other building is as beau as it in town.
a. least beautiful b. most beautiful c. more beautiful d. so beautiful

47. In the past, people didn't have .... forms of entertainment as we do today.
a. so much b. the most c. as many d. the fewest

48. When watching television, you should sit .... from the TV set in order not to h your eyes.
a. as further b. the farthest c. more further d. less farther

49. If I were you I would take two aspirins and go to bed. I hope you'll feel .... be in the morning.
a. most b. a lot c. so d. more

50. Because you have missed many of the training sessions, of all the players, you have .... chance of being chosen for the team.
a. as little b. much little c. the fewest d. the least

51. Vegetable curry is more popular than the other meals on the menu. This means ....
a. Vegetable curry is not so popular as all the other meals on the menu.
b. All the other meals on the menu are less popular than vegetable curry.
c. Vegetable curry is the most popular of all the meals on the menu.
d. B & C are correct

52. Amal's grade is 85. Reham's grade is 60. This means ....
a. Reham is less hard-working than Amal.
b. Amal is the more hard-working of the two
c. Reham is more hard-working than Amal.
d. A & B are correct.

53. Vegetable curry costs 3 pounds and all the other meals at the restaurant cost much more than that. This means ....
a. Vegetable curry is as cheap as all other meals on the menu.
b. Vegetable curry is the most expensive meal on the menu.
c. Vegetable curry is the cheapest meal on the menu.
d. Vegetable curry is more expensive than all other meals on the menu.

54. Many people think that nut biscuits are better than the other biscuits on the menu. This means ---------- .
   a. Nut biscuits are the worst of the meals on the menu.
   b. All the other meals on the menu are better than nut biscuits.
   c. All the other meals on the menu are not so good as nut biscuits.
   d. Nut biscuits are as good as the other meals on the menu.
55. The Queen mother, who is 100 years, is the oldest member of the British Royal family. This means ---------- .
   a. The Queen mother is not as old as the rest of the royal family.
   b. All the other members of the royal family are older than the Queen mother.
   c. All the other members of the royal family are as old as the Queen mother
   d. The Queen mother is much older than all the other members of the royal family.
56. The white bear is not so aggressive as the black bear. This means ---------- .
   a. The white bear is more aggressive.
   b. The black bear is more aggressive.
   c. The two bears are equally aggressive.
   d. The two bears are the most aggressive.

Language Functions

Communicating opinions and beliefs — نقل الأراء والمعتقدات للآخرين

– عندما نريد توضيح أو نقل ما نعتقده بخصوص موضوع ما لشخص آخر نستخدم التعبيرات التالية:

• For me / Personally	من وجهة نظري الشخصية
• In my opinion	في رأيي
• I understand that	ما أفهمه هو أن
• It's believed / thought that	يُعتَقَد أن
• As you probably know	كما تعلم

Writing practice

A Translate into Arabic:

1- Egyptian families are used to converting some religious occasions into occasions to eat the foods associated with these occasions, such as Eid al-Fitr, which is associated with cakes, and Eid al-Adha, which is associated with meat.
2. Various studies and reports showed that the size of countries' spending on food exceeds a quarter of the average household income worldwide. They also showed that the countries that spend the most on food are African, Asian and Latin American countries.
3. Archaeologists discovered the oldest pumpkin seeds in Mexico. Pumpkins are believed to have originated in Central America over 7,500 years ago. The first pumpkins were similar to oranges in colour, size and shape.

4. Ful medames was originally peasant food in Ancient Egypt. However, it has develo almost into a national dish and is now popular street food. It is very filling and mak useful part of breakfast before a day's fasting during Ramadan.
5. My father's English teacher when he was at preparatory school was the most influe person in his life. He inspired him to like English and become a teacher of English

B Translate into English:

1. الجميل مشاركة العائلة والأصدقاء في تناول الطعام خارج المنزل واختيار الأطباق المفضلة لديكم، ولكن لابد من الاحتراس د تناول الطعام خارج المنزل، فغالباً ما يرتبط بزيادة الوزن والتأثير سلباً على صحة القلب والجسم.
2. احترام الصغير للكبير من أهم الآداب التي حثت عليها جميع الأديان السماوية وذلك لخلق جو من الألفة والمحبة بين أفراد مجتمع، خصوصًا وأنّ احترام الكبير لا يحتاج إلى جهد، وإنما يكون باتباع بعض السلوكيات الحسنة مع من هم أكبر سِنًا.
3. تختلف عادات تناول الطعام من مدينة لأخرى ومن بلد لآخر؛ فبعض البلاد يستخدمون العِصي في تناول الطعام وآخرين ستخدمون أيديهم. وتختلف وتتنوع هذه العادات بحسب العادات والتقاليد المتوارثة، وعلى المسافر تفهم ومراعاة عادات شعوب أينما ذهب.
4. يوجد على كوكب الأرض ملايين الشعوب ذات الثقافات المختلفة، وكل شعب لديه معتقداته الخاصة التي يدافع عنها، وبسبب هذا التنوع والاختلاف، تظهر أعياد واحتفالات خاصة لكل شعب، بعضها قد يكون غريبًا.
5. ي تطوع لتقديم المساعدة الطبية لشخص وقع في مشكلة، يجب أن يكون لديك المبادئ الأساسية من المعرفة عن الخدمة تي تطوع بتقديمها، وإلا فإنك يمكن أن تتسبب في مشكلة للشخص الذي تقصد مساعدته.

كلمات مساعدة

converting	تحويل	influential	مؤثر
religious	ديني	inspire	يلهم
associated with	مرتبط بـ	overweight	زيادة الوزن
exceeds	يتخطى / يزيد عن	negative impact	تأثير سلبي
household income	دخل الأسرة	monotheistic religions	الأديان السماوية
seeds	بذور	familiarity	ألفة
originate	ينشأ	volunteer	تطوع
peasant food	طعام الفلاحين	medical help	مساعدة طبية
filling	يسبب الشبع	Basic principles of knowledge	المبادئ الأساسية من المعرفة
fasting	صيام		

Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

A national event or celebration and the traditional ways followed by people to celebr

Set Text

Key Vocabulary

my heart is broken	قلبي يتحطم / أشعر بالحزن الشديد	loyalty (n)	ولاء / إخلاص
deserve (v.d)	يستحق	loyal (adj)	مخلص / وفي
send away (v.sent)	يبعد أو ينفي شخص	exit (v.ed) (n)	يخرج - مَخرَج
ill (adj)	مريض / سيئ	lie (v.d) (n)	يكذب - كذبة
anger (n) (v.ed)	غضب / يُغضب	liar (n)	كذاب
inheritance (n)	إرث / ميراث / تراث	trust (v.ed) (n)	يثق في - ثقة
inherit (v.ed)	يرث	deceive (v.d)	يخدع
heritage (n)	إرث / تراث	income (n)	دخل / ايراد
heir / heiress (n)	وريث - وريثة	truth (n)	الحقيقة
succeed (v.ed)	ينجح - يخلف شخص في موقع او وظيفة		

[In King Lear's Palace[1].]

FRANCE : Cordelia, it is time to leave your country now. Say goodbye[2] to your sisters.

CORDELIA : Goneril and Regan, I am sad to leave you both. My heart is broken[3].
Be good to[4] our father. If he still loved me, I'd take good care of him! Please look after him well.

GONERIL : Don't tell us what to do, Cordelia.

REGAN : Yes, go to your husband. You've failed[5] to do what your father asked you to do. Now, you've got what you deserve[6].

CORDELIA : I don't know what you are planning, sisters, but remember: everyone discovers the truth[7] in the end. Goodbye!

FRANCE : Come with me, my dear Cordelia.

Arabic meaning
1. قصر
2. قل وداعا لـ
3. قلبي يتمزق
4. تعامل بعطف مع
5. يفشل
6. لقد نلت ما تستحقينه
7. الحقيقة
8. قرار سيئ
9. يطردها - ينفيها
10. هو يتصرف بجنون بعض الشيء
11. الصحة المعتلة

[The King of France and Cordelia leave.]

GONERIL : Sister Regan, we must talk. I think our father will leave here tonight

REGAN : I'm sure he will, and he'll leave with you. Next month, he'll stay with my husband Cornwall and I.

GONERIL : Our father always loved Cordelia the most, and a poor decision[8] has made him send her away[9].

REGAN : He is becoming a little mad[10] in his old age.

GONERIL : Even when he was younger and healthy, he was a difficult man. So we must be prepared for what ill health[11] and old age will bring.

REGAN : He was angry when he sent Kent away today. He will probably be angry more often in the future.

GONERIL : Let's sit together and talk. If our father still has some power, his anger[12] [may] become a problem for us.

REGAN : You are right. Let's think about what we can do.

GONERIL : We must do something, and quickly.

Act I, Scene II

[At the Duke of Gloucester's Castle. Edmund enters with a letter.]

EDMUND : My father Gloucester says that his first son, Edgar, will get his land when he dies. But why should I not have my inheritance[13] just because I'm twelve or fourteen months younger than my brother? Is it just because I'm the second son? I'm just as strong and kind as my brother, and as clever too. Well, elder brother[14], Edgar, I will [have] your land. Our father loves me, his younger son, as much as he [loves] you. And I have a letter here. If this letter succeeds[15], then Edmund [the] younger son will beat[16] the older son Edgar!

[Gloucester enters.]

GLOUCESTER : Ah Edmund, my son! Have you heard? The King has sent Kent a[way]! And the King of France has left with Cordelia! And the King has le[ft the] palace tonight without his powers[17]! This has all happened so qu[ickly]!

[Gloucester notices Edmund hiding the letter.]

GLOUCESTER : What are you doing Edmund?

EDMUND : Nothing, father.

GLOUCESTER : Why are you trying to hide that letter? What's in it?

EDMUND : Nothing, sir.

GLOUCESTER : Then, why did you hide it in your pocket? Let me see it.

EDMUND : Please forgive me[18], father. It is a letter from my brother Edgar. I haven't finished reading yet; but I don't think you should read it.

GLOUCESTER : Let me see that!

EDMUND : OK, but I hope he only wrote this to test me and my loyalty[19] to my fa[ther].

GLOUCESTER : *[Reads the letter.]*
When we respect older people too much, it makes it hard for the young to live well. Our parents keep our money from us until we a[re] too old to enjoy it. Older people only have power because we give [it] to them. Come and see me, so that we can discuss this. If our fath[er] were dead[20], you could enjoy half his income[21], and be loved[22] b[y] your brother Edgar.' Did my son Edgar write this letter? When did [you] receive this? Who brought it?

EDMUND : It wasn't brought to me, sir. I found it. It was thrown in throug[h my] bedroom window.

GLOUCESTER : Are you sure the writing is your brother's?

EDMUND : Yes, it is his handwriting, father.

12. الغضب
13. ميراث
14. أكبر
15. نجح
16. هزم
17. سلطات
18. سامحني
19. إخلاص
20. ميت
21. دخل
22. محبوبا

GLOUCESTER : Has he ever talked to you about this before?

EDMUND : No, never. But I've often heard him say that when a son becomes an adult[23], he should be given some of his father's income.

GLOUCESTER : Oh, what a cruel son[24]! Go and find him, Edmund. Where is he?

EDMUND : I don't know, father. Please, don't be angry with my brother. Let's find out what he meant[25], then you can decide what to do. I'm sure he wrote this to test my love and loyalty to you, and for nothing more dangerous than that.

GLOUCESTER : Do you really think so?

EDMUND : Yes. Listen, I have a plan. I'll hide[26] you somewhere tonight. I'll discuss it with my brother and you can listen to our conversation. Then you'll know what he really thinks.

GLOUCESTER : My son cannot be so cruel to a father who loves him so much. Edmund, find Edgar and make him talk to you. I want to know the truth[27].

EDMUND : I'll go and find him immediately[28].

GLOUCESTER : Find him, Edmund, and be careful.
(to himself) What is happening? I cannot believe that Kent has been sent away! He is an honest man. It is all too strange.

[Gloucester exits Edgar enters.]

EDMUND : Ah, Edgar. There you are[29]. How are you? When did you last see our father?

EDGAR : I am well, Edmund. I saw our father last night.

EDMUND : And did you talk to him?

EDGAR : Yes, we spent two hours together.

EDMUND : Did you say anything unkind to him? He's very angry with you at the moment. Please don't go near him until he's less angry.

EDGAR : Really? Then somebody has lied about me[30].

EDMUND : That's what I'm worried about. Stay with me for now. I'll take you to see our father when he feels better. Here's my key. Oh, and if you go out, take your sword.

EDGAR : My sword? But why?

EDMUND : That's the best advice I can give you. Please, go quickly!

[Edgar exits.]

EDMUND : My brother and father trust[31] me, which makes them easy to deceive[32]. I need these two fools[33] to make my plan work. If I can't get some land in the correct way, I'll have to be clever to get it.

[Edmund exits.]

23. بالغ / ناضج
24. يا له من ابن قاسي
25. نعرف ماذا كان يقصد
26. يخفي
27. الحقيقة
28. في الحال
29. ها انت ذا
30. قال شيئا كاذبا عني
31. يثق
32. من السهل خداعه
33. مجنون / احمق

Exercises on King Lear

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr. Ahmed did not buy his house. It was a/an .... from his parents.
   a. celebration b. occasion c. inheritance d. thanksgiving
2. My younger brother always tells the .... He never lies.
   a. truth b. lies c. youth d. heir
3. It is natural to feel .... sometimes, but it is important to learn to control it.
   a. trust b. sweet c. ill d. anger
4. We really wanted to climb the mountain, and we all felt very happy when we ....
   a. deserved b. succeeded c. deceived d. served
5. The man in the market says that all his watches are new, but I don't .... him. I think they are all quite old.
   a. trust b. inherit c. celebrate d. gather
6. I think that .... is the most important quality that a best friend can show you.
   a. survival b. disloyalty c. loyalty d. treasure
7. My grandmother had a small .... as a cleaner, but she never had very much money.
   a. product b. income c. quantity d. extraction
8. This email asking for money says it is from the bank, but I think it is trying to ....
   a. receive b. trust c. serve d. deceive
9. You can go into the building one way and .... through a different door.
   a. enter b. exit c. succeed d. fall
10. Cordelia's heart was broken when she had to leave her sisters. This means ....
    a. She was over the moon b. She had a heart disease
    c. She was very sad d. She needed to see a heart surgeon
11. In spite of their terrible playing, the white team won the match. In my opinion, they didn't .... to win.
    a. deserve b. observe c. preserve d. serve
12. Try to avoid stress as possible as you can. It often brings .... health and damage the body.
    a. mental b. physical c. excellent d. ill
13. After two years of trying, my father has finally .... in his attempts to quit smoking.
    a. deceived b. succeeded c. decided d. serviced
14. When his plot against the king was uncovered, he was .... to a remote island where he died.
    a. sent away b. looked for c. decided on d. worried about
15. Mahmoud has always been a/an .... friend, and would never do anything to hurt me.
    a. faithless b. existent c. loyal d. awful

16. Magdi is a really honest guy who would never .... to anyone.
a. lay b. tie c. pay d. lie

17. I really .... your opinion. That's why I've come here to ask you for advice.
a. serve b. succeed c. trust d. anger

18. Unfortunately, doctors .... to safe the young lady's life. She died while having a surgery.
a. failed b. succeeded c. survived d. deserved

19. Your .... is too difficult to read. I tried many times, but I couldn't read it.
a. option b. occasion c. handwriting d. turkey

20. What a .... you had been to think that I would believe your story!
a. liar b. celebrity c. fool d. notice

21. It was .... of you to lock the dog in the garage all day without food or water.
a. kind b. cruel c. loyal d. helpful

22. You can really trust this boy because he always tells the ....
a. truth b. confidence c. trust d. loyalty

23. She doesn't buy beauty .... that have been tested on animals.
a. projects b. traditions c. products d. noodles

24. If you do something wrong, admit it. If you try to hide it, you will simply lose people's ....
a. trust b. money c. anger d. option

25. There is a fire .... next to the men's bathroom, through which you can evacuate the building in case of emergency.
a. service c. exit c. income d. product

26. Our rich neighbour doesn't have any sons or daughters. After his death, his nephews will be his only ....
a. inheritance b. heritage c. celebrities d. heirs

27. We must all take care to preserve those old buildings as they are part of our cultural and historical ....
a. heritage b. celebration c. heir d. survival

28. She .... five million dollars from her uncle, who died last month.
a. succeeded b. kidnapped c. inherited d. produced

TEST 2 Unit 2

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My parents .... their wedding anniversary with dinner in an expensive restau
   a. donate b. celebrate c. separate d. extract
2. When I was in London, I used to .... most of the time. I didn't know how to c
   a. eat up b. eat on c. eat into d. eat out
3. Congratulations on this happy .... of the wedding and I wish you a happy honeym
   a. occasion b. celebrity c. tradition d. amount
4. ...., I think it's extremely important for students to revise well before exams.
   a. person b. personally c. personal d. personality
5. It is my sister's eighteenth birthday today, so my family are going to .... this even
   a. occasion b. celebrate c. together d. serve
6. Add a little salt and spices to the sauce, pour the sauce over the pasta and .... immediately.
   a. curve b. deserve c. reserve d. serve
7. Today's movie wasn't .... as the one we saw last weekend.
   a. so exciting b. more exciting c. as exciting d. A & C are corre
8. Al-Fayoum is both the oldest and .... of all the other cities in Egypt.
   a. more beautiful b. beautiful c. the most beautiful d. as beautiful
9. Did you enjoy the roller coaster ride قطار الملاهي? - No! It was .... experience in my l
   a. the most terrifying b. the more terrifying
   c. as terrifying as d. more terrifying than
10. My father plays golf just for fun, although sometimes he plays .... sk professionals.
    a. so skillful as b. more skillfully c. as skillfully as d. the most skillfu
11. For me, there is nothing .... seeing a child crying.
    a. as annoying than b. much more annoying
    c. the most annoying d. more annoying than
12. This listening exercise is .... exercise in the book!
    a. more challenging than b. as challenging
    c. the most challenging d. least challenging
13. For me, ... aspect of the conference was the decision to concentrate environmental issues.
    a. much encouraging b. so encouraging
    c. more encouraging d. the most encouraging
14. Mr. Amgad appeared .... the other speakers because he was accustomed making speeches.
    a. as nervously as b. less nervous than
    c. so nervous that d. so nervous as

15. Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world. This means ....
   a. Mount Everest is higher than any other mountain.
   b. Mount Everest is as high as all other mountains.
   c. All other mountains are less high than Mount Everest.
   d. A & C are correct.
16. English is easier to learn than Chinese. This means ....
   a. It's less difficult to learn Chinese than to learn English.
   b. Chinese is not so easy to learn as English.
   c. English is not as easy to learn as Chinese.
   d. Chinese is as difficult to learn as English.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Chess is called the game of kings. People have been playing it for over 500 years. It's based on an even older game from India. The chess we play today is from Europe.

Chess is a two-player game. One player uses the white pieces and the other uses the black ones. Each piece moves in a special way. Each player has a piece called the king. The players take turns moving their pieces. The game ends when a player loses his or her king. There are a few more rules, but those are the basics.

Some people think that chess is more than a game. They think it makes the mind stronger. Good chess players use their brains. They think about what will happen next. These skills are useful in life and in chess.

You don't always have lots of time to think when playing chess. There is a type of chess with short time limits. It's called blitz chess. In blitz chess, each player gets ten minutes to use for the whole game. If you run out of time, you lose. Games of blitz chess are fast-paced.

Chess is not just for people. Computers have been playing chess since the 1970s. At first they did not play well. As time went on they grew stronger. In 1997, a computer beat the best player in the world for the first time. It was a computer called Deep Blue. Deep Blue was big. It took up a whole room. By 2006 a cell phone could beat the best players in the world.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- What is the main idea of the passage?
   a. To explain the hostility of the game.
   b. To compare different types of games.
   c. To explain the rules of the game.
   d. To persuade people to stop playing chess.

2- Which is not a reason that chess is a good workout for the mind according to the text?
   a. Good chess players think about what will happen next.
   b. Good chess players take a lot of risks.
   c. Good chess players take their time.
   d. Good chess players use their brains.

3- How does a game of chess end according to the text?
   a. One player takes all of the other player's pieces.
   b. One player makes it to the end of the board.
   c. One player becomes king.
   d. One player loses his or her king.

4- How is blitz chess different from regular chess?
   a. Each player has two kings.
   b. Players are bare-handed.
   c. Players only have ten minutes to play.
   d. Players start from a random position

B: Answer the following questions:

5- Do you think playing chess is good for people? Why/why not?

6- Why might Blitz Chess be more challenging to play than regular chess?

7- How have computer chess programs changed over time?

8- Find words in the text that are antonyms for ---------.
   a. common
   b. win

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- Egypt produces 30% of its wheat consumption and imports the rest from diffe countries. Global and local challenges, including the coronavirus pandemic and extremely hot weather this year have led to concerns about wheat harvesting.

B: Translate into English:

الهلال الأحمر المصري حملة لدعم الأسر المتضررة في المناطق الأكثر احتياجًا على مستوى الجمهورية. تستهدف هذه
ملة ٤٠٠٠ أسرة من خلال توزيع ٢٠٠٠ حقيبة نظافة شخصية و٢٠٠٠ سلة غذائية.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following

Every generation of people is different from the other in a way or another. How is generation different from your parents' generation?

Unit 3 The future of food

Objectives

- **Reading**
  Two articles about future sources of food and more sustainable farming
- **Writing**
  An essay with proposals for how to feed people more sustainably in the future; A summary
- **Listening**
  An interview with an expert on sustainable farming
- **Speaking**
  Speculating about the future
- **Language**
  Will/Be going to; Future continuous
- **life Skills**
  Problem solving- Identifying problems related to food sources and sustainability, and suggesting solutions
- **Values**
  Respect for the environment and **agriculture**
- **Issues**
  Sustainable development -The environment and food supply

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary with Derivatives

agriculture (n)	الزراعة	products (n.)	مُنتَجات
agricultural (adj.)	زراعي	source (n.)	مصدر
crop (n.)	محصول/ غلة	sustainable (adj.)	مستدام
earth (n.)	تراب / أرض/ كوكب الأرض	sustainability (n.)	الاستدامة
innovation (n.)	ابتكار/ تجديد	variety (n.)	تنوع/ تشكيله
livestock (n.)	الماشية	various (adj.)	متنوع/ عديد/ مختلف
production (n.)	إنتاج	algae (n.)	طحالب
produce (v. - d) (n.)	ينتج / منتجات زراعية	hydroponics (n.)	الزراعة المائية (بدون تربه)
producer (n.)	مُنتج	urban (adj.)	حضري/ مدينى (مرتبط بالمدن وليس بالريف)

Listening

rainforests (n)	الغابات المطيرة	destroy (v- ed)	يدمر
expert (n)	خبير	destructive (adj)	مدمر
organisation (n)	منظمة / هيئة	destruction (n)	دمار
argue (v-d)	يناقش / يجادل	summary (n)	ملخص/ خلاصة
argument (n)	جدل/ نقاش	summarize (v - d)	يلخص
include (v-d)	يشمل	underline (v-d)	يضع خط تحت
miss(v-ed)	يُفوت	phrases (n)	عبارات
the whole text	النص بالكامل	gaps (n)	فراغات
main (adj)	رئيسى	original (adj)	أصلى
show (n)	برنامج حوارى	rainfall (n)	معدل سقوط الامطار
island (n)	جزيرة	Unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
South East Asia	جنوب شرق أسيا	damage (v-d)(n)	يتلف / ضرر / تلف
decade (n)	عقد (١٠ سنوات)	techniques (n)	تقنيات
heat up (v-ed)	يُسخَن	organisation (n)	مؤسسة
keep(v-kept)	يستمر فى		

Word	Meaning
population (n)	عدد السكان
percent (%) (adv)	في المائة
about (prep)	حوالي
around (prep)	حوالي

Word	Meaning
solutions (n)	
solve (v-d)	
invest (v-ed)	
capital (n)	

Reading

Word	Meaning
the United Nations	الأمم المتحدة
almost (adv)	تقريبا / حوالي
billion (n)	بليون (مليار)
increase (v –d) (n)	يزيد/ زيادة
space (n)	فراغ/ مساحه/ الفضاء
keep (v –kept)	يحتفظ بـ/ يحفظ/ يربي
instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك
grow (v- grew / grown)	يزرع / ينمو
mention (v - ed)	يذكر
involve (v -d)	يتضمن/ يشتمل على
burger (n)	برجر (شطيرة لحم مشوى)
laboratory (n)	معمل
researchers (n)	الباحثون
seriously (adv)	بشكل خطير / بجدية
serious (adj)	جاد/ خطير
seriousness (n)	خطورة/ جدية
farming (n)	الزراعة
cause (v -d) (n)	يسبب/ سبب
climate change	تغير المناخ
energy (n)	طاقة
reason (n)	سبب/ مبرر
due to	بسبب
chemicals (n)	مواد كيميائية
technology (n)	التكنولوجيا
negative effect	تأثير سلبي
remove (v -d)	يزيل
elsewhere (adv)	في مكان آخر

Word	Meaning
feed (v -fed)	يُغذى
dry (v - ied) (adj)	جاف
wet (adj)	
giant (adj)	
whales (n)	
replace (v -d)	يستبدل
seaweed (n)	بحري
popular (adj)	شعبي/ رائج/ مألوف
the environment (n)	
improve (v -d)	يَتحسن
fashion (n) (v -ed)	يُشكل / يصنع
taste (n)	مذاق
tasty (adj)	المذاق
The Earth's surface	الأرض
continent (n)	
farm (v -ed) (n)	يزرع – مزرعة
farmland (n)	الزراعية
efficient (adj)	
efficiently (adv)	
available (adj)	
evidence (n)	
immediately (adv)	الفور
create (v-d)	يخلق
electricity (n)	
electric vehicles (n)	كهربائية
expect (v-ed)	

Language Focus & Workbook

a summer job	وظيفة صيفية	even (adv) (adj)	حتى / متعادل/ متساو
special (adj)	خاص / مميز	outdoor (adj)	خارجي/ خلوي
contain (v –ed)	يحتوى على	flat (adj) (n)	مسطح/ مستو/ شقه
traditional (adj)	تقليدي	save (v –d)	يدخر/ ينقذ
surprisingly (adv)	بشكل مدهش	extraordinary (adj)	غير عادى
leaves (n)	أوراق الشجر	prediction (n)	تنبؤ
charity (n)	مؤسسة خيرية	intention (n)	نية
serve (v -d)	يقدم (وجبة)	plan (n)	خطة
delicious meal	وجبة لذيذة	protect (v-ed)	يحمى
local people	السكان المحليين	sports field	ملعب رياضى
flow (n)	تدفق		

B Language study

Definitions

- **hydroponics (n)** : a way to grow plants without using any soil
- **agriculture (n)** : the practice or science of farming
- **crop (n)** : a plant that is grown by farmers and used as food
- **innovation (n)** : a new idea, method, or invention
- **livestock (n)** : animals such as cows and sheep that are kept in a farm
- **variety (n)** : the differences within a group, set of actions etc that make it interesting
- **source (n)** : a thing, place, activity etc that you get something from
- **sustainable (adj)** : able to continue
- **production (n)** : the process of making or growing things to be sold, especially in large quantities
- **algae (n)** : a very simple plant without stems that grows in or near water
- **urban (adj)** : relating to towns and cities

Expressions

according to	طبقا لـ/ وفقا لـ	lose up to	تفقد ما يصل إلى
as a result	نتيجة لذلك ...	In my view, ...	في رأيي / في تصوري
increase by	يزيد بمقدار	To conclude, ...	في الختام
tell the difference between...and...	يميز بين...و...	Due to the fact that	بسبب حقيقة أن
in four hours' time	في خلال ٤ ساعات	In the 1990's	في التسعينيات (من القرن العشرين)

It makes sense	يبدو الأمر معقولاً
around the world	حول العالم
I will give my opinion on	سأعطي رأيي في/ بشأن
prepare for the future	يستعدوا للمستقبل
In the case of	في حالة
start a fire	يشعل حريقاً
run a programme	يدير برنامج
fill in the gaps	يملأ الفراغات

It is hoped that
A solution to the problem of...
At the end of....
things got worse
save energy
get warmer
thirty percent smaller

Prepositions

look for	يبحث عن
look after	يعتني بـ
fill in	يملأ
expert on / in / at	خبير فى
focus on	يركز على
work on a farm	يعمل فى مزرعة
heat up	يرتفع درجة حرارته - يُسخّن
cut down	يقطع يقلل
grow by ...	يزداد بنسبة ... / ينمو بمعدل ...

cut down
encourage.....to + inf.
persuade ....to + inf.
cause of
reason for
deal with
(be) based on
live on

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word		Synonym	Antonym
extraordinary	غير عادى	exceptional / unique	ordinary /usual/ commo
destructive	مدمر	devastating/ damaging	constructive/ nondestructive / harmle
increase (v)	يزيد / يزداد	augment	decrease / reduce
encourage	تشجع	motivate / stimulate/ urge	discourage/ disheartén
persuade	يقنع	convince	dissuade
outdoor	فى الخارج	outside / open-air	indoor/ inside
immediately	فى الحال	instantly/ directly/ right away	late/ tardily
dry	جاف	arid	wet
available	متاح	attainable/ obtainable / accessible	unavailable / unattainable/ unobtain
giant	عملاق	huge/ enormous/ colossal / gigantic	tiny/ small/ minute
urban	حضرى / مدنى	....	rural

Spot the difference

wet (adj)	مبتل	wit	ذكاء/ فطنه/ مفكر
source	مصدر	resource	مورد / دهاء
robot	إنسان آلي	reboot	يعيد تمهيد الكومبيوتر
difference	اختلاف	deference	إجْلال ؛ توقير؛ تَبْجيل
the reason for + (اسم)	سبب/ مبرر...	the reason why + جملة	سبب / مبرر لماذا
in case + (جمله)	تحسبا لـ	in case of +(اسم)	في حاله
damage (n)	تلف/ دمار	damages	تعويض (عن الضرر)
eat	يأكل	feed	يطعم
special	خاص (مميز عن الآخرين)	private	خاص بـ (ملك شخص أو أشخاص)
bread (n)	الخبز	breed	سلاله/ نوع / يربى/ يُحْدِث
worse	أسوأ	worth	يستحق/ قيمه
serious	خطير/ جاد	series	سلسله / مسلسل
summary	ملخص	summery	صيفي
decade	عقد (عشر سنوات)	millennium/ century	ألفيه (ألف عام)/ قرن (مائه عام)

Language Notes

1 between / among

• **between**

– بين ٢ منفصلين عن بعضهما بشكل واضح ... أشخاص أو أشياء أو بلاد أو مجموعتين من الأشياء أو أوقات أو أعمار ...الخ

• Atef was standing between Omar and Essam.

– أيضا نستخدم between بين أكثر من ٢ أشياء أو أشخاص....الخ منفصلة عن بعضهما بشكل واضح معينه ومسماه

• A treaty معاهده was drawn up between France, Germany, Italy, and Greece.

• **among**

– بين أكثر من ٢ (وهى تعنى فى منتصف أو من ضمن مجموعه كبيره من الناس أو الأشياء) ونستخدمها للأشياء الغير منفصله بشكل واضح لأنها جزء من مجموعه أو كتله أو حشد

• I'm not worried about her. She's living among friends.

•The ancient fountain was hidden among the trees. (= surrounded by trees)

2 a number of / the number of

• **a number of +** فعل جمع

(عدد من ...) ويأتى بعدها فعل جمع

• A number of children are playing in the street.

• **the number of ...+** فعل مفرد

(عدد الـ....) ويأتى بعدها فعل مفرد

• The number of people we need to hire is seven.

3 involve / contain / consist of

- **involve** / يشتمل على (لو موقف أو نشاط اشتمل على شيئ يكون هذا الشيئ جزء منه أو ناتج عنه)
  - Running your own business usually involves working long hours.
  - يُشرك شخص في شيء أو في عمل شيء
  - Try to involve as many children as possible in the game.
- **contain** / يحتوي على أشياء داخلة على شيئ
  - The thieves stole a purse containing banknotes.
- **consist of** / يتكون من (ما بعدها يشكل كل ما قبلها)
  - My family consists of eight people.

4 outdoor / outdoors

- **outdoor (adj.)** / خلوى / يأتى قبل الاسم فقط
  - The programme of outdoor activities includes climbing and hiking.
- **outdoors (adv.)** / خارج/ فى الخلاء/ فى الهواء الطلق / لا يأتي بعدها اسم موصوف ويمكن أن تأتى آخر الجملة
  - It's warm enough to eat outdoors tonight.
  - He wants a job that will let him work outdoors

5 because / due to

- **because = as** "لأن" ويأتى بعدها جملة وتوضح سبب حدوث الفعل
  - Because Donya was feeling sick, she didn't go to the supermarket.
- **Due to = owing to** "بسبب" ويأتى بعدها اسم
  - Due to her sickness, Donya didn't go to the supermarket.
  - ويمكن أن يأتى بعدها جملة + (the fact that)
  - Due to the fact that Donya was feeling sick, she didn't go to the supermarket.

6 at the end of / in the end

- **at the end of**
  - في نهاية... (وقت/ مكان/ حدث/ فيلم/ مسرحية/ حفلة/ قصه/ كتاب/ مباراة/ شيئ ....الخ)
  - There is a mud-brick house at the end of our street.
- **in the end**
  - في النهاية (لا يأتي بعدها of) نستخدمها عندما نريد أن نقول ما هي النتيجة النهائية لشيء / أو بعد وقت طويل / أو أخيراً
  - We worked hard, and in the end, we achieved our goal.
  - We had a lot of problems with our car. In the end we sold it and bought another one

Reading

According[1] to the United Nations[2], there will be almost[3] 10 billion people in the world by 2050.

As a result, we will have to increase[4] our food production by about 70 percent[5]. However, farmers do not have space[6] to keep[7] more livestock[8] and grow more crops[9]. Instead[10], they'll need to look for more sustainable[11] solutions and this will involve[12] producing a wider variety of[13] food.

How would you feel about eating a burger[14] that was grown in a laboratory[15]? Scientists think that it could be more sustainable than keeping livestock.

Some of the people who have eaten these burgers say that they can't tell the difference between the new burgers and real meat.

Arabic m...

1. طبقاً لـ /
2. المتحدة
3. حوالى /
4. يزيد
5. في المائة
6. مساحة
7. / يحفظ /
8. الماشية
9. محاصيل
10. ...من ذلك
11. مستدام
12. يشمل /
13. / تشكيله من ... تنوعه من
14. (شطيرة) ... مشوى
15. معمل

Reading

Researchers[1] from the United Notions have found that some kinds of agriculture[2] are seriously[3] damaging the land. This is not sustainable. If farming[4] continues to cause so much damage[5], there won't be enough land left for food production[6]. In Europe, most of the damage is due to[7] farmers using too many chemicals[8], so they will need to find new ways to help their crops grow. In southern Africa, the problem is that there is too much rain in the summer, In the future, we can expect that farmers in southern Africa will be using innovations[9] in technology[10] to remove water from the land and use it elsewhere[11].

Arabic mea...

1. الباحثون
2. الزراعة
3. بشكل خطير
4. الزراعة
5. ضرر / تلف – يتلف / يضر
6. إنتاج الطعام
7. بسبب
8. مواد كيميائية
9. ابتكارات / أفكار جديدة
10. التكنولوجيا
11. في مكان آخر

Tapescript

The rainforest in Borneo

Interviewer : Hello everyone. In today's show[1] I'll be talking to my guest, Dr Sarita Parker, who's an expert on the rainforests in Borneo. Welcome to the show, Dr Parker.

Dr Parker : It's great to be with you, John.

Interviewer : Now, we all think that we know what a rainforest is, but how would you describe it?

Arabic mea...

1. برنامج حوارى

Dr Parker : A rainforest has a lot of trees and any different types of animals and plants live in it. And it's a place that's usually very hot and it rains a lot, too.

Interviewer : And what can you tell us about the rainforests in Borneo?

Dr Parker : Well, Borneo is a large island[2] in South East Asia[3], and it has one of the oldest rainforests in the world. However, recently the island has become hotter and there has been less rain than usual. And scientists think that there will be even less rainfall[4] on the island in the next few years.

Interviewer : Why is that?

Dr Parker : Unfortunately[5], some farmers are cutting down trees and starting fires so they can grow crops and keep livestock there. Now the rainforest is about thirty percent smaller today than it was forty years ago. And if there's less rainforest, there's less rain and the island will get even hotter, you see. So, we're very worried that farmers are going to continue to damage[6] the rainforest over the next few decades[7]. That would be terrible for the animals and plant life in the rainforest, and Borneo would heat up[8] even more.

Interviewer : Do you think those farmers will keep[9] cutting down so many trees in the future, or will they use more sustainable ways to grow crops and keep livestock?

Dr Parker : Well, it won't be easy. Of course, many farmers are just trying to feed their families, however, we hope that in a few years' time, more farmers will be using sustainable farming techniques[10] and things will improve. They need more information about how they can plant new trees and move crops around from one field to another each year. But farmers won't change until they understand why they need to change and they have everything they need to do that. My organisation[11] will be running an education programme next month to help them.

Interviewer : Thank you very much for your time, Dr Parker.

2. جزيرة
3. جنوب شرق أسيا
4. معدل سقوط الأمطار
5. لسوء الحظ
6. يتلف
7. عقود
8. يرتفع درجة حرارته
9. يستمر في
10. تقنيات
11. مؤسسة

Tapescript

How to write a summary

Amir : Is that your homework, Hany?

Hany : Yes. What's wrong with it? It took me ages[1].

Amir : I can see that. It's very long.

Hany : So what?

Amir : Well, we were asked to write a summary[2], and yours looks longer than the text we're summarising[3]! You know it should be shorter, right?

Hany : Yes, I know that. But I didn't want to miss[4] anything important.

Amir : So, what was the text about?

Hany : I can't remember, but it's all in my summary.

Arabic meaning

1. استغرق مني وقتاً طويلا
2. ملخص
3. يلخص
4. يفوته

Amir : My friend, you need to think more and write less. Start by reading the whole text[5] and try to understand as much as you can. Ask yourself: What's the main[6] idea? How would I explain it to a friend quickly? Don't start writing anything until you've done that.

Hany : But you know me. I always forget something important.

Amir : Then you should read the text again. But the second time, underline[7] the most important words or phrases[8] in it. These are usually nouns for the things or people that the text is about, verbs for important actions, or phrases for times and places.

Hany : Okay.

Amir : After that, try to only look at the important words that you underlined when you're writing your summary. And just write complete sentences that fill in the gaps[9] between those words.

Hany : I see.

Amir : It's also helpful to use words or phrases that show the order in which things happen. Phrases like "first", "after that" or 'finally'.

Hany : And then?

Amir : When you've finished writing your summary, read it again. Check that it's clear and then look back at the original[10] text to see if you've included[11] all the important information.

5. يعني بالكامل
6. رئيسي
7. خط تحت
8. عبارات
9. فراغات
10. أصلي
11. يشمل

Reading

Is algae[1] the future of food?

We will need to find sustainable sources of food in the future because there will be more people to feed[2] and many places will be too hot and dry[3] for agriculture. So, why don't we think about farms in the sea?

Algae are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet[4] places. They are eaten by everything from the smallest fish to giant whales[5]. Some kinds of algae are called seaweed[6], and this is a very popular food in China and Japan.

Algae is very healthy and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating in the future. They hope that farmers won't need to damage the environment[7] because they will be growing our food in the ocean In fact, scientists think that growing algae will help clean the sea and improve the air that we breathe.

But will you want to eat it? Well, you might not even notice. Scientists are already using seaweed to replace[8] salt in bread and some other foods to make it much healthier.

Arabic meaning

1. طحالب
2. يُطعم/ يُغذي
3. جاف
4. مبتلة
5. حيتان عملاقة
6. طحلب بحري
7. البيئة
8. يحل محل/ يستبدل

Reading

This essay will focus on[1] the future of agriculture.

First, I will explain the reason why agriculture needs to change. **After that** we will look at several ways that agriculture could change. **Finally**, I will give my opinion on what farmers should do to prepare for the future.

The Earth's surface[2] is heating up and soon there will be less land that farmers can use.

In the case of[3] Africa, the continent[4] could lose up to 18 percent of its farmland in the next fifty years. **As a result**[5], farmers will need to farm their land and even more efficiently[6].

Due to[7] the fact that there will be less land available[8] for agriculture in the future, farmers will need to grow a greater variety of crops. Evidence[9] suggests that keeping livestock will not be sustainable and we may start the production of new sources[10] of food, like algae, instead.

In my view[11], farmers should see this as a chance to try new things and to start using new technology, such as robots, on their farms. They should start doing this immediately so they're prepared for the future.

To conclude, agriculture is clearly going to change a lot over the next few decades[12] and farmers will need to change the way they farm[13] too.

Arabic meaning

1. يركز على
2. سطح الأرض
3. فى حالة
4. القارة
5. ونتيجة لذلك
6. بكفاءة
7. بسبب
8. متاح
9. دليل
10. مصادر
11. فى رأيى
12. عقود
13. يشتغل بالزراعة/ يزرع

Tapescript

The population[1] of Egypt is growing by nearly two percent[2] a year. That means that there are one million more people living in its cities every six months. This is a problem in a country where 95 percent of its population live on about[3] of its land. It is thought that the population of Egypt will be around[4] 128 million by 2030. So what are the solutions[5] to these problems? One plan is to invest[6] billions of pounds in a new capital city[7] outside Cairo. This is one of the big projects that will help the 700,000 young people who start looking for work each year.

Arabic meaning

1. عدد السكان
2. فى المائة
3. حوالى
4. حوالى
5. حلول
6. يستثمر
7. عاصمة

Reading

The future of forests

The world has been losing millions of trees from the rainforests[1] every year for a long time. Many trees get cut down[2] so that we have wood to make furniture, and many more get cut down because people need the land to grow food. However, there may be hope for the future because countries around the world[3] are changing the way we think about these important areas.

Arabic meaning

1. الغابات المطيرة
2. تُقطع
3. حول العالم

Changes started a long time ago in Costa Rica. Around 60% of the rainforest in this small central American country was lost in the 1980s. But in the 1990s; the government started working with local farmers and persuaded them to look after the rainforest instead of cutting down more trees. This encouraged tourists to visit the country, and soon the local people[4] started to make more money[5] from tourism than from cutting down trees.

It was a great success, but things got worse[6] in other parts of the world, such as the Amazon rainforest, until 2004. Then many people and governments around the world started to change how they thought about rainforests, and the number of trees cut there has been getting smaller every year. Many parts of the Amazon rainforest are protected and, like Costa Rica, it is hoped that more people will be visiting and enjoying this extraordinary[7] place in the future. Finally, we can all hope that our children will be learning about the rainforests for many years to come.

Reading

Hydroponics

With the population[1] of the world predicted to grow to around 10 billion by 2050, one problem we will have is finding enough land for food production. A possible solution[2] to this problem is using something called hydroponics[3].

Hydroponics is a way to grow plants without using any soil. Instead[4], farmers grow the plants in special[5] water which contains[6] all the food that plants need to grow. This is a big help for farmers living in areas with poor soil. Hydroponics uses a lot less space than traditional[7] farming and, surprisingly[8], it also uses less water because any water that the plants do not use is reused. There are also fewer problems with insects[9]. Almost any plant can grow using hydroponics and many plants produce more fruit and leaves[10] this way.

Some people argue[11] that hydroponics is not very good for large farms because they need expensive computers to control the flow[12] of water, light, etc. to the plants, but others argue that it could offer the best solution to future problems. Many scientists think that in the future, we will be using hydroponics to grow food even[13] in places where nothing grows now. such as deserts, Antarctica or even space.

Arabic meaning

1. عدد السكان
2. حل لـ
3. الزراعة المائية (بدون تربة)
4. بدلا من ذلك
5. خاص / مميز
6. يحتوي على
7. تقليدي
8. بشكل مدهش
9. حشرات
10. أوراق الشجر
11. يجادل /
12. تدفق
13. حتى

Reading

Urban[1] farming

This essay will focus on something my uncle is planning to do to help food production: something called urban farming.

My uncle lives in London and first, I will explain what urban farming is and why he wants to do it with a a group of his friends. Urban farming is growing food in our cities. Of course, cities are not usually good for farming due to the fact that there is so little green space, but he says they will be using flat roofs[2], gardens and open spaces to grow what they can.

In my view, urban farming is a great idea. It will help my uncle and his friends to save[3] money in the shops, and it might also help them to earn money. They hope they will be selling some of the produce[4] to local restaurants and markets.

In the case of London, people already grow a lot of flowers in their gardens, but next year, the group of friends will be planting more fruit and vegetables in any open spaces[5] they can use. At the end of the year, they will be eating fresh fruit and vegetables from these spaces.

To conclude, urban farming is an interesting idea. All the evidence[6] suggests that it could help us grow our own food in the future, even in cities without much outdoor[7] space.

Arabic meaning

1. حضري/ مديني (مرتبط بالمدن وليس بالريف
2. أسقف مسطحة
3. يدخر
4. منتجات زراعية
5. مساحات/ فراغات
6. دليل
7. خارجي/ خلوي/ في الخارج

Video script

Three small changes to help the environment

Would you like to do more to help the environment by living a more sustainable life? It's actually easier than you might think. There are many small changes you can make that will help to protect the Earth. Here are three of them.

Let's start with food. You don't have to become a vegetarian, but eating less meat will help the environment. Livestock produce dangerous gases and they can damage the land they live on.

When you need to travel, think about whether you really need to go in the car or take the bus. It's often possible to walk or ride a bike instead and these are more sustainable ways of travelling.

Everyone likes to get new things, but before you ask your parents to buy you new clothes or new games, ask yourself if you really need them. It isn't sustainable for people to continue buying so much stuff!

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary & derivatives

1. An ---------- place or society is one in which agriculture is important or highly develop
   a. industrial b. internal c. agricultural d. archaeologica
2. The main ---------- here is wheat and this is grown even on the very steep slopes.
   a. course b. aglae c. earth d. crop
3. Tourism, which is a major ---------- of income for our country, may be seriously affect
   a. source b. result c. produce d. product
4. Mohamed Salah's ---------- achievements are most impressive. They are numerous.
   a. limited b. various c. nasty d. few
5. ---------- is a type of plant with no stems or leaves that grows in water or on damp surfaces.
   a. Cabbage b. Lettuce c. Algae d. Rocket
6. It is not ---------- to use petrol in cars, as one day, we will have no more oil.
   a. sustainable b. destructive c. agricultural d. various
7. My uncle keeps ---------- on his farm, such as sheep and goats.
   a. innovation b. agriculture c. livestock d. crop
8. ---------- is a method of growing plants without the use of soil, by using water through which nutrients are pumped.
   a. Astrology b. Hydrology c. Hydrocarbon d. Hydroponics
9. Fossil fuels do not support ---------- very well because they are a limited resource that eventually run out.
   a. sustainability b. inability c. responsibility d. respectability
10. 71% of the ---------- surface is sea.
    a. Sky's b. Earth's c. Sun's d. Moon's
11. We have to -------- on the main points not the whole subject.
    a. get b. put c. try d. focus
12. An -------- is someone who has a special skill or special knowledge of a subject ga as a result of training or experience.
    a. expert b. idiot c. experience d. illiterate
13. I don't have enough time to read the newspaper. Give me a -------- of the day's ne please.
    a. summery b. summary c. details d. few
14. My friend has caught Covid-19. His condition is --------. That's why I am worried a him.
    a. series b. excellent c. serious d. well

15. The police do not know the .... of the accident in the street yesterday.
a. challenge b. reason c. cause d. benefit

16. That is a .... hotel! It's the biggest building in the city.
a. giant b. mass c. hostile d. tiny

17. I'm going to wait until they .... the price of the phone before I buy it.
a. prevent b. increase c. reduce d. replace

18. The computer in the library does not work, so they are going to .... it.
a. reduce b. replace c. download d. upload

19. The house was built in a far place .... the trees of the forest.
a. between b. over c. next d. among

20. Do you sometimes have an .... with your brothers or sisters?
a. altitude b. engine c. argument d. expression

21. Africa and Europe are two of the world's ....
a. oceans b. continents c. countries d. planets

22. A shop in our town was completely .... by fire last night.
a. hurt b. injured c. destroyed d. flooded

23. A lot of tourists visit Paris every year. The number of tourists .... from 2 million to 5 million last year.
a. increased b. modified c. reduced d. decreased

24. The storm did a lot of .... to the houses by the sea .
a. sanitation b. donation c. damage d. blame

25. The company is in need of .... staff to improve its situation in the market.
a. lazy b. efficient c. difficult d. passive

26. A .... is a period of ten years.
a. millennium b. century c. decade d. fortnight

27. Huda's English has really .... and her speaking is much better now.
a. increased b. inherited c. influenced d. improved

28. Many shops in the city are international, but the shops in our village are all owned by .... people.
a. local b. location c. foreigner d. fresh

29. The .... of Cairo is more than ten million.
a. population b. number c. people d. price

30. " .... " is the opposite of ' persuade'
a. Convince b. Dissuade c. Encourage d. Motivate

31. " .... " is a synonym for 'giant'.
a. Tiny b. Small c. Huge d. Little

32. Inside is to indoor as outside is to ....
a. outdoor b. internal c. inner d. interesting

33. Sally is a kind-hearted girl. She .... her cat twice a say.
a. eats b. feeds c. poisons d. burns

34. Companies send attractive catalogues to .... people to order online.
a. train b. delay c. persuade d. prevent

35. Omar couldn't decide where to go for his holidays. He decided to go to Hurghada
a. in the end b. at the end c. by the end d. on the end

36. Which of the following sentences is NOT correct?
a. He contracted Spanish flu, which almost killed him.
b. The effect is almost impossible to describe.
c. The arrested man will almost certainly be kept at this police station.
d. She almost has decided to buy a car.

37. In some areas, fishing is not .... because one day there will be no fish left.
a. sustainable b. delivered c. destroyed d. changing

38. Around 30% of Egyptians are farmers who work in farming and ....
a. innovation b. agriculture c. livestock d. crop

39. Food .... went up after the company bought new equipment for its factory.
a. production b. innovation c. livestock d. crop

40. Technological .... means that we can now make seawater safe to drink.
a. production b. innovation c. agriculture d. crop

41. The .... of crops grown on that farm is huge.
a. variety b. invention c. livestock d. station

Expressions & Prepositions

42. It's hard to .... the difference between one action movie and another.
a. speak b. talk c. tell d. pray

43. .... to the weather report, it's going to rain.
a. Owing b. Due c. Thanks d. According

44. The amount of rain this month increased .... 50% over last month.
a. by b. of c. in d. on

45. In my ...., things won't change for the better. Do you see eye to eye with m
a. points of view b. view c. preview d. scene

46. It makes .... to leave early to avoid traffic.
a. scene b. since c. scent d. sense

47. How do you .... your opinion on something? Is it by starting a sentence w
think..."?
a. give b. take c. receive d. make

48. The package will be delivered in .... time
a. two day's b. two days c. two day d. two days'

49. It would be safer to take more money with you .... emergency.

a. in the case of b. in case c. if d. unless

50. What is the best way to prepare yourself .... the future?

a. at b. on c. for d. about

51. Had Donya kept the camera focused .... the river bank, she might have captured a vital scene.

a. on b. in c. at d. into

52. My uncle is an expert.......... family law. I am so proud of him.

a. of b. about c. in d. by

53. He took too many loans and .... he went bankrupt.

a. as a result of b. as a result c. as long as d. as soon as

54. .... the fact that it is raining, we can't go out.

a. Because b. In spite c. Despite d. Due to

55. Mr. Essam is an ESL teacher. He always encourages his students .... English.

a. speak b. to speak c. speaking d. on speaking

56. If you .... someone or something, you do what is necessary to keep them healthy, safe or in good condition.

a. look for b. look at c. look down on d. look after

Vocabulary with other meanings & uses

57. She had filled a basket with her garden ....

a. deduce b. produce c. induce d. introduce

58. .... is the area beyond the Earth's atmosphere, where the stars and planets are.

a. Space b. A space c. Spice d. Species

59. The Palestinian .... still matters to Arabs and Muslims.

a. reasons b. cause c. cases d. can

60. The word " .... " refers to money claimed by, or ordered to be paid to, a person as compensation for loss or injury

a. damage b. damages c. destruction d. innovation

61. Can you .... a box from a few pieces of wood?

a. farm b. cultivate c. fashion d. plant

Grammar

Future forms

1 Will

Affirmative الاثبات

will ('ll) + inf. مصدر الفعل

- I will do the washing-up.

Negative النفى

will not (= won't) + inf. مصدر الفعل

- I won't do the washing-up.

Interrogative الإستفهام

Will + الفاعل + مصدر الفعل inf. ...?

- Will you carry this bag for me please?

Usage الاستخدام

خدم will فى الحالات التالية :

بير عن حقيقة فى المستقبل (شيء لا نستطيع التحكم فيه)

- Mr. Essam will be 55 next year.

خدم للتعبير عن قرار سريع وليد اللحظة بعمل شيء في المستقبل

- My mobile is ringing. I will answer it.
- Oh, I've left the door open. I'll go and shut it

بير عن التنبؤات (المبنية على رأى شخصي وليس على دليل) والتوقعات والاعتقادات والافتراضات والاحتمالات
تأكد والتخمينات والاستنتاجات والدعوات والآمال فى المستقبل عاده مع التعبيرات والكلمات التالية :

I think/ I believe / I expect/ I suppose/ I hope/ I am sure / surely/ certainly/ defini
/ perhaps/ probably/ possibly.......

- I expect Omar will succeed.
- I'm sure my brother will be a successful lawyer one day.
- I hope you will get a good job.
- I'll probably be away for a week.
- Will you come to the concert ?
- The phone's ringing. That will be dad.

حوظة

كنا استخدام will + inf. مع وجود دليل فى الوقت الحاضر مع ظروف مثل : probably, certainly, definitely

- Look at these dark clouds; it will probably rain.

4 للتعبير عن التحذير من ضرر أو خطأ يمكن وقوعه

- Be careful or you will get burnt.
- Don't come near the dog or it will bite you.
- Study hard otherwise you won't pass the exam.

5 نستخدم will عند توزيع الأدوار

- You sweep the floor and I will cook the dinner.

6 للتعبير عن العروض offers

- That bag looks heavy. I will help you with it.
- I will clean this room for you.

7 للتعبير عن الطلب request

- Will you shut the door, please?
- Will you please be quiet? I'm trying to concentrate.

8 للتعبير عن الوعد promise

- I won't tell the headmaster what you said. I promise.
- I promise I will contact you in two days' time.

9 للتعبير عن الوعيد والتهديد threatening

- If you cheat again, I will tell the teacher.
- Do what I say; otherwise, you will be in trouble.

10 في الأسلوب الرسمي نستخدم will للحديث عن أحداث ستحدث في المستقبل مرتب لها من قبل مع بعض التفصيل

- The meeting will begin at 10.00 am. Coffee will be available from 9.30 onwards.

2 be + going to + inf

Affirmative الاثبات

فاعل + am/ is/ are + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل

- I am going to work hard this term.

Negative النفى

فاعل + am/ is/ are not + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل

- My friend is not going to work hard this term.

Interrogative الاستفهام

كلمة استفهام + am/ is/ are + subject + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل....?

- What are you going to do tomorrow?

Usage الاستخدام

- تستخدم (be) going to فى الحالات الآتية:

1 للتعبير عن حدث قررنا أو خططنا أو نوينا عمله في المستقبل وكان هذا قبل لحظة الكلام وقبل الإبلاغ به ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل: intend / intention / plan / decide / decision

A: Why are you turning on the television?

B: I am going to watch the news.

• I have decided that I am going to buy a new phone next month.
• Ahmed told me he is going to move back to Ismailia.

• A: There's a film on television tonight. Are you going to watch it?
B: No, I'm too tired. I'm going to have an early night.

- نستخدم (be) going to عندما نتنبأ بحدوث شيء في المستقبل (القريب خاصة) لوجود دليل في الموقف الحالي على ذلك

• Look at those black clouds! It is going to rain.
• There is a hole in the bottom of the boat. It is filling up with water very quickly. It is going to sink.

ملحوظة
• إذا كان سياق الجملة (تقول النشرة الجوية) يمكننا استخدام **(be) going to + inf.** أو **will + inf.**

• The weather forecast says it is going to rain.
• The weather forecast says it will rain.

- نستخدم **(be) going to** للتحذير من حدث وشيك الحدوث

• Get back! The bomb is going to explode.
• Look out! That cup is going to fall off.

ملاحظات

- نستخدم **was/ were going to + inf.** عندما نقول أن شخص كان ينوى فعل شيء في الماضي ولكنه لم يفعله.

• We were going to travel by train but then we decided to go by car.
• I was going to buy a jacket but I changed my mind.

3 The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

am / is / are + V + ing

- يستخدم ليدل على حدث مستقبلى تم الترتيب المسبق له... وهذه كلمات تدل على ذلك:

arrange / arrangements / prepare / preparation

• Our school is giving a party tomorrow. Everything has been arranged.
• I am going to the stadium tomorrow. I have got the ticket.

- المناسبات الاجتماعية والرسمية يتم الترتيب لها مسبقًا وبموعد يتم تحديده والاتفاق عليه (حتى وإن لم يذكر ذلك صراحة في الجملة).

• Mr Omar is flying to London tomorrow.
• I am visiting my friend next week.

4 Future continuous زمن المستقبل المستمر

Affirmative الاثبات

فاعل + will be + v- ing.

- We will be growing new crops in the future.

Negative النفى

فاعل + will not be + v- ing.

- We won't be growing new crops in the future.

Interrogative الإستفهام

كلمة استفهام + will + subject + be + v- ing....?

- When will he be arriving at the hotel?
- Will he be travelling with you?

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم المستقبل المستمر فى الحالات الآتية:

1 للتعبير عن حدث أو نشاط سيكون مستمرا فى وقت معين أو لفترة معينه في المستقبل

- This time next week I will be on holiday. I will be lying on a beautiful beach.
- Tomorrow at this time, I will be taking my English language exam.
- I'll be free until six o'clock. After that I will be doing my homework.
- After the operation you won't be doing any sport for a while.

ملحوظة :

هناك عبارات غالبًا نراها مع هذا الاستخدام للمستقبل المستمر (مع الوضع فى الاعتبار أنه يمكن أن نراها مستخدمه مع أزمنه أخرى)

- **This time next week**
- **In years' time**
- **Tomorrow at this time**

} **+ future continuous**

2 للتعبير عن حدث سيكون مستمرًا فى المستقبل عندما يقع حدث آخر

- When my father arrives home, we will be setting the table for lunch.
- By the time I get home, you'll probably be doing your homework.

هناك عبارات غالبا نراها مع هذا الاستخدام للمستقبل المستمر (مع الوضع فى الاعتبار انه يمكن أن نراها مستخدمه مع أزمنه أخرى)

- **When + present simple**
- **By the time + present simple**

} **+ future continuous**

3 للتعبير عن حدث سيحدث فقط لفترة قصيرة في المستقبل

- Fares will be working in Paris next month.

... سؤال بشكل مهذب عن خطط الناس خاصة عندما نريد أن نطلب منهم عمل شيء صعب أو غير متوقع

- Will you be using your bicycle this evening? "No, you can take it."
- Will you be starting work on the room today? You see, I hope to use it for a meeting tomorrow.

نستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن نشاط روتيني سيحدث في المستقبل

- I play chess every day. It is part of my routine. I will be playing chess on Friday.
- We will be going to my brother's house again for Christmas. (we always go there)
- I will be seeing Yousri on Tuesday. That's when we usually meet.

نستخدم بعد روابط السبب وقبل روابط النتيجة لإعطاء مبرر لشيء في المستقبل

- I can't meet you tomorrow because I will be studying for my exam.

نستخدم الصيغة التالية للإشارة إلى حدث مستمر الآن ونتوقع استمراره في المستقبل.

فاعل + will + still + be + v -ing.

- In an hour I'll still be ironing my clothes.
- Tomorrow he'll still be suffering from his cold.

للتنبوء بما سيكون مستمرًا في وقت معين في المستقبل

- When my son is 22, he will be working in a bank.

للتنبؤ بشيء سيكون سائد في المستقبل

- In 50 years, people will be living longer than they are now.
- Between 2022 and 2032, we will be helping people with diabetes.

Say, Don't say

A: I don't know how to connect my TV to my phone.

1- **Don't say** B: It is easy. I am going to show you.
Say B: It is easy. I will show you.

نستخدم **will + inf.** للتعبير عن القرارات السريعة والعروض.

A: What do you intend to study when you join the university?

2- **Don't say** B: I will study engineering.
Say B: I am going to study engineering.

نستخدم **(be) going to + inf.** للتعبير عن نيه القيام بعمل شيء في المستقبل ويكون هذا قبل لحظة الكلام

3- **Don't say** : My brother is being 22 next month.
Say : My brother will be 22 next month.

نستخدم **will + inf.** عندما نتحدث عن حقيقة في المستقبل

4- **Don't say** : Are you going to shut the window, please?
Say : Will you shut the window, please?

نستخدم **Will + subject + inf...?** وليس **(Be) going to + inf...?** عندما نطلب من شخص عمل شيء لنا

5- **Don't say** : At 8: 30 next Sunday, my brother will fly to New York.
Say : At 8: 30 next Sunday, my brother will be flying to New York.

نستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن حدث سيكون مستمر في وقت معين في المستقبل.

Test Yourself

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This course is good. I'm sure your English .... a lot.
   a. is going to improve b. improves c. would improve d. will improve
2. It's 35 degrees and it's only 7 a.m. It .... very hot today.
   a. was b is going to be c is being d. will be being
3. That's the doorbell. I .... the door. That must be my uncle.
   a. am going to open b. open c. am opening d. will open
4. A lot of people are waiting for the museum to open. It .... busy there today!
   a. going to be b. was c. is going to be d. would be
5. Atef .... a good job when he finishes his education.
   a. will probably get b. will probably be getting c. would get d. going to get
6. Bayern Munich's players are known to be skilled. I think they .... the next match.
   a. will win b. win c. are winning d. is going to win
7. This time tomorrow I .... for my father at the airport.
   a. will be waited b. will be waiting c. will have been waited d. going to wait

2- Translate into English:

١ – ستناهز جارتنا العزيزة مائة وعشرون عامًا يوم الأحد القادم !

٢ – في مثل هذا الوقت من يوم السبت القادم سيكون أبي مسافرًا إلى دوله الإمارات العربية المتحدة.

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Someone is at the door. I ...... who it is.
   a. am going to see b. will see c. am seeing d. would see
2. I think it ...... hot tomorrow.
   a. is going to be b. will c. is being d. would be
3. I ...... the summer holiday in Marsa Matrouh as planned.
   a. am going to spend b. will spend c am spent d. would spend
4. My little grandchild ...... three next Friday.
   a. is being b. will have been c. will be d. would be
5. I can't meet you tonight as I ...... for the exam.
   a. going to revise b. will have been revised c. will revise d. will be revising

6. I ...... to the book fair to buy the books I need. This is my intention.
a. will have gone b. am going to go c. going d. will go

7. I feel terrible with a severe stomachache. I think I ...... be sick.
a. should b. am going to c. am to d. will

8. I don't think the exam ...... difficult.
a. will be b. is going to be c. will have been d. is being

9. I can't visit my cousins in December because I ...... for a charity.
a. will be working b. would work
c. worked d. going to work

10. Who do you think ...... the football match this afternoon?
a. will be winning b. going to win c. will win d. will be won

11. Work on the new sports field ...... next Sunday.
a. will be beginning b. will begin c. would begin d. began

12. I completely forgot about it. Give me a moment; I ...... do it now.
a. will b. am going to
c. would d. Both 'a' & 'b' are OK

13. I ...... probably be away for a month this summer.
a. am going to b. will c. would d. am being

14. Don't worry. I am sure you ...... them again soon.
a. see b. are seeing c. will see d. would see

15. These are my plans for the summer holidays. First of all, I ...... to Ismailia.
a. will go b. am going to go c. are going d. would go

16. I won't be able to talk to you in the evening tomorrow because I ...... my homewor
a. would be doing b. would do c. will be doing d. going to do

17. Do you think that people will still ...... mobile phones in twenty years' time?
a. be using b. would use c. going to use d. be used

18. The weather report says it ...... cloudy all day tomorrow.
a. is being b. going to c. would be d. will be

19. After seeing some of the competition, Sarah Samir thinks she ...... the gold medal
a. will win b. wins c. is winning d. will be won

20. The twins ...... seventeen next week.
a. turning b. is going to turn c. turns d. will turn

21. If you like, I ...... the salad.
a. am making b. will make c. makes d. am going to make

22. Gana and Hana have made plans. They ...... tomorrow.
a. are going to skate b. will skate c. are skate d. do skate

23. Mohamed can't help you tonight because he ...... on a science project.
a. will be working b. going to work c. worked d. would work

24. Fine. You set the table, and I ...... the bread.
a. am cutting
b. cut
c. will cut
d. am cutting

25. I ...... an MSC when I get my university degree. This is my plan.
a. will do
b. do
c. have done
d. am going to do

26. The football players look very big. It ...... a difficult game.
a. would be
b. is going to be
c. is being
d. have been

27. I ...... the Faculty of Engineering when I grow up; it's my intention.
a. will join
b. am going to join
c. join
d. am joining

28. Please stop making so much noise or I ...... you to the librarian.
a. report
b. am going to report
c. am reporting
d. will report

29. I'm sure the baby ..... blue eyes, like her mother.
a. going to have
b. will have
c. is having
d. will be having

30. Donya is going on holiday soon. This time next week, she ...... in the Mediterranean.
a. will be sailing
b. will sail
c. would sail
d. sailed

31. A: Does our friend Huda know about the party next Friday?
B: I'm not sure. I ...... her when I see her.
a. am asking
b. ask
c. will ask
d. going to ask

32. Which of the following sentences is correct?
a. My sister is being 19 next Monday.
b. My sister would be 19 next Monday.
c. My sister was 19 next Monday.
d. My sister will be 19 next Monday.

33. Which of the following sentences is wrong?
a. Look at those heavy black clouds on the sky! I think it's going to rain.
b. I expect it will rain.
c. I promise I will phone you as soon as I arrive.
d. Be careful or you get arrested .

34. A: How much did you spend on this computer?
B: I ...... you how much I spent on my new computer. You'd be shocked!
a. don't tell
b. won't tell
c. am not telling
d. not going to tell

35. A: The grass is getting very long.
B: I know. I ...... it after lunch.
a. will be cut
b. am going to cut
c. cuts
d. am going to be cut

36. I am going to walk to school tomorrow for a change. This sentence expresses ......
a. a quick decision
b. a scheduled action
c. a future fact
d. a personal intention

37. Will you help me in the garden tomorrow, Adel ? This sentence expresses a/an ......
a. offer
b. warning
c. threat
d. request

38. Ahmed is a very clever student. I think he ...... a doctor in the future.
a. is going to be
b. is being
c. is
d. will be

39. A: We haven't got enough milk for the children.
B: Really? In this case, I ...... and buy some.
a. will go b. go c. am going d. am going to

40. I think I ...... that programme. Will you watch it with me?
a. am watching b. watch c. will watch d. going to watch

41. When I finish my course at Cairo University, I...... in a hospital.
a. am probably working b. will probably work
c. am probably going to work d. probably work

42. I predict that in the future, mobile phones ...... much smaller.
a. are going to be b. will be c. will have been d. are

43. Look, there's a sandstorm. I ...... the windows.
a. close b. am closing c. am going to close d. will close

44. What ...... in the holidays next summer?
a. do you do b. are you going to do c. will you do d. you'll be doing

45. **Mom:** Could one of you kids help me carry these bags?
Omar: I ......
a. am going to b. will c. would d. Both 'a' & 'b'

46. We ...... our back yard next spring to match the front. This is our plan.
a. will landscape b. are going to landscape
c. would landscape d. Both 'a' & 'b'

47. My truck ...... .The battery is dead.
a. won't start b. isn't going to start c. have to d. Both 'a' & 'b'

48. The mayor of London ...... for office again next term. He's already made plans.
a. will run b. is going to run c. would run d. are to run

49. I can't imagine that we ...... seaweeds in our country in twenty years' time.
a. will eat b. will be eating c. would eat d. Both 'a' & 'b'

50. In four hours' time, I ...... by the swimming pool.
a. will relax b. will be relaxing c. would relax d. going to relax

51. Oh, no! This computer is broken. I ...... a technician.
a. am going to call b. has to call c. would call d. will call

52. The car is too old. When ...... buy a new one?
a. are they going to b. will they to
c. are they going d. aren't they going

53. I think electric vehicles ...... pollute the environment as much as fuel or diesel vehi...
a. going to b. aren't going to c. won't d. Both 'a' & 'b'

54. Tom hasn't made any plans for Easter. He ...... stay at home.
a. is going to probably b. will probably
c. would probably d. going to probably

55. Can you lend me five hundred dollars? I ...... you back soon. I promise.
a. am going to pay b. will pay c. am paying d. would pay

56. Do you think you ...... married before you're 20?
a. will get b. going to get c. would get d. gets

57. I wonder what I ...... this time next year. Hopefully, I will be studying medicine at university.
a. will do b. will be doing c. would do d. doing

58. In 20 years, my grandson...... his own business.
a. will be running b. would run c. is being run d. going to run

59. In two years' time, Hamada ...... English at university.
a. would study b. will be studied c. will be studying d. is being studied

60. There is a good film on TV tonight. I think that it ...... at ten o'clock. I am not sure.
a. finishes b. will finish c. would finish d. going to finish

61. I ...... apply to study medicine at Zagazig University because when I finish my course I will probably work in a hospital.
a. am going to b. will c. would d. will have

Language Functions

- **Speculating about the future** • التنبوء بالمستقبل

- When I'm 18 years old, I will be ... عندما أكون في الثامنة عشر، سوف..........
- In fifty years everyone will be ... في غضون خمسون عاماً الجميع سوف يكونوا........
- By the end of this decade most people will .... بنهاية هذا العقد معظم الناس سوف ....
- In the future, I think people will spend more time ., ...
في المستقبل، أعتقد أن الناس سوف يقضون وقت أكثر في........

Writing practice

A Translate into Arabic:

1- Tea and coffee both contain caffeine, which is a mild stimulant and also causes the kidneys to excrete more water. They may cause sleeplessness, but not all people are affected.

2- In all countries, articles are consumed that have no nutritional value but make the food more attractive, or give pleasure. Spices, herbs, vinegar and pickles are used for this purpose.

3- In most societies differences in play between boys and girls are not merely expected, but actively encouraged. In our own culture, only very young boys may be allowed to play with their sisters' dolls occasionally without ridicule or remonstrance.

4. Can you imagine life without computers? Whether in the office, school or at home, computers have become a necessary part of our everyday life.

5- In hot areas, buildings with thick walls keep out the heat. In places where there is ... rain, buildings have sloping roofs. In Egypt there is little rain, so most buildings h... ones

B Translate into English:

على الحكومة أن تبدى الاهتمام الواجب بإقامة مشاريع عملاقة. فهذا سيؤدي إلى زيادة الدخل القومي. كما أنه سيحل مشاكلنا الاقتصادية

يستحسن أن يقرأ الآباء لأطفالهم، عندما يقرؤون لطفل من كتب القصص ومجلات الأطفال ، يصبح مدركًا أن الكتب والصحف تحمل شيئًا يثير الاهتمام والتسلية بالنسبة له.

... موقع للتواصل الإجتماعى يربط الأشخاص بالأصدقاء وغيرهم ممن يعملون ويدرسون ويعيشون حولهم ويستخدمه ... على اتصال مع الأصدقاء.

... عام ، يتم تصنيف الأشخاص إلى ثلاث فئات وفقًا لمواقفهم تجاه المال: البخلاء والمنفقون والمقتصدون . فالبخلاء ... ـهم من أشياء كثيرة وينفقون المال على الأشياء الأساسية فقط.

... العديد من أوجه التشابه بين التاريخ والسيرة الذاتية ، لكنهما ليسا مترادفين ، حيث يبحث كلا من كاتب السيرة الذاتية ... من الأدلة. يقومون بتقييم المعلومات التي يجدونها لتحديد ما إذا كانت واقعيه وذات صلة.

كلمات مساعدة

mild stimulant	منبه خفيف	are classified into	...صنف إلى
excrete	تفرز	categories	...ئات/ تصنيفات
nutritional value	قيمة غذائية	misers	بخلاء
pickles	مخللات	spenders	منفقون
merely	فقط / مجرد	economizers	المقتصدون
ridicule	سخرية	essential	أساسي
remonstrance	احتجاج / أعتراض	similarities	أوجه التشابه
sloping roofs	أسطح مائلة	synonymous	مرادف
show due interest in	تبدى الاهتمام الواجب بـ	biographer	كاتب سيرة
aware	مدرك / واع	historian	مؤرخ
amusement	تسلية	evaluate	يقيم
keep in touch with	يبقي على اتصال مع	factual	واقعي
Generally	بشكل عام / عموما	relevant	ذو صلة

Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

- What do you think you will be doing in ten years' time?

Key Vocabulary

attack (v. - ed)	يهاجم	The cart is pulling the horse	الأمور ليست كما ينبغي أن تكون (العربة تجر الحصان)
disguise (v.- d)	يتنكر	A taste of your own medicine	تتجرع مرارة ما فعلته بالآخرين / تذوق من نفس الكأس
servant (n.)	خادم	guilty (adj.)	مذنب
behave (v.- d)	يتصرف	honest (adj.)	أمين
rude (adj.)	وقح	mad (adj.)	مجنون
encourage (v.- d)	يشجع	kind (adj.)	طيب
wise (adj.)	حكيم	power (n)	السلطة
cart (n.)	عربه كارو	attendants	الحاضرين
hit (v.)	يضرب	immediately (adv.)	فورًا/ على الفور
foolish (adj.)	أحمق	exit (v.) (n.)	يخرج/ مخرج
noisy (adj.)	صاخب		

Set Text

(At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with her servant (1) Oswald.

GONERIL : Did my father, King Lear, hit(2) my **servant**?

OSWALD : Yes, madam.

GONERIL : I must do something. His soldiers are starting to **behave**(3) badly, and my father gets angry about(4) everything. When he comes there, I won't speak to him. I'll tell him that I am ill.

OSWALD : He's coming madam; I can hear him.

GONERIL : Tell the other servants not to do what he asks them, If he's unhappy, he can stay with(5) my sister. The foolish(6) old man still wants to have the power(7) that he's given away(8)!

OSWALD : Yes, madam.

GONERIL : I'll write to my sister immediately(9) and tell her my plans. (She exits(10).)

Arabic meaning

1. خادم
2. يضرب
3. يتصرف
4. يغضب من (شيء)
5. يقيم مع
6. أحمق
7. السلطة
8. وهبها للآخرين / استغني عنها
9. على الفور
10. تخرج
11. تنكرت

Act I, Scene iv

(At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Kent enters in different clothes.)

KENT : I've **disguised**(11) myself in different clothes, and I have changed how I usually speak. so I can help the man who told me to leave. I still love the King and I'll continue to work hard for him, but he won't know me.

(King Lear enters with soldiers and servants.)

KING LEAR: Get my dinner ready.

(A servant exits.)

(To Kent) Who are you?

KENT : I am a poor but honest[12] man.

KING LEAR: What do you want?

KENT : I want to help you, sir.

KING LEAR: Do you know me?

KENT : No, sir; but I want to help you because I can see that you are an imp[ortant] man.

KING LEAR: What can you do?

KENT : I can give good and honest advice[13].

KING LEAR: Then follow me. You can be my servant.

(Oswald enters)

You, where's my daughter?

OSWALD : I'm sorry, sir.

(He exits.)

KING LEAR: What did the man say? Call him back.

SOLDIER : He said that your daughter wasn't well.

KING LEAR: Why didn't he come back when I called him?

SOLDIER : Your majesty, he was very rude[14]. I don't know what the problem is; b[ut] servants, the Duke and your daughter are all being very unkind to you.

KING LEAR: I've noticed that too. But where's my Fool? I haven't seen him for two ...

SOLDIER : He has been very unhappy since Cordelia went to France.

KING LEAR: Don't say her name to me! Go and tell Goneril that I want to speak to ...

(The soldier exits. Oswald and the Fool enter.)

Oh, you, come here! Who am I?

OSWALD : My lady's father.

KING LEAR: My lady's father? How rude!

(King Lear hits him.)

OSWALD : Don't hit me, my lord.

KENT : *[Hitting him.]* Don't be rude to the King or I'll hit you, too!

KING LEAR: Thank you. You are a good man.

(Goneril enters.)

KING LEAR: What's the matter, Goneril? Why are you holding your head[15]?

FOOL : You should worry, old King, because you gave everything away, rathe[r] ... worrying about her head. One day, you will want everything back.

GONERIL : Father, are you encouraging[17] your men to behave badly? Your F[ool] ... and does what he wants.

FOOL : Even a fool knows when the cart is pulling the horse[18].

KING LEAR: Does anyone here know who I am? Tell me!

12. أمين
13. ... جيدة
14. وقح - فظ
15. ... رأسك
16. بدلا من
17. يشجع
18. (... الأمور)

GONERIL : You're old and you should be **wise**[19]. But you're keeping a hundred soldiers here; they are noisy[20] and rude. Please don't have so many soldiers, and only keep the men who can behave well.

KING LEAR: (*angry*) What did you say? Call my soldiers. You won't have any more trouble from me, because now I have only one daughter left.

{Albany enters and he is very surprised)

(To the soldiers) Prepare my horses.

ALBANY : Please, sir, wait.

KING LEAR: *(To himself)* Oh, why was I angry with Cordelia? She was not as rude to me as Goneril. Why was I so foolish?

ALBANY : Your majesty, I don't know what's made you angry, but I'm not **guilty**[21].

19. حكيم
20. صاخب
21. مذنب
22. ستذوق من نفس الكأس / ستتجرع مرارة فعلها
23. السلطة
24. الحاضرين
25. يهاجم

KING LEAR: That might be true, but listen. If Goneril has a child one day, and the child is rude to her, she will understand how I feel. Then she **will have a taste of her own medicine**[22].

(King Lear exits.)

ALBANY : What has happened, Goneril?

GONERILN : Nothing. Let him shout. He is a mad old man.

[King Lear enters again.]

KING LEAR: Goneril, you have told fifty of my soldiers to go!

ALBANY : What is the matter, sir?

KING LEAR: I'll tell you. *[To Goneril.]* I cannot believe that you have the power[23] to make me so unhappy. But you have. I still have one daughter left, and I am sure she will be kind to me when she hears what you have done. She will not be happy with you!

*[King Lear exits with Kent, and **Attendants**[24].]*

GONERIL : Did you hear that, my husband?

ALBANY : You know how much I love you, Goneril, but ..

GONERIL : Do not say more.

[To the Fool.] You, go.

[The Fool exits.]

GONERIL : Is it a good idea to let him keep a hundred soldiers to help him in his old age? They might **attack**[25] us.

ALBANY : I think you are worrying too much.

GONERIL : It's better to worry and be safe. I've written to my sister Regan and told her everything I'm not angry with you because you asked me to be kinder to my father, but you are being foolish.

ALBANY : Maybe you know more than I do, Goneril, but I think you are making problems rather than solving them.

[They exit.]

Exercises on King Lear

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To .... means to try to hurt someone.
   a. attract b. treat c. aid d. attack
2. To have a taste of your own medicine means ....
   a. to try to give medicine to other people
   b. to experience what other people do to you
   c. to experience what you do to others. d. All of the above
3. A: What does "The cart is pulling the horse" mean?
   B: It means ....
   a. the horse is pulling the cart. b. things are the way they should be.
   c. things are not the way they should be d. none of the above
4. I know you're upset, but there's no need to be .... to your mother.
   a. rude b. kind c. polite d. gentle
5. A famous journalist was .... of reporting scandal in order to sell his newspa
   That's why he was sent to prison.
   a. innocent b. guilty c. praised d. honoured
6. She .... herself as a man so she could fight on the battlefield.
   a. disguised b. created c. killed d. invented
7. If someone is wise, they are ....
   a. mad b. insane c. clever d. Both 'a' & 'b'
8. A cart usually goes .... a horse.
   a. in front of b. beside c. a head of d. behind
9. When students .... well, teachers praise them.
   a. insult b. misbehave c. behave d. fail
10. The .... who works in our house is good. That's why my father gives him a g
    salary.
    a. sultan b. servant c. serpent d. princess
11. Doctors should .... heavy smokers to give up smoking.
    a. discourage b. dissuade c. encourage d. dishearten
12. My brother is .... He always tells the truth and doesn't cheat or steal.
    a. dishonest b. corrupt c. deceitful d. honest
13. My uncle is starting to .... angry with everything.
    a. fall b. get c. go d. being
14. If you look or feel .... you look or feel so silly or ridiculous that people are likel
    laugh at you.
    a. foolish b. genius c. respectable d. wise
15. Mr. Sayed .... me a good piece of advice yesterday.
    a. took b. gave c. received d. made

16. I don't like nightclubs because they are too crowded and ....
a. quiet b. useful c. noisy d. calm

17. My mother prefers cooking with olive oil rather .... butter.
a. then b. than c. as d. so

18. If someone in authority has the .... to do something, they have the legal right to do it.
a. energy b. inability c. power d. deficiency

19. The opposite of 'negative' is ....
a. contrary b. passive c. opposing d. positive

20. The telephone rang, and he answered it immediately. I answered it ....
a. without delay b. after a long time c. in the long run d. after a year



TEST 3 Unit 3

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The weather has been very good for the cotton .... this year.
a. innovation b. agriculture c. livestock d. crop

2. This film is very .... , I'd prefer to watch something that will make us laugh!
a. sensible b funny c serious d fun

3. The farmer keeps a lot of .... such as goats and sheep.
a. innovation b. livestock c. agriculture d. crop

4. The shop that has just opened is giving .... free tea or coffee today. Will you go with me there?
a. up b. off c. away d. in

5. He was .... of murder. Therefore, he was hanged.
a. innocent b. clear c. guilty d. clean

6. The judge had listened to all the .... before he sent the criminal to prison for 20 years.
a. evidence b. evident c. dead d. deadly

7. I can't visit you because I .... for my sister's wedding all next afternoon.
a. might have prepared b. going to prepare
c. will prepare d. will be preparing

8. There are no clouds in the sky today. I think that it .... very hot.
a. would be b. will c. is going to be d. have been

9. There is a book club meeting and everyone .... there.
a. is going to go b. would go c. goes d. will be going

10. At one o'clock tomorrow, I .... lunch with my fiancée.
 a. will be eating b. would eat c. going to eat d. will be eaten

11. There are a lot of people in the room. It .... difficult to find a chair.
 a. would be b. is going to be c. being d. be

12. There are .... techniques for dealing with industrial pollution.
 a. various b. destructive c. tasty d. outdoor

13. The conditions were unfavourable for intensive agricultural ....
 a. intention b. production c. destruction d. mention

14. Unless help arrives within the next few days, thousands ....
 a. are starving b. will starve c. is going to starve d. would starve

15. I'll try my best to spot you. What .... wearing?
 a. are you going to b. would you be c. will you be d. will you

16. By the time I get home, you .... a bath.
 a. will probably be having b. would probably be having
 a. is going to have d. Both 'a' & 'b' are OK

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Cosmetics have been used throughout history. The ancient Greeks, the Egyptians, and Romans all used various kinds of makeup. Some of these cosmetics were used to imp their appearance. Others were used to protect their skin. But in some cases, things use makeup were dangerous, or even deadly!

Some of the first skin care treatments started in Egypt. Egyptians also developed s of the earliest sunscreens. They used oils and creams for protection against the sun dry winds. Egyptian and other ancient cultures also used various powders on their skin beauty. Egyptians used black kohl around their eyes. Romans put white chalk on their fa And Indians painted red henna on their bodies.

Most of the ancient cosmetic powders, oils, and creams were harmless. But in the n of beauty, some people applied dangerous chemicals and poisons to their skin. During Italian Renaissance, women wore white powder made of lead on their faces. Of cou doctors now know lead is like a poison for our bodies.

Also around the time of the Renaissance, women in Italy put drops of belladonna in t eyes. Belladonna is a very poisonous plant. The poison in the plant affects the nerves in body. By putting belladonna drops in her eyes,

a woman's pupils would become very large. People thought this made her more beau Actually, this is why the plant is called belladonna. In Italian, belladonna means "beau woman."

When Elizabeth I was queen of England in the late 1500s, some rather dange cosmetics were also used by women there. Women were using rouge made with merc They were also using special hair dye made with lead and sulphur. The dye was designe give people red hair, the same color as the

queen's hair. Over time, the dye made people's hair fall out. Finally, women using this dye ended up bald, like the queen, and had to wear wigs.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Which of the following statements is NOT correct?
   a. The Egyptians used makeup to help their skin.
   b. The Romans used chalk to make their faces white.
   c. Queen Elizabeth I had blond hair.
   d. Most cosmetics in the past were not dangerous.
2. Where did Italian women apply lead powder?
   a. In their hair
   b. On their lips
   c. To their cheeks
   d. Under their arms
3. What was belladonna used for?
   a. To give women pretty eyes
   b. To change the color of women's skin
   c. To poison plants
   d. To make people look smarter
4. What is the meaning of "rather" as it is used in the last paragraph?
   a. normally b. on the contrary c. preferred d. fairly

B: Answer the following questions:

5. What is the main idea of this reading?
6. Do you think makeup is good or bad for the skin? Why?
7. Find words in the passage that give the same meaning as the following:
   a. artificial coverings of hair for the head
   b. small black round areas in the middle of eyes
8. What does the underlined word 'They' refer to?

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

Once a new technique is discovered and adopted, society does not attempt to revert to the former technique. The automobile displaced the horse; the electric light replaced kerosene lamps; and sound movies replaced silent films.

B: Translate into English:

- تحتوي معظم المدن على نوافير جميلة ، ولكن في روما هي جزء حي من المدينة ويعد تقليدًا للزوار أن يلقوا عملات معدنية صغيرة في مياه النوافير.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on one of the following:

Fast food is something most people like, but....................

Revision 1

Key Vocabulary

amount (n / v-ed)	كمية/ مقدار - يبلغ/ يصل لمقدار	preparation (n)	
boost (v-ed)	يدعم / يقوي / يزيد من آداء	preparatory (adj)	
immune system (n)	جهاز المناعة بالجسم	variety (n)	
immunity (n)	حصانة / مناعة	injured (adj)	
prepare (v-d)	يجهز / يعدّ	injury (n)	

Listening

exactly (adv)	بالضبط	certificate (n)	
first aid	اسعافات أولية	perform (v - ed)	
course (n)	دورة تدريبية	technique (n)	
sports centre (n)	مركز رياضي	bandage (n)	

Reading & Extra reading

athlete (n)	لاعب رياضي	teenage (adj)	
athletics (n)	ألعاب القُوَى	teenager (n)	
athletic (adj)	رياضي / نشيط	persuade (v-d)	
competition (n)	مسابقة / منافسة	persuasion (n)	
competitive (adj)	تنافسي	local (ad)	
runner (n)	عدَّاء	locally (adv)	
distance (n)	مسافة / بُعد	college (n)	
distant (adj)	بعيد	register (v.-ed / n)	
energy (n)	طاقة	registration (n)	
energetic (adj)	نشيط / حيوي	benefit (n / v-ed)	
training (n)	تدريب	beneficial (adj)	
trainer (n)	مدرب	recipe (n)	
trainee (n)	متدرب	sustainable (adj.)	
boxer (n)	ملاكم	sustain (v.-ed)	
boxing (n)	رياضة الماكمة	chemical (ad / n)	
fight (n. / v-fought)	معركة - يقاتل	produce (v-d / n)	
fatty (adj)	دهني	compare (v-d)	
partner (n)	شريك	comparison (n)	

Expressions & Prepositions

(be) less / more likely to	يكون أقل / أكثر عُرضة لـ	easy to understand	سهل الفهم
instead of	بدلًا من	get better at	يتحسن في عمل شيئ
a wide variety of	مجموعة كبيرة من	register for a course	يسجل إسمه في دورة
as much as possible	بكل القدر الممكن	do a course	يأخذ دورة
as far as possible	بأبعد ما يمكن	do an activity	يقوم بنشاط
the same type of	نفس النوع من	fast food	الأطعمة سريعة التجهيز
give a reason for	يذكر سببًا لـ	in two weeks' time	خلال فترة أسبوعين
on my own	بمفردي	take part in	يشارك في
If you can't make it	إذا لم تستطع أن تفعل ذلك	take place	يحدث
recipes for meals	وصفات إعداد الوجبات	search for	يبحث عن
in a sustainable way	بشكل مستدام	have an accident	يتعرض لحادث

Reading

Kareem

I'm a runner(1) who regularly runs very long distances(2). I need to eat large amounts(3) of pasta(4), fruit, potatoes and other vegetables so I have enough energy(5) to run for 30 or 40 kilometres each day. I also need to eat a lot of different foods that will make me stronger, such as meat, fish and eggs. I drink a lot of orange juice to boost(6) my immune system(7), which means that I'm less likely to(8) get ill and have to stop training(9). I usually prepare my own food at home but when I want to eat out with my friends or family, I usually go to an Italian restaurant!

Amr

I'm a boxer(10), so I need to eat larger amounts of food than other athletes(11). When I started boxing(12), I started eating in a different way. Instead of(13) three large meals a day, I usually eat six smaller meals, but I don't eat a wide variety(14) of food. I usually eat eggs or white meat, like chicken, for almost every meal. Eating like this helps me to be stronger than the people I fight(15), which means I'm less likely to be injured(16). Before a big fight, I have to do a lot of training and I eat as much as possible, without eating unhealthy, fatty food(17), such as cakes and chocolate.

Arabic meaning

1. عدّاء
2. مسافات
3. كميات
4. مكرونة
5. طاقة
6. يقوي
7. جهاز المناعة
8. أقل عرضة لـ
9. تدريب
10. ملاكم
11. رياضيون
12. الملاكمة
13. بدلًا من
14. مجموعة متنوعة
15. يقاتل
16. مصاب
17. الأطعمة الدهنية

Tapescript

Interviewer : Hello and welcome back to the show. Next, we're going to talk to Mariam Mohamed from Gizah who has just started to do an interesting hobby. Could you tell us what you do, Mariam?

Mariam : Yes, sure. In my free time, I'm learning to help people who are ill or who have had an accident.

Interviewer : That sounds great. So you can learn new skills and help other people at the same time.

Mariam : Exactly[1]. I'm doing a first aid course[2] with about twenty other young people at our sports centre[3].

Interviewer : And will you receive a certificate[4] at the end of the course?

Mariam : Yes. I have to go to at least fifty hours of lessons. Then I'll get [illegible] certificate which shows that I can perform[5] basic first aid.

Interviewer : Great! So you're learning simple techniques[6] to start with and then learn more techniques, is that right?

Mariam : Yes. At the start, you need to learn simple things like how to put a [illegible] on someone. You don't have to know how to perform CPR, for [illegible] I'm sure I'll be taking courses for the next few years so I can learn as [illegible] as possible.

Interviewer : And why do you enjoy learning first aid so much? What's so inte[illegible] about it ?

Mariam : Well, it's great to learn something you can use to help people in the [illegible] and the course is really fun too. You don't need to sit at a desk and [illegible] books to learn first aid, you need to do it. Our teacher understands [illegible] he makes sure that the lessons are fun.

Interviewer : So you can learn something useful and have fun at the same time. Fantastic!

Reading

To : Aya@mail.com
From : Hadeer@mail.com

Hi, Aya,

How are you today?

I think it's great that you're going to start cooking healthier food. I'm sure it will give you more energy[1] and make you feel a lot better[2]. I'd also like to learn how to cook meals that are healthier than the fast food[3] that I usually eat. Do you want to do a cooking course[4] with me so we can learn together? There's a new course that's going to start in two weeks' time[5] at the local[6] college[7]. It's every Tue[illegible] evening from 6 p.m. to 8 p.m. And it's only for teenagers[8]!

You don't need to go to the college to register[9], you can do it on their website[10]. Just search for[11] the cooking courses and it's the first course you'll see. I can do the course on my own[12] if you can't make it[13], but it would be a lot more fun[14] to learn with a friend.
Talk to you soon!
Hadeer

9. يسجل إسمه
10. موقع على الإنترنت
11. يبحث عن
12. بمفردي
13. إذا لم تتمكن من فعل ذلك
14. أكثر متعة

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... system is our body's shield against infection.
   a. protective b. immune c. energetic d. sustainable
2. The burglars broke into the shop late at night and stole a very large .... of merchandise.
   a. number b. distance c. amount d. recipe
3. The good news is that the Egyptian economic growth is expected to .... to 2% this year.
   a. amount b. include c. arrive d. reach
4. I have revised my lessons very well. I feel I'm very well .... for the exam.
   a. measured b. scattered c. prepared d. repaired
5. In this restaurant, they offer a wide .... of Western and Eastern dishes.
   a. recipe b. variety c. society d. community
6. If you are overweight, you are more .... to develop diabetes and heart problems.
   a. like b. similar c. likely d. as
7. As your doctor, I advise you to cut down on .... foods if you want to lose weight.
   a. fatty b. delicious c. healthy d. tasty
8. Maha is a tall .... girl. She does well in most sports.
   a. athlete b. athletics c. athlete's d. athletic
9. I always try to .... driving during rush hours.
   a. compete b. persuade c. benefit d. avoid
10. Scientists are doing their best to find .... sources of energy.
    a. invisible b. sustainable c. finite d. energetic
11. All living things need food and water in order to .... life.
    a. compete b. compare c. present d. sustain
12. The average cow .... 40 glasses of milk each day.
    a. produces b. feeds c. introduces d. needs
13. When I was a preparatory school student, I .... a television quiz and won a prize.
    a. took place at b. took part in c. came up with d. looked forward to

14. I was made redundant last year, and am still searching -------- a new job.
a. in b. with c. to d. for

15. The final exam results will be announced -------- two weeks' time.
a. for b. in c. on d. at

16. My grandfather -------- in the 1973 war and was taken prisoner.
a. trained b. interviewed c. fought d. exercised

17. I regret to tell you that your father -------- a car accident on his way to Hurghada
a. has had b. has given c. has made d. has done

18. In the vegetable market, the demand for organic -------- is increasing.
a. product b. teenage c. produce d. college

19. Burger King and McDonald's are worldwide -------- food restaurants.
a. quick b. favourite c. rotten d. fast

20. Thank you for your kind offer. I can carry my luggage -------- my own.
a. with b. by c. in d. on

21. In our school, all the children -------- football training at least once a week. T teacher coaches them.
a. provide b. make c. do d. send

22. The strange thing is that he doesn't want to -------- a reason for his decision to from the bank
a. do b. make c. give d. have

23. The government has a/an -------- of all the births, deaths and marriages which occurred in the state.
a. register b. minister c. official d. receipt

24. In order to -------- from this course, you need to work hard and attend the le regularly.
a. avoid b. produce c. compare d. benefit

25. The course you did has really -------- your speaking and reading skills. They remarkably improved.
a. fought b. avoided c. trained d. boosted

26. Members of the Parliament are protected by parliamentary برلمانية -------- so th can freely criticize the government.
a. immunity b. community c. humanity d. celebrity

27. The young woman fainted when she heard that her husband was seriously -------- traffic accident and taken to hospital.
a. awarded b. compared c. registered d. injured

28. We are proud to have five Egyptian -------- who managed to swim across the E Channel.
a. competitions b. athletes c. runners d. boxers

29. Creating a sense of -------- among students in a classroom makes them try harder harder to be winners.
a. persuasion b. sustenance c. competition d. distance

30. According to the Minister of Education in a television .... , students will do their final exams on tablets.
a. occasion b. interview c. survival d. fight

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You .... park there. It says, 'No Parking'.
a. must b. don't have to c. needn't d. mustn't
2. We can wait for the bus if you want, but we .... Let's take a taxi. I have enough money.
a. mustn't b. needn't to c. don't have to d. don't have
3. We .... run to the station. When we got there, the train had already left.
a. didn't have to b. needn't have c. mustn't d. don't have to
4. I .... visit my grandmother this weekend. I haven't visited her for about a month.
a. have to b. had to c. must d. need
5. You .... to show your passport when you leave the country.
a. needn't b. don't have c. had d. have
6. You'll .... wait for me until I finish the meeting.
a. must b. don't have to c. have to d. need
7. Ahmed .... do the English exercise again because he got it all wrong.
a. had to b. will have c. didn't have d. needed
8. You .... washed the car. A boy comes to wash it every morning.
a. must have b. needn't c. don't have to d. needn't have
9. I .... write an essay on "Pollution" for homework. It's the teacher's instructions.
a. must b. have to c. don't have d. needn't have
10. You .... take photos here. It's a military area.
a. must b. needn't c. mustn't d. shouldn't

11. That was one of .... books I've ever read.
a. best b. the best c. the better d. good
12. Fayoum is not as large .... Cairo.
a. to b. than c. as d. so
13. who is .... boy in the class, Ali or Hany?
a. younger b. youngest c. young d. the youngest
14. Abeer and Omar are the same height. This means they are .... each other.
a. as tall as b. taller than c. not so tall d. the tallest of

15. The .... fat you eat, the healthier you become.
a. least b. much c. less d. most

16. It is becoming harder and .... to find a job these days.
a. harder b. hardest c. hard d. the hardest

17. She bought the cheapest dress she could find in the store. This means ....
a. The dress she bought was the least expensive one.
b. No other dress in the store was more expensive than the dress she bought.
c. The dress she bought was cheaper than all the dresses in the store.
d. A, B & C are correct

18. Salwa is .... more enthusiastic about taking part in the school project than ...
a. the most b. the least c. a lot d. most

19. Today is .... hotter than yesterday.
a. a little b. little c. less d. the least

20. This wall is full of cracks. It .... at any time. Let's do something about that.
a. will fall b. is going to fall c. is falling d. will be fallen

21. I can't go to the club with you today. I .... my grandmother this afternoon.
a. might visit b. going to visit c. will visit d. will be visiting

22. I .... the summer holiday in Marsa Matrouh as planned.
a. am going to spend
b. will spend
c. am spending
d. would spend

23. It's expected mobile phones .... much smaller in the future.
a. are going to be b. will be c. will have been d. are

24. When I finish my study, I .... abroad in search for a good job.
a. am probably travelling
b. will probably travel
c. am probably going to travel
d. probably travel

25. Ali! The doorbell is ringing. – OK, mom. I .... who is on the door.
a. see b. am seeing c. am going to see d. will see

26. Perhaps my uncle's family .... us next weekend.
a. are visiting b. are going to visit c. will visit d. may visit

27. What are your plans for tomorrow? – I .... to the farm with my father.
a. am going to go b. be going c. will have gone d. have gone

28. Watch out! You .... into a big hole.
a. are falling b. will fall c. will be falling d. are going to fall

29. Don't phone me at 4.00 p.m. today. I .... my English lesson at this time.
a. take b. will be taking c. have taken d. going to take

30. The traffic is terrible. We .... miss the start of the film.
a. will have missed b. will miss c. are going to miss d. are missing

TEST 4 Revision 1

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My friend Ali broke his leg and .... go to hospital where he received proper treatment.
   a. had to b. must c. has to d. didn't have to
2. It's a/an .... to wear this helmet for your own safety.
   a advice b unnecessary c necessary d must
3. When we were children, we didn't have emails, so we .... write letters.
   a. must b. had to c. have to d. need
4. This housemaid is the .... cook I have ever seen.
   a. bad b. worse c. the worst d. better
5. This is .... difficult exercise I've done. I don't think I'll pass it.
   a. the least b. less c. the most d. more than
6. Alexandria is .... from Cairo than Benha.
   a. far b. farther c. furthest d. the farthest
7. Alexandria is not .... hot as Cairo in summer.
   a. so b. much c. a lot d. most
8. I can't meet you at 3 pm this evening. I .... then. I usually sleep for some time after lunch.
   a. am sleeping b. will be slept c. have slept d. will be sleeping
9. My sister is studying medicine. She .... a doctor.
   a. is going to be b. is being c. will be being d. will have been
10. I think my mother .... shopping this afternoon. I'm not sure.
    a. is probably going b. will probably go
    c. probably be going d. will have been
11. It takes many years of hard study and .... to be an efficient doctor.
    a. training b. trainer c. trainee d. trained
12. This movie is not suitable for children under 12. Only .... and adults are allowed.
    a. heirs b. infants c. teenagers d. partners
13. It took me weeks to .... my father to let me drive his car. He finally agreed.
    a. avoid b. persuade c. produce d. register

14. 14. Hard work, combined with determination and good planning, is the .... success.

a. receipt
b. bill
c. invoice
d. recipe

15. I would rather buy .... made products than buy stuff made elsewhere.

a. local
b. domestic
c. locality
d. locally

16. The movie star .... at the hotel under a false name so that no one would [illegible] him.

a. entered
b. enrolled
c. registered
d. join

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

To toot, to cut the cheese, or to fart are all funny ways to talk about something that every[illegible] does: passing gas! A normal person passes about half a liter of gas a day, which equals a[illegible] 14 farts per day. Lots of people are embarrassed by passing gas, but there is no need to [illegible] this way. The first step is to admit that everyone does it. After you face up to this fact, then [illegible] can really enjoy learning some interesting facts about your gas.

There are several sources of gas. Gas in our intestines الأمعاء has to do with both the [illegible] we swallow and the gas molecules جزيئات in our blood. In addition, gas is also produced [illegible] chemical reactions and bacteria living in our intestines. Nervous people usually have more [illegible] for two reasons. They swallow more air when they get nervous, and food usually goes thro[illegible] their digestive systems faster, which means that the oxygen in the food cannot be absor[illegible] quickly enough. Therefore, it goes into the intestines and becomes gas.

Another interesting fact is that a person's diet affects the rottenness of his or her gas. Fo[illegible] with a lot of sulfur كبريت in them--such as eggs, meat, and cauliflower قرنبيط cause rotten [illegible] On the other hand, beans cause a lot of gas, but this gas isn't usually rotten because bea[illegible] aren't high in sulfur. However, they contain a lot of sugars that bacteria in the intestines lo[illegible] The bacteria eat the sugars and produce gas.

Finally, people wonder, "Where does gas go when you hold it in? Is this held gas harmfu[illegible] Well, this gas will not poison you, but you may get a bad stomachache from the pressure. T[illegible] gas that you hold in is neither released nor absorbed. It moves back up into the intestines a[illegible] sooner or later comes out. It is not lost, just delayed.

Now that you know some facts about gas, be proud of yourself and say, "Yes, I cut t[illegible] cheese!"

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How much gas does a person produce in one day?

a. None
b. Less than one liter
c. One liter
d. Fourteen liters

2. Why does gas from our bodies smell bad?

a. The air is bad.
b. It contains sulfur.
c. Food is digested quickly.
d. It is from bacteria.

3. According to the passage, which of the following foods would cause rotten gas?
   a. Candy b. Steak c. Black beans d. Pasta
4. What does the underlined word "**diet**" in the text probably mean?
   a. A part of the digestive system
   b. A program for losing weight
   c. Special foods to improve health
   d. The food a person eats

B: Answer the following questions:

5. What do you think is the main idea of the text?
6. Do you think passing gas is embarrassing in your culture? Are there other body functions that are embarrassing?
7. Has anything funny or embarrassing ever happened to you or someone you know? Tell us in detail.
8. Find words in the passage that are antonyms for ....
   a. relaxed b. fresh

E Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- Since the dawn of time, people have found ways to communicate. Smoke signals, tribal drums and letters were the earliest forms of communication. The telegram and telephone set the stage for the invention of the cellular phone.

B: Translate into English:

- في محاولة للتغلب على مشكلة نقص المياه ، تتوسع الدولة في استخدام أنظمة الري بالرش بدلاً من نظام الري بالغمر الذي كان مستخدمًا في مصر منذ العصور القديمة.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

- Modern technology has made the world a better place to live. How far do you agree or disagree?

Unit 4 Changing English

Objectives

- **Reading**
  An article about the effect of messaging on English today; Text messages; A text about Shakespeare and language; A blog post
- **Writing**
  A blog post about mobile phone use
- **Listening / Speaking**
  A speaker talking about messaging; Tips on how to write a successful blog post; A debate
- **Language**
  Reporting orders, requests and advice; could / should have + past participle
- **Life skills**
  Communication – Discussing opinions about text messaging
- **Values**
  Cooperation and Tolerance - The importance of good communication
- **Issues**
  Technological awareness – What makes good communication?

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary with Derivatives

abbreviation (n)	اختصار
abbreviate (v-d)	يختصر
abbreviated (adj)	مُختَصر
formal (adj)	رسمي
innovator (n)	مُبتكر
innovate (v-d)	يبتكر
linguist (n)	عالم في اللغة
misunderstand (v. –misunderstood)	يسيء الفهم
misunderstanding (n)	سوء الفهم
emoji (n)	الوجوه التعبيرية (التي نستخدمها في تطبيقات ومواقع التواصل الاجتماعي)

frown (v-ed) (n)	/ عبوس
tone (n)	الصوت / نغمه
prefixes (n)	/ بادئات (الكلمات)
suffixes (n)	(الكلمات)
procedure (n)	/ طريقة
introduction (n)	/ تمهيد
conclusion (n)	/ استنتاج
findings (n)	(بحث)
text massaging	رسائل نصية
not necessarily	بالضرورة

Listening

positive side	جانب إيجابي
negative side	جانب سلبي
personal (adj)	شخصي
response (n)	رد
upset (adj)	متضايق
headline (n)	عنوان (مقال مثلاً)
include (v-d)	يتضمن / يشمل
blog post	مدونة الكترونية
blogger (n)	مُدون

author (n)	
positively (adv)	
upset	
aware of	
face to face	
confusing (adj)	
confused (adj)	
facial expressions	ات الوجه
acronym (n)	ار (بالحروف الأولى)

sub-heading (n)	عنوان فرعي	immediate (adj)	فوري
introduction paragraph	فقرة تمهيدية	chat (v-ted)	يدردش
purpose (n)	غرض	absolutely (adv)	مطلقًا
frequently (adv)	مرارًا وتكرارًا	topic (n)	موضوع
thesaurus (n)	قاموس مفردات	reader (n)	قارئ
cite	استشهد بـ	headline (n)	عنوان
		sections (n)	أقسام

Reading

change (v-d) (n)	يتغير/ يغير/ تغيير/ فكة	messaging apps	تطبيقات المراسلة
actually (adv)	بالفعل	language (n)	لُغة
basic (adj)	أساسي / رئيسي	communication (n)	تواصل/ اتصالات
basically (adv)	بشكل أساسي/ أساسًا	communicate (v-d)	يتواصل/ يوصل
create (v-d)	يخلق/ يبدع	communicative (adj)	تواصلي/ اتصالي
creative (adj)	خلاق/ مبدع	great (adj)	عظيم/ هام
creatures (n)	مخلوقات	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
describe (v-d)	يصف	message (v-d)	يرسل رسالة (نصية أو الكترونية)
description (n)	وصف	require (v-d)	يحتاج/ يتطلب/ يستلزم
selfie (n)	صوره (سلفى)	requirements (n)	متطلبات
phrases (n)	عبارات	correct (adj) (v-ed)	صحيح/ يصحح
anymore (adv)	لم يعد	correctly (adv)	بشكل صحيح
connect (v-ed)	يوصل (شيئ بشيئ)/ يربط (ذهنيا بين شيئين)	article (n)	مقال/ سلعة/ ماده (فى الدستور أو القانون أو فى اتفاقيه...الخ)
sound (v-ed) (n) (adj)	يبدو/ صوت (غير أدمى)/ سليم / معافى	fun (n)	متعة/ مرح/ لهو
project (n)	مشروع / دراسة / بحث	suitable (adj)	مناسب
smartphones (n)	الهواتف الذكية	no longer	لم يعد
replies (n)	ردود	teenager (n)	مراهق

Language Focus & Workbook

Word	Meaning
copy (v-ied) (n)	يغش/ ينسخ/ يقلد – نسخة
voice (n) (v-d)	صوت آدمي/ يعبر عن
device (n)	جهاز
react (v-ed)	يتفاعل
reaction (n)	رد فعل
regret (v-ted) (n)	يندم / ندم
regretful (adj)	نادم
parcel (n)	طرد/ قطعه (من أرض تم تقسيمها)
endless (adj)	لا نهاية له / أبدى
brilliant (adj)	بارِع / باهِر
spelling (n)	الهجاء
images (n)	صور
organise (v-d)	ينظم
link (n) (v-ed)	رابط (على النت) / يربط بين
site (n)	موقع
headings (n)	عناوين
misuse (v-d) (n)	يسيء استخدام – استخدام خاطئ
unlike (prep) (adj)	بخلاف/ مختلف

Word	Meaning
recognisable (adj)	التعرف عليه
mansion (n)	
Greek (n) (adj)	اليونانية/ يوناني
Latin (n) (adj)	اللاتينية/ لاتيني
Russian (n) (adj)	الروسية/ روسي
title (n)	(كتاب/ مسرحية/ لوحه)- لقب
social media (n)	التواصل الاجتماعي
compare (v-d)	
comparison (n)	
(be) called	يُسمى
record (v-ed) (n)	رقم قياسي/ تسجيل/ اسطوانة
aim (n) (v-ed)	غرض/ يهدف/
report (n) (v-ed)	يبلغ عن/ يخبر
summarise (v-d)	
survey (n) (v-ed)	دراسَة/ يستطلع/ يستعرض
member (n)	
interests (n)	
hobbies (n)	

B Language Study

Definitions

- **tone (n)** نبرة الصوت / نغمة : the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinki
- **to misunderstand** : to not understand properly
- **to frown** : to have expression on your face that shows you are not happy.
- **not necessarily** : a response to something that has been said that may not be true c correct
- **abbreviation** : a short form of a word or expression
- **emoji** : an icon similar to an emotion, used in electronic messages and o websites, originally in Japan
- **formal** : made or done officially or publicly
- **innovator** : someone who introduces changes and new ideas
- **linguist** : someone who studies or teaches linguistics اللغويات

- **prefix** : a letter or group of letters added to the beginning of a word in order to form a different word
- **suffix** : a letter or group of letters added to the end a word in order to form a different word
- **procedure** : a way of doing something, especially the correct or usual way
- **introduction** : the act of bringing something into use for the first time
- **conclusion** : - the end or final part of something
  - something you decide after considering all the information you have
- **finding** : a conclusion reached after examination or investigation.

EXPRESSIONS

as soon as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن	in the modern age	في العصر الحديث
keep /stay in touch with	يظل على اتصال مع	see you later	أراك لاحقا
as a response to	كاستجابة لـ	come back	يعود
get upset	يتضايق	the amount of time	مقدار الوقت
the positive side to	الجانب الإيجابي لـ	do research	يقوم بعمل بحث
put the phone down	تضع / تترك التليفون	in general	عمومًا
way of communicating	طريقة للتواصل	at least	على الأقل
make notes	يكتب ملاحظات	make a negative comment about	يعلق تعليقا سلبيا على
have /hold/ conduct a debate about	يجرى مناظره بشأن	introduce new ideas into English	يقدموا (يدخلوا) أفكار جديدة إلى اللغة الانجليزية
on the internet	على الانترنت	rather than	وليس
go back	يعود	ever since	منذ ذلك الحين
ask for advice about	يطلب نصيحة بشأن	What's up?	ما الجديد لديك؟

Prepositions

agree with	يتفق مع/ يوافق على	unkind to	غير عطوف مع
chat with	يدردش مع	worried about	قلق بشأن
apply for (a job)	يتقدم لـ (وظيفة)	instead of	بدلًا من
deal with	يتعامل مع	change....into...	يحول...إلى
advice about	نصيحة بشأن	useful for	مفيد لـ
aware of	على وعي بـ		

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word		Synonym	Antonym
possible	ممكن	attainable - likely - potential	impossible -unattainable
correct	صحيح	right - proper	incorrect- wrong
suitable	مناسب	appropriate	unsuitable
basic	أساسى	fundamental - essential - chief	secondary - minor- unnecessary
like (prep.)	مثل	similar to	unlike
advantages	مزايا	merits	disadvantages- demerits
powerful	قوى	strong - potent	powerless - impotent

Spot the difference

great	عظيم/ هام/ كبير	greet	ي
message	رسالة/ يرسل رسالة (نصية أو الكترونية)	massage	لك/ يدلك
require	يحتاج/ يتطلب / يطلب	inquire	فسر/ يستعلم
change	يغير/ يتغير	exchange	بادل
later	فيما بعد/ لاحقا	the latter	ثاني
article	مقال (في جريده أو مجله)	essay	ال (عادة يكتبه الطلاب في عملهم درسي وفى الامتحانات)
title (n)	عنوان (كتاب/ مسرحية/ لوحه ...الخ)- لقب	address	نوان (محل الإقامة أو العمل)
at least	على الأقل	at last	خيرا
spell / spelt	يتهجى	spill/ spilt (spilled)	سكب / يريق

Abbreviations

LOL	laugh out loud	**c u l8r**	see you later
gr8	Great!	**plz**	Please
idk	I don't know	**2moro**	Tomorrow
thx	Thanks / Thank you	**ASAP**	As soon as possible

Language Notes

1 make / cause

- cause + مفعول + صفة / inf. مصدر الفعل

Music makes her happy. يجعل

His mom made him clean his room again.

- cause + مفعول + to + inf. مصدر الفعل

What caused you to change your mind? يجعل

2 (be) used to

- (be) used to + inf.

A thermometer is used to measure temperature. يُستخدم لكي

- (be) used for + verb-ing

A thermometer is used for measuring temperature. يُستخدم من أجل

- (be) used to + verb-ing

My little daughter is used to eating lunch at noon. معتاد دائمًا على

3 photo / picture / image

- photo

صورة

- (هى اختصار لكلمة photograph وهى تستخدم لشيء واحد فقط وهو الصورة الملتقطة بكاميرا)

Can you take a photo of me and my beloved teacher?

Did you get some good photos in Greece?

- picture

صورة

- (أى تجسيد لشخص أو لشيء أو لمشهد على أي سطح مستو سواء مأخوذة بالكاميرا أو مرسومه)

The room had several pictures on the walls.

He asked her permission to paint her a picture.

- image

الصورة الذهنية

- (رأى الناس عن شخص أو منظمه أو شيء أو منتج ...الخ ...أو السمعة التي تتعلق بهم)

They have made several attempts to improve the image of the police in India.

The recent scandal has damaged his clean-cut image.

- صورة (شخص أو شيء في المرآة أو عدسات الكاميرا أو صوره على شاشه تلفزيون أو كومبيوتر أو صوره شخص أو شيء منحوته فى خشب أو حجر)

She peered closely at نظرت عن كثب الى her image in the mirror.

4 abbreviation / acronym

- abbreviation — اختصار (صيغة مختصرة لكلمه أو عبارة مثل Dr).
- acronym — اختصار (يتكون من الحروف الأولى للكلمات وينطق ككلمه واحدة مثل NASA)

5 prefixes / suffixes

السابقة/ البادئة

- **prefix**

هي عبارة عن حرف أو مقطع يضاف إلى بداية الكلمة سواء كانت اسم أو صفة أو فعل أو ظرف، يغير معنى الكلمة

- هناك سوابق تعبر عن عكس المعنى opposite مثل: im-/ in-/ il-/ ir-/ un-/ dis- / non -

happy سعيد ⟶ unhappy غير سعيد

possible ممكن ⟶ impossible غير ممكن/ مستحيل

- هناك سوابق تشير إلى أن شيئًا يحدث بطريقه خطأ مثل mis-

use يستخدم ⟶ misuse يسيء الاستعمال

- هناك سوابق تعنى أن شيء يحدث مرة أخرى مثل re- التى تعنى (يعيد...)

build يبنى ⟶ rebuild يعيد بناء

use يستخدم ⟶ reuse يعيد استخدام

- هناك سوابق تشير الى العدد مثل :

multi- = many   tri- = three   bi - = two   mono- = one

bilingual ثنائي اللغة / multilingual متعدد اللغات

اللاحقة

- **suffix**

هي عبارة عن مقطع يضاف إلى نهاية الكلمة سواء كانت اسم أو صفة أو فعل أو ظرف، يغير معنى الكلمة

- هناك لواحق تعطى عكس الكلمة:

home منزل ⟶ homeless بلا مأوى

المقطع less معناه (بدون without)

- من اللواحق ما يكوينه الصفه من الاسم مثل : -able/ -ful

comfort راحة ⟶ comfortable مريح

care رعاية/ اهتمام ⟶ careful حريص

- هناك لواحق تشير إلى مهنه الشخص مثل - er / - or

director مدير/ مخرج

- هناك لواحق تكوِّن الاسم مثل -hood / -dom / -ism / -ment / -ity / -ty / -ist

child طفل ⟶ childhood الطفولة   cruel قاس ⟶ cruelty قسوة

Test Yourself

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- My teacher asked me to rewrite the first paragraph. The prefix 're-' in 'rewrite' means ....

a. not   b. again   c. against   d. incorrectly

2- We want to give tourists a positive .... of our country.

a. picture   b. photo   c. selfie   d. image

3- A microscope .... examine very small things.

a. used to   b. is used for   c. is used to   d. be used to

4- My boss .... me stay late. I didn't want to stay, but I had to.

a. made   b. caused   c. forced   d. allowed

5- Draw a .... of your house.

a. photo   b. image   c. picture   d. a & b

Reading

Plz read this article ASAP. It's gr8. Hope u 👍 it ! 😊
For any readers who can't understand the language of text messaging[1], the translation is: Please read this article as soon as possible. It's great. I hope you like it.
In text messages, abbreviations[2], emojis[3] and numbers are all used to make communication[4] quicker. The language of text messages doesn't require[5] correct spelling, or difficult grammar and punctuation.
Messaging language is appearing in everyday English more often. When people write emails, many of them use a lot of abbreviations and emojis. Some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!
So, is messaging language damaging English? Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't suitable in formal[6] emails. And now teachers are worried that some teenagers[7] are no longer[8] able to speak or write using English correctly. However, some linguists[9] suggest that the people who use messaging language are actually[10] anguage innovators[11], introducing new ideas into English. They argue that messaging language is quick, short and communicates a lot in a small space.
Whether or not you like messaging language, English is continuing to change. Perhaps it would be a good idea to learn some of the basic[12] abbreviations so you can enjoy talking to your friends with fun, short messages!

Arabic meaning

1. لغة الرسائل النصية
2. الاختصارات
3. الوجوه التعبيرية
4. التواصل / الاتصال
5. تتطلب
6. رسمى
7. المراهقون
8. لم يعودوا
9. عالِم فى اللغة
10. بالفعل
11. مبتكرون
12. أساسى / رئيسى

Tapescript

Messaging

Presenter : Hello everyone, thanks for joining me today on Afternoon Talktime. And today we are talking about messaging[1]. My guest today is Dr Magda Morsy. She is the author[2] of the book "A Guide to Messaging" which encourages us to use messaging positively[3]. Welcome to the programme, Dr Magda.

Dr Magda : Thank you. It's lovely to be here.

Presenter : So, many parents are worried about their children and messaging. I myself have a 15-year-old daughter and we had an example of a messaging problem just yesterday when she came down to dinner very upset[4]. She couldn't stop crying. Eventually she admitted that she was upset because of her friend. They were messaging and having fun, but then my daughter, Talia, had written LOL - laugh out loud - in response to a photo her friend, Mona, had posted of herself. Talia thought it was a funny photo. She waited for an hour, but Mona didn't reply. Talia couldn't understand what the problem was ·and was worried that Mona was upset with her.

Arabic meaning

1. إرسال رسالة نصية
2. مؤلفة
3. بإيجابية
4. منضايق

Dr Magda : This is a good example of why we need to be aware of[5] the advantages and disadvantages of messaging, and how it can very easily make us worried and upset if we get it wrong.

Presenter : Because messaging is different to speaking face-to-face[6], isn't it?

Dr Magda : Exactly! Sometimes face - to - face communication can be confusing[7], it's easy to feel the other person isn't listening for example, or isn't interested in what you are saying, but messaging can be much more confusing. And this is basically because you can't see the other person's face - is he or she smiling or frowning[8]? And you can't hear their voice - are they angry? Are they making a joke? Are they feeling sad? And you can't see their body movements. When we speak to someone face-to-face, we notice all these things; facial expressions[9], body movements and the tone[10] of what they are saying. When we message, we have to guess a lot of these things. This means we can often misunderstand[11] what the other person is trying to communicate.

Presenter : So, that's the negative side[12] of messaging. Is there a positive side[13]?

Dr Magda : Yes, of course. Messaging is great for staying in touch with[14] friends, but remember that messaging is designed to be short and quick so don't expect to have long conversations, and don't get upset when you get one word or even an abbreviation[15] or acronym[16] as a response to your message.

Presenter : So, what should my daughter, Talia, have done yesterday evening?

Dr Magda : Well, first of all, she shouldn't have got upset so quickly. Just because you don't get an immediate[17] reply does not necessarily mean that the person is not interested in chatting[18] with you. People are busy and they have got other things to do. So, she shouldn't have sat in her room for an hour looking at her phone and waiting for Mona to reply. She should have put her phone down[19] and done something else and checked her phone later. And of course, if she was really worried, she could have called and spoken to Mona. She could have messaged and said "Can I call you?"

Presenter : So, I think Dr Magda is telling us to remember that sometimes more traditional communication is important.

Dr Magda : I am! Absolutely[20]. Messaging isone form of communication not the only form of communication.

Presenter : Great- thank you, Dr Magda Morsy. Next on the programme.

5. على وعي بـ
6. وجهًا لوجه
7. مربك
8. عابس
9. تعبيرات الوجه
10. نبرة الصوت
11. يسيء فهم
12. جانب سلبي
13. جانب إيجابي
14. يبقى على اتصال بـ
15. اختصار
16. اختصار (بالحروف الأولى)
17. فوري
18. يدردش
19. تقع / تترك التليفون
20. مطلقًا

Reading

Shakespeare and the English language

Language is always changing, and new words are created all the time. We need new words to describe new technology, ideas and situations. For example, before people took photos of themselves on their phones, we didn't need a word for that. But when everyone started doing it, the word 'selfie'[1] became very useful, and it was added to dictionaries in 2013. Many famous dictionaries add new words every year, and sometimes they remove words and phrases[2] that we don't use anymore[3].

Shakespeare was a great innovator[4] with language, and he added more words and phrases into the English language than anyone else. He made new words by changing verbs into adjectives, changing nouns into verbs, and connecting[5] words to make new words.

He also added prefixes[6] and suffixes[7], for example, he created 'uncomfortable' from 'comfortable'.

Today the language that Shakespeare used can sound difficult, but he was writing in a way that made his stories easy for people to understand at that time.

Like messaging language, Shakespeare made new words from other words that everyone already knew. Then he used his words to describe the things that people most wanted to talk about.

Arabic meaning

1. صورة (سلفي)
2. عبارات
3. لم يعد
4. مبتكر
5. ربط
6. سوابق / بادئات
7. لواحق

Tapescript

Tips on writing a blog post

Speaker 1:

1. Start with your topic[1]. Think about what will interest and inform your reader[2].
2. Start with a headline[3] for your blog[4]. A headline should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information , be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.
3. Find a suitable photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog post is about.
4. Plan the sections[5] of your blog. Add a sub-heading[6] for eaeh section/new point.
5. Write your introduction paragraph[7]. Be clear what the purpose[8] of this blog post is. Speak to the reader - use first and third person. Include a question.
6. Write the main body of the blog . Keep sentences and paragraphs short. include images where useful. Do research to find facts to include .
7. Write a conclusion[9]. Refer back to your headline and your introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself use "we".

Arabic meaning

1. موضوع
2. قارىء
3. عنوان
4. مدونة
5. أقسام
6. عنوان فرعي
7. فقرة تمهيدية
8. غرض
9. خاتمة

8. Read and correct your blog post. Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not repeated key ideas too frequently[10]. Use an online thesaurus[11] to avoid repeating the same word too many times.
9. Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it make sense to them?
10. Cite[12] all your sources of information.

10. مرارًا وتكرارًا
11. قاموس مفردات
12. استشهد بـ

Reading

Emoji fun!

Yesterday, my four-year-old sister sent her grandparents some text messages from my phone. The problem is, there are no words, just a long line of emojis. This is confusing[1] because our grandparents think the messages are from me! Should I have taken the phone away from my sister?

When a child begins to learn how to speak, they first make different sounds[2]. It seems that children do the same with messaging. They use emojis rather than[3] proper words to communicate what they want to say.

But is this a good thing? Yes! Young children are learning to communicate[4]. With text messages, children can receive and read replies[5] which are written just for them. I'm sure this will make them feel special and they will want to communicate more.

So, instead of[6] taking phones away from children, perhaps we should give them our phones more often and say, "Send your grandparents a message".

Arabic meaning
1. مربك
2. أصوات
3. وليس
4. يتواصل
5. ردود
6. بدلا من

Reading

Hi Hamdi, I had so much fun this morning! laugh out loud LOL. I was on TV, talking about tech, and I warned people not to open any strange emails. It was great! They asked me to go back next week! I'll see you later (cu18r) and I will tell you all about it.
Khalid

Hey Nadia, thanks (thx) for your help ! I'm so glad you advised me to change the photos on my blog. I don't know (idk) what I was thinking! My dad warned me not to post personal information, but I didn't think about the photos. I'll change them as soon as possible (ASAP).
Judy

Yasser, why didn't you tell me that you can't find my book? I asked you to look after it. Can you please (Plz) look for it again and bring it to school tomorrow.(2 moro)?
Medhat

Reading

Salem : Hi Hazem! What's up[1]?

Hazem : Hi Salem. How was the meeting with your teacher?

Salem : Very useful! Thx[2] for asking. I asked him about my last exam.

Hazem : Gr8[3] ! How did he react?

Salem : I was worried when he started to frown, but then I understood that he was thinking carefully and the tone of his voice was very positive.

Hazem : Tell me what he said, plz[4].

Salem : He said I should have read the essay question more carefully because I misunderstood it , but he said that was not necessarily the reason I got a low mark. The problem was that shouldn't have used emojis in my essay.

Hazem : I can't believe you used emojis in your exam!

Arabic meaning

1. ما الجديد لديك؟
2. أشكرك
3. عظيم
4. من فضلك

Reading

Nihal, aged 16

A new girl has started at our school and I wanted to be friends with her. I spoke to her in the playground and we took a selfie together. That afternoon, I posted it online, but she didn't like the photo and the next day at school she didn't speak to me. What did I do wrong?

Adam, aged 17

Last week, my friend sent me a text message to say that he was unhappy because he had failed a test at school. It was late and I didn't know what to say, sol decided to reply in the morning. But then, too many things happened in the morning and I forgot. Now, he thinks that I don't care. What should I have done?

Reading

Endless change

The Romans spoke a language called Latin[1] and they first took it to the country they called Britannia almost two thousand years ago. However, the English language came from Germany when people called Angles and Saxons arrived about 500 years later. Soon the Land of the Angles became known as England and the English have been using and misusing[2] foreign[3] words ever since.

Arabic meaning

1. اللغة اللاتينية
2. يسيء استخدام
3. أجنبي

For example, words like cake, eggs, and happy all come from Old Norse, which was the language spoken by the Vikings who came to England a few years after the Angles. However, many more English words came from the French, who arrived in 1066.

Unlike[4] the poor people, who continued speaking English, all the rich and powerful people spoke French. That's why there are so many words in English with similar meanings[5]. French words are recognisable[6] because they usually describe[7] something which is better. For example, the word house is an English word, but a big house is called a mansion[8], which is a French word.

In the modern age, we often reuse old words from the past to make new international words for technology. For example, the first part of the word helicopte Greek[9] and the second part is Latin, but the word was first used by a Russian[10] spea living in America.

4. على عكس
5. معاني
6. يمكن التعرف عليها
7. يصف
8. بيت كبير
9. يوناني
10. روسي

Reading

The aim[1] of this report[2] is to summarise[3] the findings[4] of the survey[5] into the ti students spend using social media[6].

Between 2015 and 2020, we asked 1,200 students about the amount of time they spent using social media. We also asked them how they used social media, and what they liked and disliked about using it. We recorded[7] our results and compared[8] them.

Most of the students that we spoke to were surprised by how much time they spent on social media when they thought about it carefully.

Many students thought that they were spending too much time on social media and some students said that they would try to spend less time on social media. Some students reported[9] that at least one member of their family had made a negative comment about it.

However, almost all of the students reported that. they enjoyed using social media and most of the students did not want to stop using it. Most students use social media on their phones. The students used social media to keep in touch with[10] the friends, and to follow their interests[11] or hobbies[12].

In general, students enjoy social media and they are using it more often. However, i is making a small number of students worried because they feel that they are spendin too much time on it.

Arabic mean

1. هدف
2. تقرير
3. يلخص
4. نتائج
5. مسح/ دِرَاسَة
6. وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
7. يسجل
8. يقارن
9. أخبر / بلغ
10. على اتصال بـ
11. اهتمامات
12. هوايات

Video script

Smartphones are changing the way we choose to communicate with each other. More people use their phones to send and receive messages than they do to make phone calls. Messaging is quick and cheap. We can keep in contact with friends, make and check arrangements, send photos, ask questions and receive answers within seconds.

Messaging is now more popular than emails, especially between friends and family. Messaging increased by 7000% in the ten years between 2007 and 2017 and is still rising. Reports suggest that more than 560 billion text messages are sent around the world every month. And it seems that teenagers send more than most adults.

Staying in contact with people is really important and messaging is a fun way to do this, but we need to remember that text messaging is not the same as having a conversation or spending time with someone: that's important too.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary & derivatives

1. We put ...... at the end of words.
   a. suffixes b. prefixes c. influxes d. reflexes
2. We don't usually use ...... English when we send text messages.
   a. everyday b. informal c. formal d. casual
3. In the world of technology, a/an ...... is someone who can improve or create new devices.
   a. explorer b. innovator c. archaeologist d. discoverer
4. ASAP is a/an ...... of "as soon as possible".
   a. antonym b. opposite c. derivative d. abbreviation
5. Our geography teacher never smiles and has a permanent ....
   a. frown b. emoji c. tone d. laugh
6. I shouldn't have read the email so quickly because I ...... the message.
   a. texted b. misused c. understood d. misunderstood
7. A/ An ...... is someone who teaches linguistics.
   a. architect b. linguist c. designer d. cartoonist
8. The author summarises his view in the ...... of the book.
   a. mission b. introduction c. abreviation d. motion
9. His ...... changed dramatically when he saw the money.
   a. ton b. tone c. tin d. tonne
10. When I was chatting with my friend, I added a 'wink' ...... to show that I was joking.
    a. emoji b. email c. elegy d. emir
11. The ...... of something is its ending.
    a. introduction b. heading c. conclusion d. start

12. They are creative. Their ability to ______ has allowed them to compete in world marke[ts]
   a. innovate b. deteriorate c. contaminate d. devastate
13. His first name is Mohsen. He ______ it to Mo.
   a. detailed b. abbreviated c. lengthened d. expanded
14. A ______ is a way of doing something, especially the usual or correct way.
   a. procedure b. result c. producer d. reduction
15. There are papers that present the research ______ on the subject of what employers w[ant]
   a. hidings b. findings c. climbing d. lightning
16. My broken leg will probably ______ surgery.
   a. inquire b. retire c. require d. be needed
17. We must make sure that things are done ______
   a. correct b. corrects c. correctness d. correctly
18. He is a wicked person, so they don't consider him a/ an ______ husband for their daugh[ter]
   a. suitable b. unsuitable c. improper d. inappropriate
19. We ______ to inform passengers travelling to Cairo that their train will be 20 minutes la[te]
   a suggest b announce c refuse d regret
20. I love the ______ of birds singing in the morning.
   a sound b. soup c. noisy d. voice
21. The conflict in the Middle East is ______ . It seems as if it will never stop.
   a. temporary b. short-lived c. endless d. momentary
22. My sister's given me this ______ book. It is really interesting and useful.
   a. nasty b. brilliant c. dull d. boring
23. Millions of people visit YouTube and other ______ sites like Facebook and Twitter daily
   a. social media b. building c. radio d. social ladder
24. Can you speak a foreign ______? - Yes, I speak English.
   a. linguist b. language c. policy d. dictionary
25. I regularly record my thoughts about any subject in my ______ on the internet.
   a. block b. location c. blog d. blogger
26. My brother is a big fan of Barcelona. ______ my brother, I am a big fan of Real Madrid
   a. Like b. Unlike c. As d. Such as
27. He got zero because his essay was full of ______ mistakes.
   a. spilling b. splitting c. spelling d. splitting
28. I'll send you the ______ to our online forum منتدى.
   a. link b. way c. road d. loop
29. My uncle used to smoke. He doesn't smoke ______ .
   a. no longer b. anymore c. no more d. moreover
30. A: What about going to the zoo?
   B: That ______ a good idea.
   a. speaks b. talks c. likes d. sounds
31. A: Atef's computer is ______ to the internet.
   a. tied b. connected c. wrapped d. nailed

32. A: Could you try and ...... the man you saw?
B: Yes, of course. He is a tall man with curly hair.
a. describe b. subscribe c. bribe d. deprive

33. " ...... " is the opposite of ' demerit'.
a. Downside b. Disadvantage c. Advantage d. Drawback

34. "...... " is a synonym for 'correct '.
a. wrong b. left c. huge d. right

35. Secondary is to minor as fundamental is to ......
a. unnecessary b. trivial c. basic d. unimportant

36. My friend is careless. The suffix '-less' in 'careless' means......
a. possible b. again c. with d. without

37. My neighbour is a ......man. He is able to control and influence people.
a. powerless b. powerful c. helpless d. ineffective

Expressions & Prepositions

38. Omar has left university and now he is going to ...... for a job at a bank.
a. apply b. advertise c. judge d. graduate

39. Their uncle is a scientist. He's ...... research into new forms of energy.
a. making b. taking c. getting d. doing

40. Now, make sure you ......, OK? I want to hear all about your time in Paris!
a. stay in touch b. lose touch c. touch wood d. go to hell

41. It will take you not less than three hours to reach Alex. This means it will take you ...... three hours to get there.
a. no more than b. at last c. at least d. at most

42. My son was missing for days; but he......home last night.
a. came out b. came back c. got up d. put on

43. I agree ......you that the new educational system in Japan is by far the best.
a. at b. on c. to d. with

44. Mr. Essam asked me to change five sentences......passive.
a. at b. on c. into d. in

45. My brother caught Covid-19 from his friend. I am worried......him.
a. in b. on c. into d. about

46. You can use milk instead ...... cream in this recipe.
a. off b. at c. of d. about

47. The space under the desk is useful ......storing CDs.
a. at b. for c. of d. about

48. There's only one way to deal ......naughty children and that's to be strict with them.
a. with b. by c. at d. about

49. After the storm, there was a huge...... of water on the roads.
a. floods b. number c. amount d. lot

50. ...... a note to call again next week.
a. Do b. Make c. Imagine d. Dial

51. I would like to ...... a comment on the way this debate is structured.
a. make b. do c. has d. play

52. I think we should ...... a public debate on this issue.
a. make b. deceive c. have d. play

Vocabulary with other meanings & uses

53. Some scientists have ...... concern that the disease could be passed on to humans.
a. sounded b. said c. voiced d. told

54. Over the years I've come to the ...... that crime doesn't pay as all criminals are punished in the end.
a. imagination b. illusion c. deception d. conclusion

55. I had ...... for a £10 note. I had the same value in smaller coins.
a. nothing b. change c. banknotes d. notes

56. These small ...... of land were purchased for the most part by local people.
a. parcels b. particles c. article d. verses

57. A: Could you tell me your official job ......?'
B: It's Operations Manager.
a. address b. surname c. pet name d. title

58. My grandmother is 120 years old. However, his body is still ......
a. weak b. tiny c. sound d. feeble

59. ...... 53 of the constitution guarantees freedom of religion.
a. Essay b. Poem c. Tale d. Article

60. I spent a lot of time listening to ......
a. paintings b. records c. roses d. lentils

Grammar

(A) Reporting verbs with infinitive clauses

كيف نحول الأمر أو الطلب أو النصيحة من المباشر إلى الغير مباشر؟

- The judge said to them, "Call the first witness." (order أمر)
- Adel said to Ahmed," Can you lend me $500?" (request طلب)
- Gala said to Nadeen, " Don't come and visit me yet. I'm infectious!" (advice نصيحة)
- Ahmed said to me, " If I were you, I would do sport" (advice نصيحة)

١- نحول فعل القول said / said to إلى أحد أفعال نقل الكلام/ أفعال التبليغ reporting verbs مثل :

told / ordered/ commanded (للتعبير عن الأمر)
asked/ requested (للتعبير عن الطلب)
begged (للتعبير عن التوسل والرجاء)
advised (للتعبير عن النصيحة)
encouraged/ urged (للتعبير عن التشجيع)
warned (للتعبير عن التحذير)
instructed (للتعبير عن الإرشاد)

٢- نضع بعد فعل التبليغ المفعول غير المباشر

٣- نحذف علامات التنصيص "........" ونربط بـ to في الإثبات و not to فى النفى (مع ملاحظه تغيير الضمائر والأزمنة والكلمات وفقا لقواعد التحويل إلى الغير مباشر المعروفة)

(فاعل + reporting verb + مفعول غير مباشر + to / not to + inf. مصدر الفعل....)

1. The judge said to them, "Call the first witness," (Direct)
   - The judge ordered them to call the first witness. (Reported)
2. Adel said to Ahmed," Can you lend me $500?" (Direct)
   - Adel asked Ahmed to lend him $500. (Reported)
3. Gala said to Nadeen, " Don't come and visit me yet because I'm infectious!" (Direct)
   - Gala advised Nadeen not to come and visit her yet because she was infectious. (Reported)
4. Ahmed said to me, " If I were you, I would do sport." (Direct)
   - Ahmed advised me to do sport. (Reported)
5- Ali said to his friend, "Study science at university." (Direct)
   - Ali encouraged his friend to study science at university. (Reported)

Test Yourself

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar .... me to help him. It was a polite request, so I agreed.
   a. ordered b. asked c. warned d. told
2. My sister .... me to study day and night.
   a. advised b. discouraged c. said d. made
3. I warned my little brother .... home alone.
   a. don't walk b. not to walk c. walk d. not walking
4. His father .... him to go home, so he left immediately.
   a. said b. inquired c. told d. wondered

2- Translate into English:

١- لقد طلبت من أخي بالأمس أن يشترى لى قلم رصاص جديد.

٢- أمر الضابط الجنود أن يطلقوا النيران.

(B) could / should have + pp

1. could have + pp كان بالإمكان أن

نستخدم هذه التركيبة اللغوية لتقول أن شيء كان يمكن حدوثه في الماضي أو أن شخص كان باستطاعته عمل شيء في الماضي ولكنه لم يفعله :

- I could have stayed up late, but I decided to go to bed early.
- They could have won the race, but they didn't try hard enough.
- He could have studied harder, but he was too lazy and that's why he failed the exam.

2. couldn't have + pp. لم يكن بالإمكان أن

نستخدم هذه التركيبة اللغوية لتقول أن شيء ما لم يكن ممكنا في الماضي حتى لو كنا نريد عمله

- I couldn't have arrived any earlier. There was a terrible traffic jam (= it was impossible for me to have arrived any earlier).
- He couldn't have passed the exam, even if he had studied harder. It was a really, really difficult exam.

3. should have + pp. كان يجب أن

١- نستخدمها للتعبير عن الندم **regret** على شيء لم نفعله في الماضي أو عندما نلوم شخص على شيء كان يجب أن يفعله في الماضي ولكن هذا لم يحدث

- I didn't go to bed early and now I'm tired. I should have gone to bed early.
- You didn't call me and I was worried. You should have called me when you arrived.

٢- نستخدمها عاده مع **by now** للتنبوء (بأن شيء ما حدث لو أن كل الأمور على ما يرام ولكننا لسنا متأكدين من هذا)

- His plane should have arrived by now. (= if everything is fine, the plane has arrived.)
- Ahmed should have finished work by now. (= if everything is normal, Ahmed has finished work.)

تذكر

يمكن أيضا أن نستخدم لنقول أن شيء ما كان سيحدث should have + pp لو كانت الأمور على ما يرام هذا لم يحدث

- Amal should have arrived by now, but she hasn't.

4. shouldn't have + pp.

نستخدم هذا التركيبة اللغوية لنقول أن شيئ ما لم يكن عمله فكرة جيدة ولكنك فعلته

- I said something bad to my best friend during an argument. I shouldn't have done that. It really hurt his feelings.

لاحظ

should/ shouldn't have + pp = ought/ ought not to have + pp

1. would have + pp.

يمكن استخدام هذه التركيبة اللغوية لنقول أننا كنا نرغب في عمل شيئ في الماضي ولكننا لم نفعله

- I would have gone to the party, but I was really busy.
(= I wanted to go to the party, but I didn't because I was busy. If I hadn't been so busy, I would have gone to the party.)
- I would have called you, but I didn't know your number.
(= I wanted to call you but I didn't know your number, so I didn't call you.)

2. could have + pp = might have + pp.... ربما كان

نستخدمها أيضا للتعبير عن عدم التأكد من حدوث شيء في الماضي

A : Why is Atef late?

B: I am not sure. He could have got stuck in traffic.
(= He might have got stuck in traffic)

Test Yourself

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nour had the ability to buy a dictionary. She........ bought the book, but she borrowed it from the library instead.
   a. couldn't have b. shouldn't have c. could have d. ought to
2. I........ eaten so much cake! I did eat a lot of cake and now I don't feel good.
   a. couldn't have b. should have c. shouldn't have d. could have
3. Karim........ helped Samir, but he didn't because they aren't friends anymore.
   a. could have b. couldn't have c. shouldn't have d. ought to
4. Why hasn't he called? Tamer said he would call when he got to the hotel and he .... arrived by now.
   a. could have b. couldn't have c. shouldn't have d. should have

5. Ahmed was working with me all day, so you .... seen him at the park.

   a. could have b. couldn't have c. shouldn't have d. should have

6. I .... gone to bed earlier last night. I'm really tired today.

   a. will have b. shouldn't have c. ought not to have d. ought to have

2- Translate into English:

١- ما كان ينبغي عليك أن تركن سيارتك هنا لأنها منطقة يُمنع فيها ذلك.

٢- لقد كان بوسعه أن يساعدني ولكنه لم يفعل ذلك.

Say, Don't say

1- **Don't say** : Abo Bakr advised me that do sport.
Say : Abo Bakr advised me to do sport.
نستخدم **advise + object + to + inf.**

2- **Don't say** : His father ordered him to not smoke.
Say : His father ordered him not to smoke.
فى حالة النهى نستخدم **reporting verb + object + not to + inf.**

3- **Don't say** : You should go to bed early last night.
Say : You should have gone to bed early last night.
للتعبير عن الندم أو إلقاء اللوم على شخص لأنه لم يفعل شيء كان ينبغي أن يفعله في الماضي نستخدم **(should + have + p.p).**

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The composition is full of mistakes. You .... it well.

   a. needn't have checked b. must have checked
   c. should have checked d. shouldn't have checked

2. The flight coming from New York was postponed; there .... have been a problem with the plane engine.

   a. mustn't b. should c. might d. must

3. Look! The sun is very hot. I .... an umbrella. I think I must buy one now.

   a. might have bought b. must have bought
   c. shouldn't have bought d. ought to have bought

4. My friend wanted me .... for the same job as it's not rewarding.

   a. to apply b. not to apply c. don't apply d. apply

5. The manager advised me .... as soon as possible.

   a. to retraining b. retrain c. retraining d. to retrain

6. The policeman .... the people not to drive so fast.

   a. made b. wondered c. instructed d. said

7. Ali said, "If I were you, I would read this book." This means that Ali ...... me to read that book.
   a. advised b. let c. ordered d. discouraged
8. My father always encourages me...... healthy food.
   a. don't eat b. to eat c. eating d. eat
9. I ...... bought bread but I didn't know we needed it. It was possible for me to buy bread.
   a. would have b. could have c. couldn't have d. shouldn't have
10. We ...... so many people to our party! I'm worried that we won't have enough room for everyone.
   a. shouldn't have invited b. should have invited
   c. ought to invite d. must have invited
11. Esraa will wait for her husband. She has forgotten her key. She ...... have brought it.
   a. may b. might c. must d. should
12. I am not sure where Amr is. He...... gone to see his uncle.
   a. will have b. ought to c. could have d. would
13. I ...... arrived on time, even if I'd left earlier. There were dreadful traffic jams all the way.
   a. should have b. could have c. couldn't have d. shouldn't have
14. The race was really difficult. She...... won because she's not fit enough
   a. should have b. could have c. will have d. couldn't have
15. He...... passed the exam if he'd studied a bit more.
   a. should be b. could have c. couldn't have d. will have
16. You......been rude to him. He's going to be really angry now.
   a. ought to have b. could have c. couldn't d. shouldn't have
17. You......taken this job. I can see you're not enjoying it.
   a. should have b. could have c. would have d. shouldn't have
18. We...... finished the game, even if we'd wanted to. It was raining very hard and we had to stop.
   a. should have b. could have c. couldn't have d. will have
19. Her mother ......her to put on her shoes away.
   a. said b. told c. wondered d. let
20. The officer ordered me......there.
   a. to parking b. don't park c. not to park d. park
21. The ambulance driver ......pedestrians to move out of the way.
   a. said b. told c. wondered d. let
22. The policeman instructed motorists...... so fast or they would be fined.
   a. drive b. don't drive c. not drive d. not to drive
23. My father advised me...... time.
   a. to waste b. don't waste c. not waste d. not to waste
24. My friend warned me...... the busy street.
   a. cross b. not crossing c. not to cross d. don't cross

25. My friend told me ...... on the wall.
a. not to sit b. don't sit c. not sit d. sit not

26. The referee ...... the player to stop the game.
a. let b. said to c. ordered d. made

27. Ahmed is good at football, so Mr. Essam ...... him to join the school team.
a. warned b. encouraged c. made d. said

28. The tour guide warned the tourists ...... into the desert on their own.
a. to go b. not to go c. don't go d. won't go

29. Manar ...... Shaimaa to start revising for the test.
a. advised b. let c. made d. said

30. The doctor advised me ...... too many sweets as I am diabetic and sweets are not good for me.
a. to eat b. not to eat c. eat d. don't eat

31. A man with a gun ...... the woman to give him all her money. She was frightened of him.
a. begged b. invited c. ordered d. suggested

32. The conductor ...... the passengers on the train to show him their tickets.
a. shouted b. said c. begged d. asked

33. They didn't play well so they lost the match. They ...... played well but they didn't.
a. could have b. shouldn't have c. couldn't have d. must have

34. I can't remember where I had left my mobile phone. I'm not sure. I ...... it at home.
a. must have left b. could have left c. has left d. will have left

35. I forgot to water the plants. Some of them have died. I ...... watered them.
a. should have b. shouldn't have c. had d. ought to

36. **A:** I missed my train so I will not be able to come on time.
B: You ...... arrived early at the station but you didn't.
a. shouldn't have b. could have c. couldn't have d. will have

37. I ...... playing the piano last week, but I was lazy and now I regret not practicing it.
a. shouldn't have practised b. should have practised
c. couldn't have practice d. ought to practise

38. President Sadat ...... met Ahmed Orabi – they lived at different times.
a. should have b. could have c. couldn't have d. will have

39. The team ...... won the game if they had not trained so intensively.
a. should have b. could have c. couldn't have d. won't have

40. I ...... yelled at you yesterday. I'm sorry.
a. should have b. won't have c. had to d. shouldn't have

41. Last weekend, we went out. We ...... gone to the theatre, the cinema, or the restaurant. Finally, we decided to go to a concert.
a. shouldn't have b. could have c. couldn't have d. will have

42. That was a very bad idea. You ...... done that.
a. shouldn't have b. could have c. should have d. will have

43. You could have called to say you would be late. I think you ...... called.
a. shouldn't have b. had to c. should have d. will have

44. I ...... moved out when I was 18, but I didn't want to leave my family. I chose to stay.
   a. shouldn't have b. could have c. couldn't have d. will have

45. You ...... asked my permission before you used my computer. I'm really angry with you.
   a. will have b. should have
   c. oughtn't to have d. shouldn't have

46. I ...... visited you when I was in Paris as I didn't know your address.
   a. should have b. could have c. couldn't have d. will have

47. Bakr ...... told you that. It was supposed to be a secret.
   a. should have b. shouldn't have c. couldn't d. ought mot

48. Ahmed ...... gone directly to college, but he decided to travel for a year.
   a. shouldn't have been b. could have
   c. couldn't have d. will have

49. She ...... been on that flight because I just saw her at work.
   a. could not have b. could have c. must have d. ought not

50. She isn't happy with the salary she's getting. She ...... accepted that low-paid job.
   a. should have b. shouldn't have c. could have d. ought not

51. He had the ability to become a doctor, but he didn't. This means he ...... become a doctor.
   a. could have b. shouldn't have c. could not have d. ought mot

Writing practice

A Translate into Arabic:

1. Every year, millions of trees are cut down to make new paper. Fortunately, the trees that give us the best wood for paper grow very quickly. Old paper can also be recycled.
2. Internet shopping has greatly grown nowadays. Lots of shops and companies now have user-friendly websites to make buying easier, cheaper and more interesting. In this way, more and more people are attracted to online shopping.
3. The Olympic Games that started in ancient Greece, where they were part of some religious festival. Since then they have become international sports festivals which are held in a different city every four years.
4. The world's climate is changing. Scientists believe that this is due to a number of natural reasons, like heat from the sun, volcanoes and the increase in carbon dioxide. Global warming will cause ice in some regions to melt, sea levels will rise, there will be floods and lots of people will be homeless.
5. Some people believe that genetically modified food may bring new diseases in the future. Others are in favour of this type of food. They think that GM crops can improve agriculture and protect people from starvation in poor countries.

B Translate into English:

يحتاج جميع الكائنات الحية إلى التعاون من أجل تحقيق أهدافها كما أن العمل الجماعي الذي يعني قدرة المجموعة على العمل بشكل جيد معًا ، هو شيء لا يمكننا الاستغناء فهو ضروري لنجاح أي مشروع.

في الماضي ، كانت التجارة على نطاق ضيق أما اليوم فقد تطورت التجارة بشكل كبير وازدادت. ويتم الآن نقل البضائع بسرعة وأمان عن طريق الجو والبحر والبر وعبر السكك الحديدية.

أصبحت السياحة اليوم عملاً تجاريا ضخماً وهى مصدر جيد للدخل القومي للبلدان الواقعة على ساحل البحر الأبيض المتوسط. وبالتالي ، يتعين علينا جذب المزيد والمزيد من السياح لزيارة مصر على مدار السنة.

العلماء مهمون جدًا لمستقبلنا. فبمقدورهم مساعدة المزارعين على إنتاج غذاء جيد النوعية لسكان العالم المتزايدين. ويمكنهم أيضًا تطوير محاصيل جديدة لا تعاني من الأمراض.

في الشتاء ، تسافر العديد من الحيوانات والطيور مئات الكيلومترات إلى أماكن ذات مناخ أكثر دفئًا ومزيدًا من الطعام. وتحدث هذه الرحلة المذهلة كل عام في نفس الوقت تقريبًا.

كلمات مساعدة

الكائنات الحية	living things	يعيد تدوير	recycle
العمل الجماعي	teamwork	مواقع سهلة الاستخدام	user-friendly websites
يتعاون	cooperate	التسوق عبر الانترنت	online shopping
يستغنى عن	do without	الألعاب الأولمبية	The Olympic Games
التجارة	trade	احتفال ديني	religious festival
على نطاق ضيق	on a small scale	البراكين	volcanoes
عمل تجارى ضخم	a huge business	بلا مأوى	homeless
ساحل البحر الأبيض المتوسط	the Mediterranean Coast	الطعام المعدل وراثيا	genetically modified food
بالتالي	Hence	محبذ لـ	in favour of
طعام جيد النوعية	good quality food	مجاعة	starvation

Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

The advantages and disadvantages of using international technology words in a language

Set Text

Key Vocabulary

guard (n.) (v. –ed)	حارس/ يحرس	disbelief (n.)	عدم التصديق
beggar (n.)	متسول / شحاذ	faithful (adj.)	مخلص/ وفي
reward (n.) (v. –ed)	مكافأة/ يكافئ	persuade (v. –d)	يقنع
profit (v. –ed)	يربح	port (n.)	ميناء
pretend (v. –ed)	يتظاهر	change his mind	يغير رأيه
plot (n.) (v. –ted)	مؤامرة/ يتآمر	a stab in the back	طعنة في الظهر/ غدر
call (v. -ed) out	ينادي بصوت عال	My heart is broken!	قلبي محطم!

[In the Castle of the Duke of Gloucester. Edmund enters.]

EDMUND : *[To himself.]* So, I hear that the Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. That's good! It will help my plan a lot. My father has a guard[1] ready to arrest[2] my brother. But there's one more thing I should do first. Here's Edgar.

[Edgar enters.]

Brother, can we talk? Our father's coming here soon, so you must go! He knows you are hiding here. But first, we must pretend[3] to fight. Pick up[4] your sword[5]. Quickly, before our father gets here[6]. Now run from here, brother.

[Calls out.] Help me!

[To his brother again.] Goodbye, Edgar.

[Edgar exits.]

[To himself.] If there's some blood[7] on me, people will think I've been in a fight. *[He cuts his arm.]*

Father, father! Stop him, stop him! Help!

[Gloucester enters with servants.]

EDMUND : Look, at my arm, father, I'm injured[8].

GLOUCESTER : What happened? Where's Edgar?

EDMUND : He ran that way. When I refused his plan

GLOUCESTER : You there, follow[9] him! *[Some servants exit.]*

What plan, Edmund?

EDMUND : His plan is to kill you, father. I told him that I loved you. Finally, when he understood that I didn't want to help with his terrible plan, he cut my arm with his sword. Then he saw that I was ready to fight him, and he quickly ran away.

Arabic meaning

1. حارس
2. يقبض على
3. يتظاهر بـ
4. يلتقط
5. سيف
6. يصل إلى هنا
7. دم
8. مصاب/ مجروح
9. يتبع/ يتعقب

GLOUCESTER : He'll not run very far. If he stays in this country, we'll soon find h... Then we'll arrest him. The Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight... will tell him that there's a reward[10] for any man who finds Edgar. A... anyone who hides[11] him will be arrested, too.

EDMUND : Father, I tried to persuade[12] Edgar to stop his plan, but he wanted... continue with it. I told him that I would tell you all about it. "Do y... think anyone will believe you?" Edgar said. "No. I'll say that it was... your idea. They know that you will profit[13] most if father dies, not m...

GLOUCESTER : This is terrible! It is a stab in the back[14]. I'll stop people from[15] leavi... England's ports[16]; Edgar won't leave the country. Thank you, ... loving son Edmund. Now I will do everything to help you. You w... inherit[17] all my land.

[The Duke of Cornwall enters with his wife Regan and servants.]

CORNWALL : Gloucester, how are you, my friend? Since I've arrived here, I've heard some strange news,

REGAN : If it is true, it is terrible news!

GLOUCESTER : Oh Regan, my heart is broken[18]!

REGAN : Did your son really try to kill you? Your son Edgar?

GLOUCESTER : Yes, it's true! I wish it were different.

REGAN : I know Edgar spent time with my father's soldiers.

EDMUND : That's correct, madam, he spent some time with them.

REGAN : Then the soldiers have given him the idea of plotting against[19] his father, trying to kill him, so that he can use his father's money. I've just had a message from my sister Goneril about the soldiers. She has warned me to b... careful of[20] them. If they come to my house, I won't be there.

CORNWALL : Edmund, I hear that you've been a good son to your father.

EDMUND : It was my duty[21], sir.

GLOUCESTER : Edmund told me of Edgar's plan, and he got this cut on his arm whe... he tried to stop him.

CORNWALL : Is anyone following Edgar?

GLOUCESTER : Yes, I've sent some guards.

CORNWALL : The guards must arrest him. Edmund, I'd like you to work for me... need men like you that I can trust.

EDMUND : I'd be happy to help you, sir.

GLOUCESTER : I thank you, Cornwall.

[They exit.]

[In the countryside[22]. Edgar enters.]

10. مكافأة
11. يخفي / يخبأ
12. يقنع
13. يربح
14.
15. إنها طعنة في الظهر / غدر
16. يمنع الناس من
17. موانئ
18. يرث
19. قلبي محطم !
20. يتآمر على
21. حذر من
22. واجب / مهمة

EDGAR : I've heard people say that I'm guilty! But I was not caught, because I hid in this old tree. It's not safe[23] for me to go to any port now. Guards are looking for me. So I must disguise myself as a beggar[24]. I will change my clothes and make my face and hair look dirty.

[He changes his clothes.]

I'll wear these clothes of a poor man, and live outside under the rain. Nobody will see Edgar any more. From now, I'll call[25] myself Poor Tom.

[Edgar exits.]

[Enter, Lear, Fool and Knight. Kent is in the stocks.]

KENT : Good morning, my lord.

KING LEAR : *[Looks in disbelief[26] at Kent in* the stocks] What has happened? Who did this to you?

KENT : It was your daughter Regan and her husband Cornwall, sir.

23. الريف
24. آمن
25. متسول / شحاذ
يُسمى
26. دم التصديق
27. مخلص/ وفى
28. يهرب
29. يغير رأيه
30. قاس / وحشي

KING LEAR : But you are working for the King! They should not do this to you! This is terrible. Where's my daughter?

[King Lear exits.]

KENT : Fool, why has the King got so few soldiers now?

FOOL : He has no money, so he has fewer people to help him. But I'll be faithful[27] to him; the Fool will always stay, and let the wise men run away[28].

[King Lear and Gloucester enter together.]

KING LEAR : Why don't they want to speak to me? You say they are sick? They are tired? That's no answer.

'GLOUCESTER : I'm sorry, your majesty, but you know that the Duke of Cornwall easily feels angry. He won't change his mind[29].

KING LEAR : What? He's angry! Well, I'm angry, too!

[He sees Kent in the stocks again.]

Why is he sitting in the stocks? Go and tell the Duke of Cornwall and his wife that I want to speak to them, now!

[Gloucester exits.]

KING LEAR : Oh, my heart, my unhappy heart!

[Cornwall, Regan, Gloucester and Servants enter.]

REGAN : Father, I'm pleased to see you.

KING LEAR : My dear daughter Regan, your sister is nothing to me. Oh Regan, she's been so cruel[30] to me! You won't believe how badly she has behaved.

REGAN : I don't think my sister could be unkind to you. If she has stopped your badly behaved soldiers, she has only done it to help you.

KING LEAR : I'm very angry with her!

REGAN : Father, please go back to my sister's house; you're the one who is wrong, not my good sister Goneril.

Exercises on King Lear

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When a person says, 'my heart is broken," he means.........
   a. he can't breathe properly.
   b. he is feeling ill
   c. he is extremely sad
   d. None of the above
2. I won't change my mind. This means " I won't ....
   a. get ill
   b. change my decision, plan or opinion about something
   c. try to make people think differently
   d. All of the above
3. 'To stab someone in the back' means to do something......... to someone who trusted you.
   a. harmful   b. useful   c. funny   d. attractive
4. A/ An......... is someone who protects a place or a person.
   a. architect   b. archaeologist   c. guard   d. oculist
5. .... are poor people. We usually give them money or food.
   a. Beggars   b. Businessmen   c. Burglars   d. Billionaires
6. I finally managed to .... her to go to the zoo with me.
   a. make   b. persuade   c. dissuade   d. let
7. A/ An .... is a place where ships enter and leave a town or country.
   a. airport   b. board   c. shuttle   d. port
8. We admire people who remain......... to their principles to the last.
   a. treacherous   b. disloyal   c. faithful   d. double-faced
9. The poor man's first reaction to winning the the $1,000,000 award was total ....
   a. belief   b. disbelief   c. ideology   d. contempt
10. My father gave me a/an .... because I came first in my class.
    a. award   b. punishment   c. reward   d. money
11. This shop's daily .... is usually around $5000. The owner of this shop must be happy with this.
    a. loss   b. profit   c. prophet   d. debt
12. My little brother is a big liar! He is not really asleep – he's just......... ! Indeed, he is a naughty boy.
    a. pretending   b. sleeping   c. telling the truth   d. fast asleep

13. ---------- the government was punishable by death.
   a. Supporting b. Working for the good of
   c. Plotting against d. Praising
14. He ---------- his cap up from the floor and stuck it back on his head.
   a. prayed b. woke c. rose d. picked
15. On seeing the police officer, the thief ran ----------.
   a. over b. away c. out of d. into
16. "Dangerous" is an antonym for ----------.
   a. save b. risky c. hazardous d. safe
17. The officer ---------- the criminal and sent him to prison.
   a. rewarded b. was caught c. arrested d. killed
18. They ---------- themselves behind a big tree so that no one could see them.
   a. hid b. revealed c. were disappeared d. appeared
19. The ---------- is generally quiet and peaceful -- certainly not as contaminated with toxic pollutants as the city.
   a. urban b. capital city c. industrial city d. countryside
20. My name's Ahmed, but my friends ---------- me Hamada.
   a. call b. cool c. speak d. names

TEST 5 Unit 4

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The officer ---------- the criminal to lie down and raise his hands.
   a. claimed b. begged c. ordered d. said
2. The mother ---------- her child not to come near the fire.
   a. warned b. said c. told to d. talked
3. You ---------- the boat if you had been here at one o'clock, but it's gone now and its too late.
   a. should catch b. should have caught
   c. could have caught d. will have caught
4. You ---------- seen Manal in the park this morning. She has been with me at my house all day.
   a. could have b. must have c. could not have d. ought mot
5. I can't believe that you still haven't received the parcel. I sent it three weeks ago, so it ---------- arrived by now.
   a. have had b. should have c. could not have d. ought not

6. He .... a university professor. He had the ability but he didn't want to work hard.
a. could have been
c. could not have been
c. Both 'a' & 'b' are OK
d. Neither 'a' nor 'b' is OK

7. The teacher said to us, "Open your books." The teacher told us .... our books.
a. open
b. opened
c. to open
d. opening

8. My father said to me, "........... time." My father advised me not to waste time
a. Don't waste
b. Not to waste
c. Waste
d. Doesn't waste

9. I .... them to turn the music down as I was trying to get to sleep.
a. said
b. told
c. made
d. ordered to

10. "Could you please show me where the shops are?" ~ He .... me to show him where the shops were.
a. advised
b. ordered
c. warned
d. asked

11. The change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking is called ....
a. tone
b. tune
c. tonne
d. melody

12. 'To ...." means to have expression on your face that shows you are not happy.
a. smile
b. faint
c. frown
d. fall

13. 'LOL' is a/an .... which means ' laugh out loud'.
a. abbreviation
b. antonym
c. deviation
d. question

14. You misunderstood me. I mean you ....
a. understood me properly.
b. understood all that I said
c. didn't understand me properly
d. All of the above

15. We put .... at the beginning of words.
a. suffixes
b. prefixes
c. influxes
d. reflexes

16. My son is 15 years old. He is still a/ an ....
a. old man
b. toddler
c. teenager
d. foetus

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Marie Curie was one of the most accomplished scientists in history. Together with her husband, Pierre, she discovered radium, an element widely used for treating cancer, and studied uranium and other radioactive substances. Pierre and Marie's friendly collaboration later helped to unlock the secrets of the atom.

Marie was born in 1867 in Warsaw, Poland, where her father was a professor of physics. At an early age, she displayed a brilliant mind and a cheerful personality. Her great enthusiasm for learning prompted her to continue with her studies after high school. She became angry, however, when she learned that the university in Warsaw was closed to women. Determined to receive a higher education, she defiantly left Poland and in 1891 entered the Sorbonne, a French university, where she earned her master's degree and doctorate in physics.

A short time after Marie and her husband discovered radium, Pierre was killed by a horse-drawn wagon in 1906. Marie was shocked by this horrible misfortune. She became extremely unhappy and without hope. She recalled their close relationship and the joy that they had shared in scientific research.

Curie's feeling of sadness finally began to fade when she was asked to succeed her husband as a physics professor at the Sorbonne. She was the first woman to be given a professorship at the world-famous university. In 1911 she received the Nobel Prize in chemistry for isolating radium.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Curies' friendly collaboration helped to .... the secrets of the atom.
   a. ignore b. invent c. reveal d. hide
2. Marie had a bright mind and a/ an .... personality.
   a. violent b. strange c. envious d. lighthearted
3. When Marie learned that she could not attend the university in Warsaw, she felt ....
   a. hopeless b. depressed c. annoyed d. worried
4. Marie defiantly left Poland and in 1891 entered the Sorbonne. This means she .... authority.
   a. challenged b. frustrated c. terrorized d. amused

B: Answer the following questions:

5- Suggest a suitable title to the passage.
6- What was the impact of Pierre's death on Marie?
7- When did Marie's disappointment begin to fade?
8- Find words in the passage that mean:
   a. cooperation b. lucky

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

Living things respond to changes in their environment. For example, if an object causes you pain, you respond by moving away from it. For protection, some animals change colour to hide in their surroundings.

B: Translate into English:

- جلب اكتشاف المضادات الحيوية في القرن العشرين تغييرات ملحوظة في الطب الحديث، مما مكن الناس من أن يحيوا حياة أكثر صحة ومع ذلك يحذرنا الأطباء من الاستخدام المفرط للمضادات الحيوية.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following

"Technology has made the world a global village."

Unit 5 Being smart online

Objectives

- **Reading:** An article about an online video channel; An article about how to use the internet for research
- **Writing:** An email to a friend; an essay
- **Listening:** Two boys discussing how to use social media; Five teenagers talking about the effects of the internet on young pepple
- **Speaking:** A presentation
- **Language:** seems to, (be) meant to, (be) supposed to
- **Life Skills:** Critical Thinking; Resilience

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary with Derivatives

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
update (v.d/n)	يُحدّث/ يزود بأحدث الاخبار/ تحديث	sponsorship (n)	عاية
up-to-date (adj)	حديث	advertise (v.d)	لن عن (سلعة / وظيفة)
reliable (adj)	موثوق/ يعتمد عليه	advertiser (n)	لن
reliability (n)	موثوقية	advertisement = advert (n)	لان
reliance (n)	اعتماد	sponsored advert (n)	لان ممول
consult (adj)	يستشير	year of birth	الميلاد
consultant (n)	مستشار	banner advert (n)	ربط إعلان
download (v.ed/n)	يحمل من الانترنت/ ملف محمل	search results	ائج البحث
downloadable (adj)	يمكن تحميله من الانترنت	cookies (n)	لفات تعريف الارتباط/ بسكويت
upload (adj/n)	يرفع معلومات للانترنت/ ملف مرفوع	smart (adj/v.ed)	كي/ أنيق/ ينزعج/ يتألم
upgrade (v.d/n)	يطوّر/ يُرقي/ تطوير	smartness (n)	كاء/ أناقه
take down (v)	يزيل/ يدون ملحوظة/ يُخفض	sensible (adj)	كيم/ عاقل
behaviour (n)	سلوك/ تصرف	sensibility (n)	كمة/ عقلانية
behave (v.d)	يتصرف	symbol (n)	مز
profile (n/v.d)	صفحة شخصية/ يعطي نبذه عن	symbolise (v.d)	رمز الي
sponsor (v.ed/n)	يرعى/ يمول/ راعي	symbolic (adj)	مزي

Listening

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	game (v.d)	عب
include (v.d)	يضم	computer programming (n)	مجة الكومبيوتر
symbols (n)	رموز	forums (n)	نديات
teenagers (n)	مراهقون	programmers (n)	رمجين
media platform	منصة اعلامية	victim (n)	محية
criticise (v.d)	ينتقد	privacy settings	عدادات الخصوصية
effect (n)	تأثير	adult (n)	خص ناضج
mealtimes (n)	اوقات تناول الوجبات	media platform	نصة اعلامي
profile	ملف شخصي	fire (v.d)	طرد من العمل
disagree (v.d)	يرفض	selfie (n)	ورة يأخذها الشخص لنفسه

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
victim (n)	ضحية	effect (n)	تأثير
affect (v.ed)	أثرت عليه	miss (v.ed)	يفتقد
cute (adj)	جذاب/ لطيف	argument (n)	نقاش حاد

Reading

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
online (adj/adv)	متصل بالانترنت/ عبر الانترنت	effectively (adv)	بشكل فعال
research (v/n)	بحث علمي/ يبحث	experience (n/v.d)	خبرة/ تجربة حياتية/ يمر بـ
task (n/v.ed)	مهمة/ يكلف شخص بمهمة	spelling mistakes (n)	أخطاء هجائية
avoid (v.ed)	يتجنب	name (n/v.d)	اسم/ سمعة/ يسمي
unhelpful (adj)	غير مفيد/ غير متعاون	URL = uniform resource locator	عنوان موقع اليكتروني
website = site (n)	موقع على الانترنت	targeted advert	إعلان موجه
smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكي	look like	يشبه
keep (v.kept)	يحتفظ بـ/ يحافظ علي	design (n/v.ed)	يصمم/ تصميم
interest (n/v.ed)	يهم/ اهتمام	grammar (n)	القواعد النحوية
exactly (adv)	بالضبط	source (n/v.ed)	مصدر/ يحدد مصدر
appear (v.ed)	يظهر/ يبدو	page (n/v.d)	صفحة/ مرحلة/ ينادي بصوت عالي
appearance (n)	ظهور/ مظهر	image (n)	صورة
suppose (v.d)	يفترض	honest (adj)	أمين/ شريف
supposition (n)	افتراض	honesty (n)	أمانة
knowledge (n)	معرفة	whether	سواء/ إذا
knowledgeable (adj)	ملم بـ/ مطلع/ ذو معرفة	recognise (v.d)	يتعرف علي
topic (n)	موضوع	believe (v.d)	يعتقد/ يصدق/ يؤمن
check (v.ed)	يفحص/ يتأكد	belief (n)	اعتقاد
advantage (n)	أفضلية/ ميزة	mean (v.meant/ adj)	يعني/ يقصد/ بخيل
advantageous (adj)	مفيد/ نافع		
extra (adj)	ميزة/ اضافي		

Language Focus & Workbook

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
wonder (v.ed/n)	يتعجب/ يتساءل/ أعجوبة	likely (adj)	محتمل
resource (n/v.d)	مورد/ يمد بالمال والموارد	limit (n/v.ed)	حد/ يحدد
file (n)	ملف/ مَبْرد	create (v.d)	ينشئ/ يخلق
tablet (n)	كمبيوتر لوحي/ قرص دواء	version (n)	إصدار
post (v.ed)	ينشر عبر الانترنت	title (n)	عنوان (مقال مثلًا)
positive (adj)	ايجابي	obvious (adj)	واضح
negative (adj)	سلبي	identity (n)	هويّة
develop (v.ed)	ينمي/ يطور	stamp (n/v.ed)	ختم/ يختم

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
tips (n)	نصائح	emojis (n)	رسوم تعبيرية
password (n)	كلمة مرور	warning (n)	تحذير
browser (n)	متصفح	professional (adj)	محترف
essay (n)	مقال	journalist (n)	صحفي
blog (n/v.ged)	مدونة اليكترونية/ يدون	publish (v.ed)	ينشر
character (n)	رمز خاص/ شخصية	actually (adv)	بالفعل
improve (v.d)	يحسّن	instant (adj)	فورى
efficient (adj)	كفء	rest (n)	بقية
relevant (adj)	متعلق بالموضوع/ ذو صلة	button (n)	زر (زرار)
details (n)	تفاصيل	Irish (adj)	أيرلندى الجنسية
install (v.ed)	يركّب	sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع
recent (adj)	حديث	influence (n)	تأثير
inclusion (n)	اشتمال/ ضم	fake (adj)	مزيف
confused (adj)	متحير/ مرتبك	musician (n)	موسيقار
confusion (n)	ارتباك/ حيرة	moral (n)	مغزى أخلاقى
series (n)	مسلسل/ سلسلة	trust (v.ed)	يثق
register (v.ed)	يسجل (فى موقع مثلًا)	represent (v.ed)	يمثل

Definitions

- **consult (v)** : to look in or at something to get information
- **reliable (adj)** : someone or something that is reliable can be trusted or depended on
- **update (v)** : to make something more modern and relevant by adding new information
- **up-to-date (adj)** : modern or including all the latest information
- **download (v)** : to move files from the internet to a phone, tablet or computer
- **upload (v)** : to move files from a computer, phone or camera to the internet
- **upgrade (v)** : to improve or make more efficient
- **take down (v)** : to take something that you have posted online off the internet
- **banner advert (n)** : an advertisement that appears across the top of a page on the internet
- **sponsored advert** : a form of a paid advertisement that is usually used on social media
- **cookies (n)** : information that a website leaves in your computer so that the website will recognize you when you use it again
- **search result (n)** : something you get when you search for particular information on the internet
- **behaviour (n)** : the things that a person or animal does
- **profile (n)** : a brief written description that provides information about someone or something
- **sensible (adj)** : reasonable, practical, and showing good judgment
- **symbol (n)** : a picture or shape that has a particular meaning or represents a particular organization or idea
- **year of birth (n)** : the year when someone was born

EXPRESSIONS

Expression	Meaning
give a homework task	يعطي مهمة واجب منزلي
do research into / on	يجرب بحث عن
have experience in	لديه خبره في
have knowledge of	لديه معرفة بـ
write a website	يصمم موقع اليكتروني
with lots of information	مزود بكثير من المعلومات
What does .... look like?	كيف يبدو ..؟
badly designed	مصمم بشكل سئ
do a history essay	يكتب مقال عن التاريخ
move files from ... to	ينقل الملفات من .. الى
take... off the internet	يزيل .. من الانترنت
make it easier	تجعل من الأسهل
appear on websites	يظهر على المواقع
do a survey	يقوم بعمل استطلاع
save time	يوفر الوقت
keep ... entertained	يُسلي...
has nothing to do with	لا علاقة له بـ
on your own	بمفردك
I see your point	أفهم ما تقصده
in contact with	على اتصال بـ
have effects on	لديه تأثيرات على
get support from	يحصل على دعم من
with similar interests	ذو اهتمامات متشابهة
cause arguments with	يسبب خلافات مع
show the age	يوضح العمر
access to	صلاحية الوصول إلى
take care	احترس
share your interests	يشارك نفس اهتماماتك
in person	شخصيا/ بشكل شخصي
at the time	في نفس اللحظة

Prepositions

Preposition	Meaning
read on	يواصل القراءة
find out more about	يكتشف المزيد عن
look for ..... by	يبحث عن ...... بواسطة ..
think about	يفكر في
sell ... to	يبيع .. لـ
resource for	مصدر لـ
addicted to	مُدمن على
share ... with	يشارك ... مع
on social media	علي وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
advert for	إعلان عن
advertise to	يعلن لـ
arrive at school	يصل المدرسة
worried about	قلق بشأن
in / on your profile	في صفحتك الشخصية
compare ... with	يقارن ... بـ
full of	مليء بـ

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word		Synonym	Antonym
update	يُحدث/ يطور	modernize / renew	___
up-to-date	حديث	modern / recent	Old-fashioned / outdated
reliable	موثوق	dependable / trusted	unreliable / untrustworthy
upgrade	يطور/ يحسن	promote / improve	downgrade
behaviour	سلوك/ تصرف	conduct / attitude	___
sensible	عاقل/ حكيم	wise	foolish
smart	ذكي	clever / intelligent	stupid
avoid	يتجنب	elude / dodge	face / confront
effective	فعال/ مؤثر	functional	ineffective
suppose	يفترض	assume	___
advantage	ميزة	merit / upside	disadvantage / demerit
strange	غريب	weird / odd	familiar / normal
exactly	بالضبط	precisely / accurately	inexactly / inaccurately
honest	أمين/ شريف	truthful / honourable	dishonest

Spot the difference

research	بحث علمي (نجمع فيه معلومات)	search	يبحث عن (شئ ضائع مثلًا)
consult	يستشير	consul	سفير (قنصل)
reliable	موثوق/ يعتمد عليه	liable to	عرضة لـ
upgrade	يطور/ يرقي/ يحسن	grade	درجة/ صف دراسي
advertise	يعلن عن (سلعة/ وظيفة)	announce	يعلن عن (خبر)
sponsor	راعي (ممول)	shepherd	راعي (حيوانات)
target	هدف/ يستهدف	aim	هدف/ يهدف لـ
banner	راية/ لافتة	manner	أسلوب/ طريقة
suppose	يفترض	impose	يفرض
social	اجتماعي (للشئ و للشخص)	sociable	اجتماعي (للشخص)
sensible	حكيم/ عاقل	sensitive	حساس
symbols	رموز	cymbals	صاجات
birth	ميلاد	berth	مرسى السفن/ مكان للنوم
task	مهمة عمل	tusk	ناب الفيل
recognise	يتعرف علي	realise	يدرك (شئ ما)
improve	يحسّن	prove	يثبت
avoid	يتجنب	void of	خالي من
fun	ممتع	funny	مضحك

Language Notes

1 with

- يمكن ان يستخدم حرف الجر with ليعبر عن الملكية بمعنى «مالكاً لـ - لديه»

He loves a girl with (= having / who has) blue eyes.

2 research

- يمكن ان نقول research (دون اداة نكره قبلها)

He did research on air pollution. ✓

- او نقول researches (صيغه الجمع وهى نادره الاستخدام)

He did researches on air pollution. ✓

- ولكن لا يصح ان نقول a research ، فيجب حذف الاداة لأنها اسم لا يعد

He did a research on air pollution. ✖

3 experience

Applicants must have experience of working with children. — خبرة (اسم لا يعد)

Meeting the president was a memorable experience. — موقف أو تجربة حياتية (إسم يُعد)

I experienced a great sense of loss when my father died. — يمر بـ (موقف/ تجربة ... إلخ)

4 take / spend

- **take + time + to + inf.**

It took me half an hour to reach the stadium. — يستغرق... لكى ...

- **spend + time + V-ing.**

Omar spent three hours studying yesterday. — يقضى ... فى ...

5 company

All the company respect their new manager. — العاملين بالشركة (تأخذ فعل جمع)

The company which has been built there deals in cars. — مبنى الشركة (تأخذ فعل مفرد)

Abdo failed the exams when he got into bad company. — صُحبة (اسم لا يُعد ، وتأخذ فعل مفرد)

6 like / look like

- **What does/do .... look like?** — تسأل عن الشكل والصفات الجسدية

What does Ibrahem look like? - He is tall and slim.

- **What is/are .... like?** — تسأل عن السمات الشخصية

What is Gamila like? - She is smart and confident.

7 -ed & -ing adjectives

- تستخدم الصفات التي تنتهي بـــ ing للتعبير عن المؤثر سواء كان شخصا أم شيئ:

The dog I saw was frightening..

- تستخدم الصفات التي تنتهي بـــ ed للتعبير عن المتأثر أو الذي يقع عليه التأثير سواء كان شخصا أم شيئ:

The match was so boring that I felt bored.

8 location / position / site

• **location**

موقع (جغرافي) لوصف نقطة معينة - مكان تصوير فيلم أو مسلسل

My house is in a good location.

The film was shot on location in Asia.

• **position**

وضع - مكانة - منصب - موقع شيء بالنسبة للمحيطين به - مكان لاعب في الملعب

Zamalek finished in second position.

Ronaldo's position is a striker.

• **site**

موقع بناء أو معسكر - مكان حادثة - موقع على الانترنت - موقع أثري

I found a very useful site on the internet.

9 make

• **make + obj + inf.**

يجعل

Dad made me study.

• **make + obj + adj.**

يجعل

My success made me happy.

• **make + obj + n.**

يصنع (يعد) ... لـ ...

My sister made me a cup of tea.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Samah bought a villa .... air conditioning.
   a. has b. who has c. with d. which have
2. Shahd has .... into renewable energy sources.
   a. did research b. did a research c. carried out research d. conduct research
3. The programme enables pupils to get .... of the world of work.
   a. an experiences b. an experience c. experiences d. experience
4. You should avoid spending hours .... unhelpful websites.
   a. read b. to read c. reading d. to reading
5. They are worried about their son keeping bad company. The word 'company' here means '........'.
   a. organization b. staff c. friends d. firm
6. What does Osman look like? - He is ....
   a. honest b. a liar c. respectable d. fat
7. Mahmoud is keen on swimming. He finds it very ....
   a. boring b. relaxed c. relaxing d. interested
8. You can apply for the job online through this ....
   a. site b. location c. position d. destination
9. I like Mostafa because he makes me ....
   c. to laugh b. laugh c. laughing d. to laughing

Reading

Doing research online

Your teacher has given you a homework task[1]. Where do you start your research[2]? The internet is very useful with lots of information, but how do you avoid[3] spending hours reading unhelpful[4] websites? Read on to find out how to use the internet effectively[5].

1. Look for websites by people, companies or universities, who have experience[6] in or knowledge[7] of the topic you are researching. If you know who wrote the website, try to find out[8] more about their experience.
2. Think about who has written the website. Is it a company who may be trying to sell you something?
3. Check[9] if the website is up-to-date[10]. Is the information still reliable[11] and useful? When was it updated[12]?
4. Always consult[13] more than one website. The advantage[14] of looking at few different sites is that you can check the information and you may find extra[15] facts.
5. What does the website look like? If it is badly designed[16] and is full of grammar and spelling mistakes[17], then it is probably not very reliable.
6. Websites that have named[18] their sources[19] are usually more reliable and useful than sites that do not name their sources.
7. Save the URL (uniform resource locator) of any useful pages or images[20] so you can find them easily

Arabic meaning

1. مهمة
2. بحث علمي
3. يتجنب
4. غير مفيد
5. بشكل فعال
6. خبرة
7. معرفة
8. يكتشف
9. يتأكد
10. حديث
11. موثوق به
12. يُحدث
13. يستشير
14. ميزة
15. إضافي
16. يصمم
17. أخطاء هجائية
18. يسمي
19. مصادر
20. صور

Reading

Hi!

Can you help me? I'm trying to do a history essay[1], but I've spent about 20 hours reading different websites and blogs[2], and now I've got pages and pages of notes. But I'm really confused[3]. I don't know which sites are good and which aren't — and they all say different things! And now I've forgotten how I found a really good site[4] that I looked at earlier.

Help!!!!!!

Thanks,

Nagwa

Arabic meaning

1. مقال
2. مدونات
3. مرتبك / متحير
4. موقع

Reading

Essay Dun

Download this app[1] and you will never have to write an essay again! Just type in the title, the question you need to answer, and the word limit[2] and the app will consult the system to create[3] a perfect essay. It is 100% reliable and works every time.

Arabic meaning
1. تطبيق
2. حد
3. يخلق

Reading

(An app for excuses!) Excuse-a-Maker

This useful app has been updated to include 2.000 new excuses which can be adapted to any situation. Just upload a photo of yourself and say why you need the excuse and where you are. You will receive a new up-to-date photo with the time and date stamped on it with your excuse!

Reading

Are you internet smart?

Do you really know how to protect yourself online? There are several things you can do to stay safe[1].

Choose a strong password[2]. Did you know the most common password in the world is '123456'?

The best passwords should have numbers, letters and even a special character[3] e.g. TI342mS!*. It will be easier to remember if you make it personal in some way[4].

When you go online, make sure you have upgraded your browser[5] with the latest software update before you open a webpage.

- Be careful what you upload. Check what others can learn about you from what they can see behind you, and take down[6] any photos you do not want others to download.

All of these tips[7] seem obvious[8], but you'll be surprised how many people are careless online.

Stealing someone's identity[9] is more common than you think. Do not make the mistake of thinking that it can't happen to you.

Arabic meaning
1. يظل في أمان
2. كلمة سر قوية
3. رمز خاص
4. بشكل ما
5. متصفح
6. يزيل
7. نصائح
8. واضح
9. هوية

Reading

Targeted advertising

Our computers and smartphones[1] keep small pieces of information called cookies[2], which tell websites[3] where we've been online[4] and what we were looking at. Cookies are meant to make it easier for us to find things that interest[5] us, but they also help advertisers[6] to sell things to us. So, when we see an advert[7] for something that seems to be exactly[8] what we want, it is because advertisers know what we like. This kind of advertising is called targeted advertising[9].

Sometimes advertisers know where you like to go and when you like to do things, so they can advertise to you when you are most interested. For example, they advertise[10] places to eat when you're hungry. They can also send adverts to your friends at the same time if they think you'll go together.

Sometimes it's easy to see that something is an advert, like those large banner adverts[11] that always seem to appear[12] on websites when you're trying to read. And there are adverts that seem to appear in the strangest places, like the small sponsored adverts[13] that you find in search results[14].

Adverts are supposed[15] to be honest[16], but we must be careful. When you see an advert online, think about why you might be seeing it and whether[17] you can believe[18] what it says.

Arabic meaning

1. هواتف ذكية
2. ملفات تعريف
3. مواقع اليكترونية
4. متصل بالانترنت
5. يهُم
6. المعلنين
7. إعلان
8. بالضبط
9. إعلانات موجهة
10. يعلن
11. شرائط إعلانات
12. يظهر
13. إعلانات ممولة
14. نتائج البحث
15. يُفترض
16. أمين
17. إذا / لو
18. يصدق

Reading

Don't believe everything you read!

The title[1] of this article is advice which we may have heard from our parents or grandparents. Although it was true in the past, the speed at which we have access to[2] new information means that this warning[3] is even more important now.

In the past, professional[4] journalists always checked the facts that they wanted to publish against at least two reliable sources to make sure the story was correct. Checking sources, and the time needed to print something m a newspaper, meant that the news, which was meant to be new, was actually[5] a day or two old.

Today the internet provides instant[6] news and is a place where anyone can share information with the rest of the world at the touch of a button[7]. This means that journalists often need to publish their stories quickly, so fact-checking isn't as good as it is meant to be. This is why not everything you read is what it seems to be.

Arabic meaning

1. عنوان
2. صلاحية الوصول لـ
3. تحذير
4. محترفون
5. في الواقع
6. فوري
7. زر

Even serious newspapers, which are supposed to be reliable, can make mistakes. Shane Fitzgerald, an Irish[8] sociology[9] student, wanted to test the influence of the internet. He posted a fake[10] phrase online. It was supposed to be something that a French musician who had recently died had said.

Almost immediately several newspapers published the phrase and it was read all over the world.

The moral of the story is to listen to those with more life experience than you and remember not to trust everything you read online without checking it first.

8. ايرلندي
9. علم الاجتماع
10. مزيف

Tapescript

Hamdi : Hey Khaled, can you help me? I'm doing a blog post on how to use social media well. Can l you help me think of some interesting points to include, please?

Khaled : Yes, sure. What have you got so far?

Hamdi : OK, I think I'm going to begin by talking about your profile[1]. That's important on social media.

Khaled : Definitely!

Hamdi : Great! What shall I write?

Khaled : Well, I like seeing who I'm chatting with social media, so I believe you shou d always put a nice picture of yourself on your profile. I hate it when people have symbols[2] or something instead of their photo - you don't know who you are talking to.

Hamdi : I disagree[3], symbols tell you more about what someone thinks.

Khaled : Really, Hamdi? Well, I think it's important that people don 't know too much. For example, in my opinion, it 's a bad idea to include your date of birth to show your age.

Hamdi : I see your point[4]. Did you know that about 50% of teenagers have experienced bad behaviour. So, I think you 're right not to give people too much information about yourself.

Khaled : After all, you have to be sensible on social media if you want to enjoy it safely.

Arabic meaning

1. ملف شخصي
2. رموز
3. أختلف
4. أفهم ما تقصده

Tapescript

Hanan : Leila, did you see the post that Hany put up the other day about social media behaviour in Egypt?

Leila : No, I was too busy updating my profile. Do you know how difficult it is to take a good photo of yourself?

Hanan : I know what you mean. I just used a photo of my cat. Anyway, as I was saying, did you know that Hany 's post said that 22 million' people in Egypt connect to one popular social media app every day?

Leila : Wow! That 's something like 20% of Egypt all on just one social media platform[1]! But getting back to your profile photo, why don't you use a photo of yourself?

Arabic meaning
1. منصة اعلامي
2. لا علاقة له بـ
3. تم فصله
4. انتقاد
5. صوريأخذها الشخص لنفسه
6. ضحية
7. أثرت عليه
8. في نفس اللحظة
9. جذاب/ لطيف

Hanan : Don't you worry about what all those people might see on your profile? For example, imagine you post a photo of yourself doing something stupid now, and in a few years' time you apply for a job and the company look at your social media profile to see what kind of person you are. What opinion will they have of you?

Leila : I see your point , but in my opinion, social media should be personal and has nothing to do with[2] your job.

Hanan : I disagree. I read about a man who was fired[3] from his job for criticising[4] his company on his personal profile. You can never be too careful. You don't know who might see your posts.

Leila : I didn't think posting a photo was so important!

Hanan : The thing is that as soon as you post something, it is there forever[11] .So, be careful with those selfies[5] you're taking! Plus, Hany told me that he was once the victim[6] of bad behaviour after posting a photo of himself in some old jeans. He reported it and everything is fine now, but it really affected[7] him at the time[8].

Leila : Wow! Well, I might think twice about updating my profile picture and just keep the photo of my dog. I think she's so cute[9] and my selfies all look terrible anyway!

Hanan : I agree, I think your dog is lovely and it 's a safer photo, too.

Leila : Hey, look! Have you seen what Mona's wearing in the photo she's just posted?

Tapescript

Narrator : 1
Dalida : Hi, I'm Dalida. I think the biggest effect[1] that the internet has on young people is it keeps them entertained-there's always something to watch or listen to, and I'm never bored.
Narrator : 2
Injy : Hi, I'm Injy. Like most of my friends, I think I'm addicted to the internet. If I'm not checking my social media apps, I feel worried that I'm missing[2] something important . It means I have a lot of arguments[3] with my parents at mealtimes[4] and when we go out together.
Narrator : 3
Ayman : Hello. I'm Ayman. I am so pleased I have the internet to help me with my homework. Imagine if you had to go to the library and read loads of books for every homework or project!
Narrator : 4
Osama : Hi, my name's Osama. I game[5] online which is really fun, so I think the internet has a good effect on my life , but I do worry about my sister. She gets sad because she thinks her friends all have better lives than her and do more exciting things. She can't understand that they only post the good things and not the bad things.
Narrator : 5
Girl 2 : Hi, Radwa here. I love the internet. I love computer programming[6] so I go on forums[7] to chat to other programmers[8]- students and people who do it for a job. I have learned so much. And if I have a problem that I can't solve to do with programming, someone on the forum can usually help me.

Arabic meaning
1. تأثير
2. يفتقد
3. نقاشات حادة
4. أوقات تناول الوجبات
5. يلعب
6. برمجة الكومبيوتر
7. منتديات
8. مبرمجين

Video script

Social media can keep us in contact with[1] friends, entertain[2] us and keep us up-to-date. So, it's important Check to know how to use it safely.
First of all, take care[3] with privacy settings. Make sure that the only people who can see what you're posting are people who you want to contact online.
Think carefully about the information that you share. Why not use a nice image instead of your face in your profile? And never put real details about yourself on line, such as your date of birth school, home address or your telephone number.
Don't be unkind. If you haven't got anything nice to say, don't say anything . And always check that you know who you are sending messages to. Is it one person or a large group?
If you want to meet more people online, there are lots of groups that you can join. Look for one with people who share your interests. But if anyone asks to meet you in person, tell an adult. Never meet them on your own.

Arabic meaning
1. على اتصال بـ
2. يسلي
3. احترس

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary & derivatives

1. I'm conducting research on nature, so I .... some information from a website.
   a. downloaded b. uploaded c. loaded d. unloaded
2. I took a great photo of the Pyramids, and I'm .... it onto a website.
   a. downloading b. uploading c. loading d. unloading
3. The government needs to .... hotels so that they can attract more tourists.
   a. degrade b. upgrade c. downgrade d. prove
4. After Fouad divorced Aya, he .... all her photos to be able to forget her.
   a. painted b. drew c. hung d. took down
5. I believe you should put a nice picture of yourself in your ....
   a. protractor b. profile c. profuse d. website
6. In my opinion, it's a bad idea to include your .... because it shows your age.
   a. date of berth b. history of birth c. place of birth d. year of birth
7. Did you know that 50% of teens have experienced bad .... on social media?
   a. friend b. banner c. behaviour d. smartphone
8. You have to be .... on social media if you want to enjoy it safely.
   a. sensible b. negligent c. intolerant d. stubborn
9. If you want to remember the internet documents you have looked at, check the .... on your computer.
   a. hardware b. cookies c. keyboards d. attachments
10. Now a lot of companies resort to .... adverts on the internet to sell their goods.
    a. offline b. flag c. banner d. manner
11. Online .... adverts are fruitful, but they cost a lot of money.
    a. unpaid b. sponsored c. free d. radio
12. When you google any information, you get a lot of search ....
    a. results b. targets c. purposes d. causes
13. "H" is the scientific .... for hydrogen.
    a. chemistry b. element c. system d. symbol
14. Mr. Abdo is a creative teacher. He adopts .... teaching methods.
    a. update b. up-to-date c. outdated d. traditional
15. We have .... information that a terrorist attack is planned next week.
    a. reliable b. arable c. frightened d. grateful
16. You had better .... your doctor before taking any medicine.
    a. advise b. insult c. consult d. consul

17. Make sure that your site is .... to the latest version of the software.
a. graduated b. typed c. deleted d. updated

18. Many older people need help with daily .... like dressing and eating.
a. tusks b. tasks c. works d. careers

19. Road safety should be taught to young children to .... road accidents.
a. have b. crash c. suffer d. avoid

20. Doctors recommend this drug as it works .... in the treatment of this disease.
a. reflectively b. unfortunately c. effectively d. unsuccessfully

21. Due to lack of ...., most of the applicants weren't accepted.
a. job b. experience c. expiration d. experiment

22. One of the .... of living in the countryside is the fresh air.
a. cons b. demerits c. advantages d. prose

23. The question is too difficult for the student to answer in just two minutes. He needs some .... time to think.
a. another b. extra c. addition d. spear

24. The government has .... different posters to encourage social distancing.
a. resigned b. designed c. persuaded d. painted

25. Seleem wants to buy a .... book so that he can study the rules by which words change their forms and are combined into sentences.
a. grammar b. physics c. phonetics d. spelling

26. "honour" is the British .... of "honor."
a. spilling b. encyclopedia c. grammar d. spelling

27. Mr. Gamal always corrects the .... we make when we write a paragraph.
a. words b. marks c. mistakes d. lessons

28. TV presents a variety of programmes which are a useful .... of information.
a. advertising b. research c. source d. lots

29. A .... is an address that shows where a particular page can be found on the internet.
a. URL b. UK c. USA d. Wi-Fi

30. When we saw the .... of starving people on the news, we decided to donate money to them.
a. damages b. images c. packages d. storages

31. Our teacher asks us to write .... on interesting topics as part of our study.
a. poets b. homework c. languages d. essays

32. Jana can post anything on her .... For example, a photo, video or message
a. message b. location c. blog d. log

33. All the corridors in the building looked the same, so he felt very ....
a. confuse b. confused c. confusing d. confusion

34. Apart from calling and texting, the .... also offers almost full computer capabilities.
a. microwave b. smartphone c. xylophone d. calculator

35. .... education is a prevailing trend in many countries. It takes place via the internet.
a. Distant b. Close c. Online d. Offline

36. It's always best to choose the subject that .... you, not the one your parents want you to do.
a. concerns b. interests c. admires d. appeals

37. An .... tells the public about a product to encourage them to buy it.
a. company b. factory c. banner d. advertiser

38. The police are still trying to find out how .... the accident has happened.
a. carelessly b. profitably c. comfortably d. exactly

39. If you want to attract more customers to your new restaurant, try .... it online.
a. accessing b. announcing c. advertising d. searching

40. .... advertising is a form of advertising that is directed towards audiences with certain traits.
a. Argued b. Targeted c. Marketed d. Symbolic

41. He was so attached to her dead mother that she .... to him in a dream.
a. updated b. appeared c. died d. supposed

42. Sagda is very .... She tells the truth and never cheats or steals.
a. greedy b. conceited c. careless d. honest

43. Hagar is known to be a big liar. I don't .... her every word.
a. belief b. believe c. relieve d. deceive

44. Yomna had a heated .... with the waiter about the high bill.
a. argue b. arguable c. arguably d. argument

45. The parliament discussed .... issues, such as unemployment and education.
a. series b. endangered c. sociable d. social

Expressions & Prepositions

46. Our teacher has .... us a homework task that we have to do.
a. done b. made c. given d. taken

47. Dad was furious when he found .... that I went out without taking his permission.
a. on b. about c. out d. with

48. We need to hire a qualified secretary with experience .... accountancy.
a. in b. to c. for d. from

49. The cinema was so full .... people that I found no vacant seats.
a. into b. off c. from d. of

50. I decided to .... an essay about the new educational system.
a. do b. make c. work d. spread

51. The wrinkles on your face .... your age.
a. appear b. do c. guess d. show

52. .... my opinion, the best time to study your lessons is at dawn.
a. In b. At c. On d. From

53. Smoking .... bad effects on smokers' health
   a. makes   b. gives   c. takes   d. has

54. The internet .... our homework easier.
   a. makes   b. does   c. performs   d. marks

Vocabulary with other meanings & uses

55. My manager asked me to .... him on how the work is progressing.
   a. tell   b. promote   c. update   d. renew

56. The interviewer .... my address and phone number and said he'd phone back.
   a. upgraded   b. took down   c. visited   d. searched

57. My cousin is an officer. I've just congratulated him on being .... to a major.
   a. demoted   b. risen   c. employed   d. upgraded

58. Mohamed surprised his fiancée with a chocolate chip ....
   a. cookie   b. website   c. advert   d. smartphone

59. Most of the athletes retire if they don't find a ....
   a. money   b. sport   c. work   d. sponsor

60. Peaceful demonstrators walked along the street, carrying .... and shouting angrily
   a. guns   b. weapons   c. media   d. banners

61. My friend .... a great sense of loss when his father died.
   a. fell   b. experimented   c. experienced   d. expected

Grammar

seem to / (be) meant to / (be) supposed to

1 seem يبدو

seem to + inf
للتعبير عن شئ في الحاضر
- Ali seems to like Heba. Right?

seem to be + V-ing
للتعبير عن شئ يحدث الآن
- You seem to be crying. What's wrong?

seem to have + p.p
للتعبير عن شئ في الماضي
- Noha seems to have finished her homework an hour ago.

seem + adj / seem to be + adj
- You seem young. How old are you?

seem to be + noun
- The man standing there seems to be the manager.

seem + noun
غير شائعة ويفضل تجنبها
- Watching too much TV seems a waste of time.

It seems (OR: would seem) that / as if / as though / like + جملة كاملة
يبدو وكأن
- It seems that the economy is improving.

يمكن اضافة (مفعول + to) إلى نفس الأسلوب:
- It seems to me that the economy is improving.

2 (be) meant to + inf هادف لـ / مفترض / مقصود

تستخدم للتعبير عن شئ يجب أو من المفترض فعله خاصة اذا كنت مسئولا عن فعله
- The police are meant to protect people.

للتعبير عن شئ يُقصد أو يُفترض فعله، ولكن يوحى هذا الأسلوب بعدم تحقق هذا الافتراض.
- I can't say any more, it's meant to be a big secret.

mean to + inf = intend to + inf
ينوي أن/ يقصد أن
- Sorry! I didn't mean to upset you.

3 (be) supposed to + inf مُفترض

للتعبير عن شئ (إلزامي) يجب أو لا يجب فعله طبقا للقواعد
- What time are you supposed to arrive at work?

للتعبير عما كان متوقعا أن يحدث خاصة إذا لم يحدث فعلا
- I don't know why it is so hot. It was supposed to rain this morning.

للتعبير عن عن وجهة نظر البعض في أمر ما والتي من الممكن ان يختلف معها الاخرون
- That man is supposed to have a lot of money.

نلاحظ مما سبق أن استخدام كل من be meant to / be supposed to متشابه جدا.

Say, Don't say

1- **Don't say:** Nahla is seeming tired.
Say : Nahla seems tired.

- لا يستخدم الفعل seem في الأزمنة المستمرة ولكن نستخدم الأزمنة البسيطة.

2- **Don't say** : Farha seems to doing gymnastics.
Say : Farha seems to do gymnastics.

- يتبع (seem to) الفعل في المصدر.

3- **Don't say** : The movie supposed to be very exciting.
Say : The movie s supposed to be very exciting.

- يستخدم الفعل (suppose) في المبني للمجهول في الأسلوب (be supposed to):

4- **Don't say** : The restaurant is meaning to be excellent.
Say : The restaurant is meant to be excellent.

- يستخدم الفعل (mean) في التصريف الثالث في الأسلوب (be meant to):

Test Yourself

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Everyone seemed .... ready, so we set off.
   a. to be b. be c. to being d. being
2. I was .... to arrive at 7:00, but I arrived later.
   a. seemed b. meant c. supposed d. B & C
3. My brother seems .... yesterday's meeting.
   a. attend b. to attend
   c. to be attending d. to have attended
4. The meeting .... take place on Tuesday, but we've had to postpone it.
   a. are supposed to b. are seemed to c. meant to d. is supposing to
5. You .... supposed to be here. Go to your office now.
   a. don't b. aren't c. wasn't d. didn't

2- Translate to English:

١- كان من المفترض أن أسافر بالأمس ولكن أجلت رحلتي.

٢- يهدف الرسم البياني إلى إظهار المراحل المختلفة للعملية.

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nabil is supposed .... dinner.
   a. to cook b. cook c. to be cooked d. to cooking

2. I .... the first student to arrive at school today.
 a. seem to being b. meant be c. supposed to be d. seem to be
3. It .... to snow last week.
 a. didn't suppose b. wasn't supposed c. isn't meant d. wasn't seemed
4. Maya .... you.
 a. is meant to calling b. meant to call c. seem to call d. is supposed call
5. Amr .... a good day.
 a. seems to have b. seems be having c. seem to have d. seems to be
6. The train is meant .... at 9 o'clock.
 a. leave b. to leave c. to leaving d. have left
7. My teacher .... to be happy with my work.
 a. meant b. supposed c. seemed d. was seeming
8. What .... to do this week?
 a. you are meant b. are you supposed c. are you seemed d. did you suppose
9. What is the weather .... like tomorrow?
 a. meant to be b. meant to c. seem to be d. supposed be
10. Adverts are .... honest, but we must be careful.
 a. meant be b. meant to c. seem to be d. supposed to be
11. Cookies .... make it easier for us to find things that interest us.
 a. is supposed to b. are seemed to c. are meant to d. are supposing to
12. Banner adverts always .... to appear on websites.
 a. mean b. suppose c. seem d. are seeming
13. It was .... an apology but it only made her angry.
 a. seemed b. meant to being c. supposed to d. meant to be
14. - Where are the students? - I don't know. They seem ....
 a. leave b. to leave c. to be leaving d. to have left
15. Look at the new accountant. He seems .... very hard at the moment.
 a. work b. to work c. to be working d. to have worked
16. The students listen carefully to their teacher's explanation. They .... respect him.
 a. seem to b. are meant to be c. supposed to d. don't seem to
17. It .... that someone has broken my mobile.
 a. seems b. is seemed c. is seeming d. has been seemed
18. Your brother .... happy. Has he failed his exams?
 a. seems b. doesn't seem c. isn't supposed to d. is meant
19. Manar .... like an honest person, but then we found out she wasn't.
 a. meant b. supposed c. seemed d. none of them
20. Faris .... book the cottage two weeks ago, but he forgot.
 a. is supposed to b. was meant to c. didn't suppose to d. seemed
21. Khadiga was .... the research online, but her computer wasn't working.
 a. supposed to do b. meant do c. seemed to do d. meaning do
22. Esraa was .... to get in touch with Fatma, but she lost her phone number.
 a. supposed b. meant c. seemed d. Both A & B

23. What are you doing? You aren't .... here.
   a. supposed to be b. meant to being c. seeming to be d. All are OK
24. I was supposed to meet an old friend, but he ....
   a. came on time b. arrived just in time
   c. didn't turn up d. met me
25. I'm meant to be studying for my exams, but I ....
   a. am b. am not c. study d. want to rev
26. .... to rain tonight. Shall we cancel our trip?
   a. We are supposed b. It meant c. It is supposed d. They seem
27. We were supposed to visit our uncle, but we overslept. This means that we ....
   a. visited him b. didn't visit him c. didn't sleep d. never slept
28. Amany was .... specialize in politics, but she decided to change her major to economics.
   a. mean to b. seemed to c. supposed to d. meaning to b
29. School .... educational.
   a. is meant to be b. is supposed being c. seems to d. seem to be
30. Taha seems .... his new laptop.
   a. to like b. to be liking c. have liked d. to be liked
31. This great scientist seems .... by most of the people.
   a. respect b. to respect c. to be respected d. have respecte
32. I'm sorry I hurt you. I didn't .... to.
   a. suppose b. seem c. mean d. ALL are wrong
33. Ebtesam was .... to buy her mother a present, but she didn't have enough mon
   a. planned b. suppose c. meant d. ALL are OK
34. It would .... to me that my neighbour is stingy.
   a. meant b. suppose c. seem d. intend
35. Kareem is usually rude to others. He seems .... them.
   a. offend b. to offend c. offending d. to offending

Language Functions

- **Agreeing / Disagreeing with an opinion** • الاتفاق / الاختلاف مع رأى

I think... / In my opinion,... / I believe

I agree / disagree because..

I see your point but.. Did you know that...?

Writing practice

A Translate into Arabic:

1- Facebook is a social networking site, which connects people all over the world, making the Earth a global village. It mainly aims at helping its users socialise and makes its revenue out of advertising.
2- Regrettably, our country's national economy has suffered great losses due to barbaric acts of terrorism. Fighting terrorism must be a top priority for the whole world.
3- Millions of dollars have been invested in programs and services to treat, or attempt to solve the problem of homelessness. There are social causes of homelessness, such as a lack of affordable housing, poverty and unemployment.
4- There are no longer restrictions that hinder women from reaching the highest positions. Women play a very vital role in human progress and have significant standing in the society.
5- The excessive use of the internet can bring social isolation, addiction and psychological issues. It makes young people feel less interested in current society. They are becoming more interested in virtual world.

B Translate into English:

١ – إن إحدى أهم عيوب وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي هي نشر الشائعات والأخبار المزيفة والتي من الممكن أن يصدقها البعض للأسف.
٢ – من المتوقع أن اللجوء إلي استخدام التكنولوجيا في المنظومة التعليمية الجديدة سيحدث طفرة هائلة في التعليم إذا أُحسن تطبيقها.
٣– يؤدي التلوث إلى إلحاق الضرر بالكائنات الحية لذا يجب علي كل من الحكومة والمواطنين التعاون للحد من هذه الظاهرة للتخلص منها بأسرع ما يمكن.
٤ – لكي تحقق أحلامك وآمالك التي تصبو إليها . عليك أن تتحلي بالعزيمة والإصرار والالتزام ولا تيأس أبدا مهما كانت العقبات والعوائق التي تواجهك.
٥ – الهاتف الذكي هو هاتف محمول من نوع خاص يمكنه فعل أكثر من الهواتف الأخرى، حيث يمكن أن يعمل كجهاز كمبيوتر وهو صغير بما يكفي ليناسب يد المستخدم.

restrictions	قيود	poverty	الفقر
hinder	يعوق	obstacles	عقبات
terrorism	الإرهاب	virtual	افتراضي
invest	يستثمر	revenue	الدخل
homelessness	التشرد	aspire to	يصبو إلي
excessive	مفرط	will	عزيمة / إرادة
commitment	التزام	Educational system	المنظومة التعليمية
breakthrough	طفرة	phenomenon	ظاهرة
isolation	عزلة	psychological	نفسي

King Lear

Act II, Scene iii

Key Vocabulary

turn ... back on	يتخلى عن ...	patience (n)	صبر
lock ... out	يطرد	go mad	يجن
apologize (v.d)	يعتذر	room (n)	فراغ
set eyes on...	يرى	shelter (n/v.d)	مأوى - يأوى / يلوذ بـ
double (n)	ضعف العدد		

Set Text

[In the countryside.]

KING LEAR : Regan, I will not stay(1) with your sister Goneril. Please, give me clothes, food and a bed. Remember, I am old.

REGAN : Please, father! Go back and stay with my sister.

KING LEAR : Never, Regan! She's told half of my soldiers to leave! She's has been cruel(2) and rude(3) to me! I want rain to always fall on her head!

REGAN : You'll want the same to happen to me soon.

KING LEAR : No, Regan, never say bad things about you. Goneril's eyes are cruel, but yours are kind. You would never turn your back on me. And you'd not lock me out of your house. You understand how a daughter should help her father. You haven't forgotten that I've given you half of my kingdom.

REGAN : Father, why are you unhappy?

CORNWALL : Listen! Who's coming?

REGAN : It's my sister. She said in her letter that she would come soon.

[Goneril enters with Oswald.]

KING LEAR : Who put my servant in the stocks(4)? Regan, I hope that you didn't know about this.

[To Goneril.] You shouldn't want to look at me. Oh Regan, why are you holding(5) her hand?

GONERIL : Why shouldn't she hold my hand, father? What have I done wrong?

KING LEAR : Oh, how unhappy you've made me. You're too cruel! Why won't you apologise to me? And why is my servant in the stocks?

CORNWALL : I put him there, sir, because he didn't behave(6) well.

KING LEAR : You? Was it you?

REGAN : Please, father, you're ill today. Stay with my sister until the end of the month. Then, if you ask half of your soldiers to leave, you can come and stay with me.

Arabic meaning

1. يبقي / يقيم
2. قاسي
3. وقح
4. سجن
5. يمسك
6. يتصرف

KING LEAR : Stay with her, and ask my soldiers to leave? No, I would rather sleep outside under the stars.

[To himself] Return with Goneril? I would prefer to stand in front of the King of France and ask him for food. Go back with her? I would prefer to be the servant of this terrible man. *[Points at Oswald.]*

GONERIL : It's your choice(7) , father.

KING LEAR : Please, daughter, don't make me mad(8). I won't set eyes on you again, my child; goodbye. We won't meet any more. But you will soon feel bad about what you've done. Be patient for now, and I'll stay with Regan with my hundred soldiers.

REGAN : That is not possible. My home isn't ready for you. Listen to my sister. Are fifty soldiers not enough for you?

GONERIL : My servants could help you.

REGAN : Yes, why not, father? We have enough servants. When you come to me (for now I see the danger of so many men), I ask you to bring just twenty-five soldiers. I won't have rooms for any more.

7. اختيار
8. مجنون
9. متسولين
10. دافئ
11. عاصفة

KING LEAR : But Regan, I gave you everything ...

REGAN : And you gave it to me at the right time!

KING LEAR : I gave you enough to live well for all time! I asked for just one thing - to keep a hundred soldiers. Are you really asking me to come with just twenty-five, Regan?

REGAN : Don't talk to me any more about this.

KING LEAR : *[TO Goneril.]* Then I'll go back with you. Your fifty soldiers is double her twenty-five, so you must love me twice as much as she does.

GONERIL : Listen, father. You do not need twenty-five, ten or even five soldiers in a house where we have fifty servants to look after you.

REGAN : Why do you even need one soldier?

KING LEAR : Why do I need them? Even the poorest beggars(9) have things that they don't need. If you only give people what they need to live, then they are little more than animals. You are a lady. If you just want to stay warm(10) , you don't need those beautiful clothes you're wearing. They don't keep you warm at all. But, if you ask me what I really need, I need patience! Oh, give me patience, or I will go mad!

[King Lear exits with Gloucester and the Fool. There is a huge storm.]

CORNWALL : We should go inside; there's a big storm(11) coming.

REGAN : This house is small; there isn't room for Lear and his soldiers.

GONERIL : Where is the Duke of Gloucester?

CORNWALL : He followed Lear.

[Gloucester enters.]

Here he is.

GLOUCESTER : The King is very angry. He has called for his horse.

CORNWALL : Let him go. He won't listen to anyone.

GONERIL : Yes, don't try to stop him.

GLOUCESTER : But it is nearly night and strong winds are blowing[12]. There is nowh...
to shelter for many kilometres.

REGAN : That will teach him a lesson. Lock the doors. He has his soldiers w...
him, and who knows what they'll persuade[14] him to do.

CORNWALL : Regan is right. Lock the doors, it's a wet night. Come in out of the sto...

[They exit.]

[In a field in the countryside. The storm continues. Kent enters with a soldier.]

KENT : Who's there, in this terrible weather? Where's the King?

SOLDIER : He's fighting with the wind and the rain. This terrible night would make ...
bear hide in a cave, but the King is running around outside without even ...
hat.

KENT : But who's with him?

SOLDIER : Only the Fool, who tries to make him happier with his jokes[15].

KENT : Sir, I trust[16] you. I have got something to tell you. There's a disagreement[17]
between the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall. They both have servants who are really spies[18] for the King of France. They have noticed that the Dukes are both against the King. Now the King of France has sent an army, and the French have spies at some of our ports. If you trust me, go quickly to Dover. There are people there who'll thank you when you tell them about the King's problems. I'm not the person who you think. I'm really an important man. If you see Cordelia, show her this ring, and she'll tell you who I am. Here's some money. Oh, this storm! I must go and find the King.

[They exit.]

12. نهب
13. لا مكان
14. يقنع
15. نكات
16. يثق بـ
17. خلاف
18. جواسيس

Exercises on King Lear

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... people behave in a way that is not polite and is likely to offend others.
   a. Well-mannered b. Moral c. Respectable d. Rude
2. We must encourage children to exercise .... and make their own decisions.
   a. gym b. sport c. training d. choice
3. My bedroom is so small that there isn't enough .... for a desk.
   a. room b. house c. home d. flat
4. We had a .... about which film to watch, but I let him watch a comedy.
   a. argument b. disagreement c. entertainment d. discouragement
5. Sagda is a great friend. She has a lot of ...., so she never gets angry.
   a. intolerance b. grief c. patience d. friendly

6. Your brother makes us laugh when he tells funny ....
   a. swords b. smiles c. soldiers d. jokes
7. I asked Saleem to .... to Ziad for shouting.
   a. look b. recognize c. apologize d. answer
8. Mr. Hassan could be a/an .... because he speaks five languages and he often travels to foreign countries.
   a. dictionary b. diplomatic c. embassy d. spy
9. Twenty-four is .... twelve.
   a. couple b. double c. pair d. both
10. We can .... in this shop until the rain stops.
   a. shelter b. filter c. inhabit d. await
11. I was shocked when my best friend turned his .... on me during my problem.
   a. head b. arm c. back d. leg
12. Mostafa was .... out of the house as a punishment for failing the exams.
   a. closed b. locked c. looked d. licked
13. I loved that house from the moment I .... eyes on it.
   a. set b. sit c. sat d. saw
14. Mr. Gamal went .... when his students didn't answer any of the questions.
   a. holiday b. glad c. mad d. maid
15. When my mother goes to work, she asks my sister to .... with my baby brother to look after him.
   a. interest b. feed c. spend d. stay
16. Badria got divorced from Faris because he was .... to her.
   a. cruel b. kind-hearted c. sociable d. violence
17. In the past, criminals were locked in the .... as a form of punishment.
   a. sticks b. stakes c. stocks d. spokes
18. .... on the streets are known to ask people for money and food.
   a. Shelters b. Beggars c. Triggers d. Baggers
19. Clothes or buildings that are .... can keep in heat or keep out cold.
   a. mild b. fashionable c. worm d. warm
20. Don't go out now. A strong wind is going to ....
   a. blow b. rain c. rise d. plow
21. Nada finally managed to .... her father to let her go out with her friends.
   a. make b. dissuade c. persuade d. insist
22. While driving my car, I couldn't see anything ahead because there was a dust ....
   a. earthquake b. volcano c. storm d. fig

23. Mahmoud is a good driver and I .... him implicitly.
a. depend b. rely c. confide d. trust

24. Unfortunately, there's .... to park my car.
a. anywhere b. somewhere c. everywhere d. nowhere

TEST 6 Unit 5

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Jana can post anything on her .... For example, a photo, video or message
a. blag b. clog c. blog d. log

2. Dr. Mashaly was a great doctor. This square should be .... after him.
a. examined b. named c. followed d. called

3. My sister is .... research on animals.
a. doing b. giving c. making d. damaging

4. If you want to make people know you are selling your house, put a/an .... in the local newspaper
a. magazine b. website c. advertisement d. entertainment

5. .... is the antonym of "reliable".
a. Dependable b. Trusted c. Untrustworthy d. a & b

6. I share a lot of interests and hobbies .... my friend Ali.
a. to b. with c. on d. at

7. The internet helps you get .... from people with similar interests and hobbies.
a. suppose b. suppress c. support d. report

8. Egypt is one of the countries that are rich in natural ....
a. continents b. resources c. rehearses d. lacks

9. We .... supposed to turn out the lights at nine. It's a rule.
a. are b. don't c. didn't d. was

10. Nabila is supposed to clean the rooms. This means ....
a. it's her duty
b. she's already cleaned it
c. it isn't her responsibility
d. someone else will clean it

11. The train was meant .... at ten.
a. arrive b. to arrive c. arriving d. to be arrived

12. I'd better hurry! I'm .... to be meeting Rana in 10 minutes.
a. mean b. seemed c. supposing d. supposed

13. You are not supposed to park here. This means you .... to do that.
a. are allowed b. aren't allowed c. are meant d. aren't seemed

14. Look! Hosny has two babies. He seems .... two years ago.
a. marry b. to marry c. to be marrying d. to have married

15. Don't put sugar in your tea. Do you remember what the doctor said? You .... put sugar.
a. seem b. don't suppose c. aren't supposed to d. are meant

16. The chairs .... to have been painted.
a. suppose b. mean c. seem d. are seeming

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Sham el-Nessim means smelling the breeze and it is celebrated all over Egypt on a Monday in April or May. The festival started in about 2700 BCE. The ancient Egyptian year had three seasons and Sham el-Nessim was held to celebrate the onset of spring. This festival doesn't have any religious background, following Easter. Sham el-Nessim isn't celebrated in any other country. Today, Sham el-Nessim is a holiday and families head out to enjoy the fresh spring air. The spring air is very good for you! People often have a picnic in the country, in parks or along the Nile. Special food is eaten at Sham el-Nessim. Traditionally, boiled eggs are eaten for breakfast. Eggs are decorated in bright colours by children. They usually paint the eggs in the morning and leave them in the sun to dry. Another traditional food which is eaten on this day is feseekh: fish that is dried with salt. This tradition also dates back to ancient Egyptian times. When people had more fresh fish than they could eat, they put salt on it to preserve it. It is important to buy feseekh from a clean shop so that you are sure that the fish will be good for you. Egyptians also celebrate by dancing, singing and attending theatre performances. Over time, Sham el-Nessim has also become an opportunity for families to go to beaches and enjoy the pleasant weather.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. BCE stands for ....
a. Beside Calendar Egyptian b. Before Common Era
c. By Church Eastern d. Before Christian Einstein

2. Sham el-Nessim is celebrated in ....
a. one country b. two countries c. three countries d. all over the world

3. Sham el-Nessim usually falls .... Easter.
a. after b. before c. with d. followed by

4. People preserve fish ....
a. to make it saltier b. so that it wouldn't rot
c. to make it dry d. so that it would be delicious

B: Answer the following questions:

5- Are Sham el-Nessim's ceremonial rituals limited to eating and going on picnics? Why?

6. How do you think ancient Egyptians celebrated Sham el-Nessim?
7. Find in the passage words which mean:

a. keep something safe
b. [illegible]

Translation

A. Translate into Arabic:

The family budget, including food, clothing and shelter, must be commensurate with income, so there's no need for extravagance.

B. Translate into English:

[illegible]

Writing

8. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

The importance of advertising



Unit 6 Learning from our mistakes

Objectives

- **Reading**
  Two extracts from an abridged version of "A Christmas Carol" by Charles Dickens
- **Writing**
  Captions for a picture story
- **Listening**
  A radio programme about regrets
- **Speaking**
  Role-play about recognizing mistakes
- **Language**
  Conditionals (Zero, first, second and third)
- **Life Skills**
  Learning from our mistakes

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary with Derivatives

beg (v.ged)	يتوسل – يتسول	keep in touch (with)	يبقى على تواصل (مع)
beggar (n / v.ed)	متسول – يُفقِر	lose touch (with)	يفقد التواصل (مع)
beggary (n)	التسول – الفقر الشديد	bring ... back (v.brought)	يذّكر / يُعيد ذكرَى
mean (adj / v.meant)	بخيل – وضيع / يعني / يقصد	fall out with (v.fell / fallen)	يتشاجر مع
pile (n / v.d)	كومة – يراكم	get into (v.got / got)	يستمتع بـ/ يدخل في
sigh (v.ed / n)	يتنهد – تنهيد	get on with	ينسجم مع / يكون على علاقة طيبة بـ
fire (n / v.d)	نار / مدفأة – يطلق النار / يطرد من العمل	hang out with	يقضي وقتا مع

Listening

chat (v.ted / n)	يدردش – دردشة	upload (v.ed / n)	يرفع ملف للانترنت – ملف
regret (v.ted / n)	يندم على – ندم	amount (n)	كمية / مقدار
argue (v.d)	يتجادل	regrets (n)	أشياء مثيرة للحزن
show (n)	برنامج / عرض	no way	مستحيل
necklace	عُقد / قلادة	close (adj)	على صلة وثيقة
share (v.d / n)	يشارك – نصيب / سهم	apparently (adv)	على ما يبدو
relationship (n)	علاقة		

Reading

Christmas (n)	عيد الميلاد	own (v.ed)	يمتلك
carol (n)	ترنيمة	middle (n)	وسط
foggy (adj)	ضبابي	nephew (n)	إبن الأخ او الأخت
assistant (n)	مساعد/ معاون	tone (n / v.d)	نبرة كلام / ينسجم مع
far away (adv/ adj)	بعيدا – بعيد	actually (adv)	بالفعل / في الواقع
enormous (adj)	ضخم / هائل	alone (adj / adv)	وحيد
react (v.ed)	يتصرف / يُصدِر رد فعل	treat (v.ed)	يعامل / يُكرم
friendship (n)	صداقة	gift (n)	هدية – موهبة
teenagers (n)	المراهقون	ignore (v.d)	يتجاهل

Language Focus & Workbook

Word	Meaning
disappointed (adj)	مُحبط
generous (adj)	كريم
similarity (n)	تشابه
recognize (v.d)	يتعرف على
exist (v.ed)	يتواجد
international (adj)	دولي / عالمي
map (n)	خريطة

Word	Meaning
light (v.lit)	يشعل - يوقد
waste (v.d / n)	يضيع - نفايات
donations (n)	تبرعات
in addition	بالإضافة الى ذلك
support (v.ed / n)	يدعم - دعم
memories (n)	ذكريات
sun cream (n)	كريم الوقاية من الشمس

B Language Study

Definitions

- **beg (v)** : to ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much
- **mean (adj)** : not happy to spend money or give anything to other people
- **pile (n)** : a group of things put on top of each other
- **sigh (n)** : a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed
- **bring back** : make you remember
- **fall out with** : stop being friendly
- **get into** : start enjoying
- **get on with** : be friendly with
- **hang out with** : spend time with
- **keep in touch with** : continue to communicate with
- **lose touch with** : stop communicating

Expressions

Expression	Meaning
have a dream	يرى حلم
feel ignored and upset	يشعر بالتجاهل والحزن
change his mind	يغير رأيه
make new friends	يكوِّن صداقات جديدة
have a conversation	يقوم بعمل محادثة
(be) getting worse	يزداد سوءا
feel uncomfortable	يشعر بعدم الارتياح
do exercise	يؤدي تمارين رياضية
go past	يمر بـ
pay attention	يهتم
get angry	يغضب

Expression	Meaning
get lost	يضل الطريق (يتوه)
get burnt	يصاب بحرق الشمس
spend money on	ينفق المال على
damage a friendship	يدمر الصداقة
lose a friend	يخسر صديق
keep attention on	يركز انتباهه على
go mad	يجن / يقوم بتصرفات غير متعقلة
have a cold	يصاب بنزلة برد
give ..... a smile	يبتسم لـ.....
keep .... warm	يُبقي .... دافئا

Prepositions

pay for	يدفع ثمن	care about	يهتم بـ
in contact with	على تواصل مع	smile at	يبتسم في وجه
work for	يعمل لدى	(be) friendly with	يكون لطيفا مع
happy about	سعيد بخصوص	communicate with	يتواصل مع
sorry about	شاعر بالأسف بخصوص	argue with	يتجادل مع
ask ... for ...	يطلب .... من	pick up	يلتقط
wake up	يستيقظ	go on a picnic	يخرج في نزهة

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word		Synonym	Antonym
beg	يتوسل	request - pray - ask	give - reply - answer
mean	بخيل / يقصد	intend - miser	noble - open-handed - generous
pile	كومة	mass - collection	part - unit
fall out	يتشاجر	argue - quarrel - disagree	be friendly
get into	يستمتع	associate - enjoy	reject
hang out	يقابل	meet - accompany	-
keep in touch	يبقى على تواصل	communicate - interact - connect	lose touch
regret	ندم	sorrow - sadness	satisfaction - pleasure
enormous	ضخم	massive - gigantic - huge	microscopic - tiny

Spot the difference

dream	حلم	nightmare	كابوس – حلم مزعج
alone	بمفرده / وحيد	lonely	شاعر بالوحدة
disappointed	محبط – حزين	appointed	تم تعيينه او اختياره
unusual	غير معتاد / استثنائي / نادر	abnormal	غير طبيعي / شاذ عن المألوف
ignored	يشعر بالتجاهل من الآخرين	ignorant	جاهل (من حيث المعلومات)
wake up	يستيقظ من النوم مع بقائه بالسرير	get up	يستيقظ ويغادر سريره

Language Notes

1 let / make + إسم أو ضمير مفعول + inf.

- يأتي بعد الأفعال let / make مفعولاً به ثم فعل بالمصدر بدون to:

My father doesn't want to let me drive his car.
The teacher made me write the essay again.

- يأتي بعد الفعل make المصدر مسبوقا (to) إذا كان مبنيا للمجهول:

I was made to write the essay again.

2 V. to (be) in the continuous form

- عادة لا نستخدم v. to be في الاستمرار عندما يعبر عن الكينونة:

Ahmed is ill. ~~(NOT is being ill)~~.

- ولكن يمكن استخدامه في زمن مستمر عندما يعبر عن تصرف أو سلوك مؤقت على غير العادة من شخص:

You are being happy today. What's the matter? أنت تتصرف بسعادة اليوم. ما الأمر؟
She was being foolish when she insulted the old man.
كانت تتصرف بحماقة في هذا الموقف على غير عادتها.

3 Start / begin + v. ing / to inf.

- بعد الأفعال start / begin يمكن استخدام v. ing أو فعل بالمصدر مسبوقا بـ to:

As soon as I left for work, it started / began raining / to rain.

- ولكن إذا جاء الفعل start / begin نفسه في حالة الاستمرار، نستخدم بعده مصدر مسبوقا بـ to فقط:

Listen! The baby is starting to cry. ~~(NOT is starting crying)~~

4 Nouns & Pronouns

- مع الأسماء والضمائر غير المحدد جنسها في الجملة (مذكر او مؤنث) نستخدم فعل مفرد وضمائر جمع:

When someone / a person uses their phone during a conversation, they are not being polite.

- مع الأسماء التي تعبر عن الوظائف غير المرتبطة بجنس محدد، يمكن أيضا استخدام he / she – him / her:

A student goes to school to get his/her education.

5 alone & lonely:

- تستخدم الصفة alone بمعنى (وحيدا / بمفرده by himself / on his own) ولا يأتي بعدها إسم:

I was alone on the beach all day. It was great.
There was a woman sitting alone / on her own on the beach. ~~(NOT an alone woman)~~

- تستخدم الصفة lonely لتعبر عن الشعور بالوحدة والانعزال – شعور داخلي سلبي – حتى لو كان المتكلم يعيش مع آخرين:

I feel lonely at my new school because I don't not know anyone there.

6 see / hear

– يأتى بعد الأفعال hear / see مفعول به ثم مصدر الفعل بدون to بمعنى أن المتكلم شاهد أو سمع الحدث كاملاً:

I saw Mustafa play tennis in the club yesterday.

I heard Mona shout inside the house.

– ويأتى بعدهما مفعول به ثم v+ing بمعنى أن المتكلم شاهد أو سمع جزء من الحدث.

I heard Ali singing in the bathroom.

I saw Ayman going inside the bank.

7 an Ali / a Hazem

– إذا كان الحديث عن شخص غير معروف بالنسبة للمتكلم أو لا يتذكره، نستخدم قبله آداه النكرة a / an

I don't know a Hany in our class.

There›s a Mr. Ahmed in the other room. He wants to see you.

Imet an Anne the supermarket. She sends her regards to you, mom.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some parents like to let their kids .... whatever they like.
   a. to do b. doing c. do d. to doing
2. I .... to wait four hours before I was examined by a doctor.
   a. was made b. made c. to make d. making
3. My father .... nervous today. Has anything wrong happened?
   a. will be b. been c. be d. is being
4. The new manager is starting .... tough.
   a. being b. to be c. to being d. be
5. I don't like to go to the park or the cinema .... I like going in company.
   a. alone b. lonely c. on my own d. A & C are correct

Reading

A Christmas carol

It was the end of December. It was dark outside and the streets were foggy[1]. Scrooge was a very rich businessman, but he was mean[2] and people didn't like him. Scrooge was working in his office with his assistant[3] Bob Cratchit. He was very cold because Scrooge wouldn't pay for a big fire[4] to keep them warm. There was only a small fire and it was very far away.

"It's late. Can I go home, Mr. Scrooge?" Bob begged[5].

"Have you finished your work?" asked Scrooge.

Bob looked at the enormous pile[6] of work left to do and sighed[7].

'You can't go home if you don't finish your work." continued Scrooge.

'If I finish all this work tonight, will you let me come to work a bit later tomorrow morning?" asked Bob

"No," said Scrooge.

Suddenly the door opened and Scrooge's nephew[8], Fred, came into the office. He gave his uncle a friendly smile.

'Bah!" said Scrooge, 'Why are you here? And why are you so happy? You're poor. What have you got to be happy about?'

"If you are so rich, why are you so sad?" replied Fred. "Perhaps if you were poor like me, you'd be happy like me, too."

"Have you come to ask me for money?" asked Scrooge in an unfriendly[9] tone[10].

"No," replied his nephew. "I've come to invite you to dinner."

"Bah!" said his uncle".

Arabic meaning

1. ضبابى
2. بخيل / وضيع
3. مساعد
4. مدفأة
5. يتوسل
6. كومة
7. يتنهد
8. ابن الأخ أو الأخت
9. غير ودود
10. نبرة صوت

Reading

A Christmas carol: After a dream

The next morning, Scrooge woke up in his bed. He'd had a terrible dream[1], but now he could see his mistakes[2]. If he hadn't felt so alone[3], he wouldn't have cared[4] only about money. And if he hadn't cared about money so much, he would have treated[5] other people better. Then he would have had more friends, and he wouldn't have felt so alone. But now he would change.

He ran to his window and saw a boy in the street. "You! Boy!" he shouted out of the window. "Do you know the butcher's shop?"

"Yes, Mr. Scrooge," shouted the boy. He was surprised to see Mr. Scrooge smile.

"want you to buy the best food and take it to Bob Cratchit's house as a gift[6] from me to his family. Will you do this for me if I pay you?"

Of course," said the boy and then he ran off before Mr. Scrooge changed his mind[7].

Arabic meaning

1. حلم سيئ
2. أخطاء
3. وحيد
4. يهتم بـ
5. يعامل
6. هدية
7. يغير رأيه

Learning from our mistakes

Scrooge went out in the street and said, "Good morning," to all the people he met and he smiled at them. Everyone was surprised to see Mr. Scrooge smiling, but they replied, "Good morning, Mr. Scrooge," and that made Scrooge very happy.
Then he went to his nephew's house and asked if he could have dinner with him.
Of course, his nephew smiled and invited him to come inside.

Extra Reading

How are your friendships?

Have you ever met a friend to spend time with them and when you're in the middle of a conversation[1], they start looking at their phone? When that happens, many people feel ignored[2] and upset[3]. And the problem may be getting worse[4] because over 81% of Egyptian teenagers[5] between the ages of 15 and 17 now own a phone. Studies have shown[6] that just having a mobile phone out while having a conversation makes friends feel uncomfortable[7] with each other. And many people think that when someone is using their phone, they are not being polite[8] and not really listening. So, using a phone like this can damage even good friendships[9]. However, there are ways to have a phone without losing your friends[10]. Understanding the problem is important. So, the next time you are going to pick up[11] your phone while talking to a friend, think about what you are doing and stop. Is your phone really more important than your friend? Perhaps you should keep your attention on[12] the person you are talking to. And if a friend ignores[13] you, tell them about it because they may not understand how it makes you feel.

So, if you want to be a kind and honest friend, keep your phone in your pocket[14] and your eyes on your friendship.

Arabic meaning

1. محادثة
2. يشعر بالتجاهل
3. مُحبط
4. يزداد سوءاً
5. مراهقون
6. أظهرت
7. يشعر بعدم الارتياح
8. مؤدب
9. صداقات
10. خسارة أصدقاؤك
11. يلتقط
12. ركز انتباهك على
13. يتجاهل
14. جيب

Tapescript

Presenter :

In today's show[1], we're going back in time and looking at some of our regrets[2]. Now I've got a message from Tarek. And Tarek has a story that, I think, will bring back memories[3] for many of us. This is what he says.

I used to talk to my family and play with my brothers after school! I also used to phone my grandparents and my cousins. But then I got into[4] using social media more.

I started using social media to talk to my friends after school too. We all liked the same things. It was fun[5] and we all got on with[6] each other. Sometimes I'd hang out with[7] them online[8] for hours chatting.

I guess I lost touch with[9] my cousins and my friends after grandparents a bit. I still saw them sometimes, of course, but I didn't call them . I didn't tell my grandparents about my day at school.

Arabic meaning

1. برنامج / عرض
2. أشياء مثيرة للحزن
3. يعيد الذكريات
4. يستمتع بـ
5. ممتعة
6. ينسجم مع
7. يقضي وقتا مع
8. عبر الإنترنت
9. يفقد التواصل مع

But when my friends started falling out[10] with each other online, I stopped chatting with them, too. Now, I'm sorry. I shouldn't have ignored my family. I wish I'd kept in touch with my cousins more. I should have called my grandparents, and I wish I could change what happened.

Sadly, this kind of thing seems to happen so often these days. I guess, when we're getting into something new, we can forget to take an interest in the people who really care about us.

Thank you for sharing[11] your story with us, Tarek.

10. يتشاجر
11. مشاركة

Tapescript

Prep School Memories

Hoda : Hey Lamia! Have you seen this from Ola? She's posted some old photos from when we were in prep school[1].

Lamia : Really? Let's see. But, I don't remember an Ola in our class.

Hoda : Yes, you do. She used to sit opposite you in class and you would always fall out when we played any game together because you both wanted to be the leaders.

Lamia : Ahhh, yes. I remember now. I shouldn't have argued with her so much because she was a kind person really.

Hoda : Look. Here she is in the photo.

Lamia : Ahh, wow!

Hoda : ...and look at us! Oh, no way[2]! Just look at your hair!

Lamia : Oh, that's terrible! And what about your dress!

Hoda : Oh, no! Not that dress! It brings back so many bad memories. That was the dress I was wearing when I lost my favourite necklace[3]. I wish I hadn't taken it to school that day.

Lamia : But the necklace was very pretty and if you hadn't taken it to school, Samira wouldn't have spoken to you about it and you two wouldn't have got on so well!

Hoda : That's true! I guess, and we are still very good friends now.

Lamia : And look! There's the old group of friends we used to hang out with. I was sad when they moved away to go to high school and really wish we hadn't lost touch with them.

Hoda : Yes, we had some great times together and if we had stayed in touch, we would have been able to organise a school reunion. I wish we hadn't left prep school! We had a lot less homework!

Lamia : That's true! Perhaps we can keep in touch with them on social media.

Hoda : Good idea! Let's post a message asking if anyone knows anything about them.

Arabic meaning
1. مدرسة إعدادية
2. مستحيل
3. عُقد / قلادة

Tapescript

Judy:
Huda was my best friend. We'd always hang out together at school. We made each other laugh a lot and we were very close[1]. Sometimes, we'd hang out together after school as well. We'd listen to music, look at magazines and chat for hours.
One weekend, we went shopping at the mall. We had a great time as usual[2], but that was when she showed me her new smartphone.
Apparently[3], it was a really good phone and Huda couldn't stop using it all the time. She got really into social media and made lots of new friends online.

Arabic meaning
1. على صلة وثيقة
2. كالمعتاد
3. على ما يبدو

Video script

Charles Dickens

Charles Dickens was born in England in 1812. He wrote fifteen novels including[1] Great Expectations, Oliver Twist, David Copperfield, and Hard Times. His most popular[2] novel is probably A Christmas Carol, which was published[3] in 1843.

In A Christmas Carol, Dickens wrote about some of the problems in Britain at that time. Many people were very poor and Dickens thought that rich people should be kinder[4] and help the poor people who worked for[5] them.

The main character[6] is Ebenezer Scrooge. At the beginning of the story, he is mean and he won't help anyone, including his employee[7] Bob Cratchit, who is very poor with a large family and a sick child.

However, by the end of the story Scrooge 'has changed and he sees life in a completely different way. We are told that Scrooge: *Became as good a friend, as good an employer*[8] *and as good a man as the good old city of London had ever seen.*

Arabic meaning
1. بما في ذلك
2. الاكثر شهرة
3. تم نشرها
4. أكثر عطفا
5. يعمل لدى
6. الشخصية الرئيسية
7. موظف
8. صاحب عمل

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary & derivatives

1. Said has .... of work to do. He doesn't have any free time.
   a. piles b. fires c. straws d. uploads
2. The race starts when you hear a gun being .... into the air.
   a. brought b. fallen c. burnt d. fired
3. I'm sure Taha didn't .... to upset you. It was just a bit of fun.
   a. fool b. mean c. own d. bring
4. I'm afraid I don't understand. What do you .... by the word "philosopher"?
   a. scare b. regret c. care d. mean

5. He doesn't work as hard as expected, so his boss will -------- him.
   a. reward b. feed c. fire d. pay
6. Hassan was so -------- that he wouldn't spend money on anything.
   a. generous b. wasteful c. mean d. open-handed
7. Whenever I go past my primary school, it -------- lovely memories.
   a. gets into b. falls out c. brings back d. gets on
8. Does that photo -------- a lot to you? You seem to be caring for it so much.
   a. beg b. mean c. sigh d. share
9. He didn't say anything, but I knew Dad was disappointed when I heard him --------.
   a. cry b. shout c. whisper d. sigh
10. I didn't -------- with my brother when we were young, but we're good friends now.
   a. fall out b. get into c. get on d. pick up
11. We -------- to inform you that you have not been selected for the position.
   a. regret b. sorry c. upset d. remind
12. Someone who is between 13 and 19 years old is a/an --------
   a. infant b. teenager c. kid d. toddler
13. Our teacher has -------- some videos to YouTube explaining how to learn online.
   a. uploaded b. downloaded c. hacked d. scammed
14. None of us in the class are close friends, but we all -------- an interest in learning English.
   a. beg b. share c. sigh d. feed
15. The young man whom I employed as my -------- works very hard.
   a. king b. editor c. assistant d. patron
16. My sister's two sons are my --------, and I am their uncle.
   a. spouses c. nieces c. cousins d. nephews
17. Employers have an obligation to -------- all employees equally.
   a. cure b. beat c. treat d. operate
18. Ana will -------- her mum to make her a chocolate cake for her birthday because it is her favourite.
   a. own b. beg c. feed d. ignore
19. During my tennis game with my friend Ali, our wives sat around -------- while the children played on the swings.
   a. treating b. quarreling c. sharing d. chatting
20. I used to -------- with my close friend Mahmoud a lot more before she started his new job which has made him too busy.
   a. lose touch b. hang out c. bring back d. come up
21. The siblings -------- over their inheritance. Every one of them wanted to take the most part of their dead father's property.
   a. fell out b. brought back c. got on d. hanged out

22. I've uploaded all the pictures from her photo album onto my .... so that my friends in Japan can see them.
a. campsite b. bedside c. website d. seaside

23. People are advised not to give money to .... because most of them are taking it as a profession instead of looking for a job.
a. burglars b. beggars c. nephews d. tones

24. Unfortunately, my college roommate and I have .... for years, so I have no idea how he's doing now.
a. kept in touch b. communicated c. kept in contact d. lost touch

25. We've always had a good .... with all our neighbours. All of them are friendly and caring people.
a. championship b. relationship c. scholarship d. leadership

26. Facebook, Twitter and other .... have really made keeping in touch with friends available all the time.
a. visual media b. mass media c. social media d. local media

27. The owners of the company are trying to force their .... to take a cut in salary.
a. employment b. employees c. employers d. employs

28. I have a/an .... relationship with all my cousins. We are very good friends.
a. close b. severe c. technical d. available

29. ...., it will rain this afternoon, so you'd better bring your umbrella.
a. Suddenly b. Personally c. Traditionally d. Apparently

30. The hostess looked simply gorgeous in a plain black dress with a .... of pearls around her neck.
a. necktie b. bracelet c. necklace d. jumper

31. The new factory in Sadat City is probably the largest .... in our area. It has more than 3000 workers.
a. destroyer b. leader c. reunion d. employer

32. One of my biggest .... is resigning from the company I worked for 10 years ago. I wish I hadn't resigned.
a. regrets b. delights c. highlights d. benefits

33. Millions of music lovers can now exchange files .... every day, using various file-sharing systems.
a. deadline b. offline c. decline d. line

34. In .... weather, drivers find it hard to make out their way ahead. They cannot guarantee يضمن the punctual arrival of buses.
a. foggy b. mild c. fizzy d. chilly

35. The taxi driver's angry and aggressive .... of speech changed when I gave him the money he wanted.
a. shore b. fool c. gift d. tone

36. She lives in an enormous house, with 8 bedrooms, 5 bathrooms and a swimming pool.
"The word "enormous" is opposite in meaning to ....
a. microscopic b. massive c. immense d. tremendous

37. The stars we see in the sky at night are really far away. The word "far away" is similar in meaning to --------

a. close b. conscious c. distant d. sufficient

38. It is dangerous for children to go out alone at night. The word "alone" is an antonym for --------

a. by themselves b. in company c. unaccompanied d. unattended

39. It's impossible for me to accept or refuse such an offer. I'm a humble worker here. The manager -------- will decide.

a. lonely b. lately c. alone d. already

40. The little girl felt very -------- and depressed living in that big house. Her only companions were the members of the gang.

a. excited b. lonely c. delighted d. friendly

41. I don't like the way Mr. Kamel -------- us during lessons. He's always shouting at us for trivial mistakes.

a. treats b. shares c. piles d. fires

42. The office staff bought a lovely -------- to congratulate Mrs. Rania on the birth of her first child.

a. award b. reward c. prize d. gift

43. Finding someone with whom you can establish a close -------- is one of the most precious gifts of life.

a. social media b. friendship c. enmity d. hostility

44. One should do his best in order not to -------- a friend, especially when they are loyal and faithful.

a. keep b. lose c. sigh d. feed

45. I get on with Osman very well. He is really nice and helpful. "Get on" is a synonym for --------

a. spend most of my time b. have a good relationship
c. lose communication d. keep in touch

46. Last Friday's trip with my classmates brought back a lot of happy memories. "Brought back" means --------

a. made me stop being friendly b. made me remember
c. made me start enjoying d. made me regret

47. I first got into reading English novels when I read Oliver Twist by Charles Dickens. "Got into" here is a synonym for --------

a. stopped communicating b. started to enjoy
c. lost touch with d. argued with

48. I first met Salah in London last year, and I've kept in touch with him ever since. "Kept in touch" is an antonym for --------

a. lost communication b. hanged out
c. had angry arguments d. continued to contact

Expressions & Prepositions

49. The child was accused of stealing a chocolate bar, but he claimed that he had just forgotten to pay -------- it.
    a. out b. into c. for d. on
50. The old woman feels sad and lonely as her sons and daughters are never in contact -------- her.
    a. with b. into c. for d. about
51. Salma is very happy -------- the top marks she has got in her exams.
    a. for b. by c. of d. about
52. It makes me -------- ignored when my partner in a conversation gets involved in something else while talking to me.
    a. get b. do c. feel d. have
53. The problem is that Mariam has spent all her money -------- chocolate.
    a. with b. on c. to d. for
54. Never -------- up your mobile phone while having a conversation with someone. It makes them feel upset.
    a. get b. have c. wake d. pick

Vocabulary with other meanings & uses

55. The old man was able to make 500 pounds a day -------- on the street.
    a. getting b. begging c. piling d. hiking
56. Our neighbour, Mr. Salem, bought -------- in Microsoft, and made a fortune.
    a. shares b. extracts c. roles d. gifts
57. The furniture here is really tasteful. It -------- with the colour of the walls.
    a. moves b. suits c. tones d. picks
58. I -------- myself to a new car to celebrate my promotion to general manager.
    a. treated b. invited c. entertained d. hosted
59. My sister has a natural -------- for learning foreign languages. She speaks five languages as fluently as a native speaker.
    a. ability b. gift c. share d. tone

Grammar

Conditional sentences

1 The zero conditional with "If" الحالة الصفرية للشرط

If → فاعل → present simple مضارع بسيط → فاعل → present simple مضارع بسيط

Uses الاستخدامات

1. تستخدم للتعبير عن حقائق علمية ثابتة (مثل قوانين الطبيعة والفيزياء والرياضيات).
   - If you heat ice, it melts.
   - You get water if you mix hydrogen and oxygen.
2. تستخدم للتعبير عن العادات والمواقف التي تحدث بصورة معتادة.
   - If I eat peanuts, I feel sick.
   - Snakes bite if they are scared.
3. تستخدم لإعطاء توجيهات وإرشادات.
   - If you press that button, the words appear.

ملاحظات

1. من الممكن أن تستخدم when / whenever بدلاً من if في الحالة الصفرية:
   - When I have some free time, I usually visit my aunts.
   - Whenever the little girl sees me, she asks for chocolate.
2. من الممكن أن تستخدم unless مكان (if ... not) في الحالة الصفرية:
   - Don't go to the wedding unless you are invited.
3. من الممكن إستخدام p.p بعد If / when في جملة الشرط إذا كانت الجملة مبنيه لمجهول:
   - When scared, snakes bite.

2 The first conditional with "If" الحالة الأولى للشرط

If → فاعل → present simple مضارع بسيط → فاعل + (will / shall / can / may / might / should / could / must / have to / has to) + inf

Uses الاستخدامات

1. تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث محتمل في المضارع أو المستقبل.
   - If you go to the public library, you will find this book there.
2. تستخدم للتعبير عن وعد / تهديد.
   - If I win the competition, I'll take you to the theatre next Thursday.
   - If you don't go to bed right now, I'll tell your father.

ملاحظات

1. من الممكن أن تستخدم unless مكان (if ... not) في الحالة الأولى:

- Unless you hurry, we will miss the train.
- I'll have a swim unless the sea is rough.

2. يمكن أن يكون جواب الشرط أمر أو طلب أو نهي:

- If you are late for school, take a taxi.
- If you see Ali, give him this book.

3. يمكن أن تستخدم will أو إحدي بدائلها في جواب الشرط وفقاً للمعني المقصود:

If it rains, he will take an umbrella.	تستخدم will للتنبؤ
If it rains, he should take an umbrella.	تستخدم should / better had للنصيحة
If it rains, he must take an umbrella.	تستخدم must للنصيحة القوية
If it rains, he can take an umbrella.	تستخدم can للتعبير عن الإستطاعة أو الامكانية
If it rains, he may take an umbrella.	تستخدم may للإحتمال وعدم التأكد
If it rains, he might take an umbrella.	تستخدم might للإحتمال الضعيف
If it rains, he could take an umbrella.	تستخدم could للإحتمال الضعيف (وللطلب والاقتراح أيضًا)
If it rains, he has to take an umbrella.	تستخدم have to / has to للوجوب

4. يمكن أن يستخدم (it is + adj. + to + inf.) في جواب الشرط في الحالة الأولي:

- If we don't go to the station now, it's possible to miss the train.

5. يمكن استخدام زمن مضارع (بسيط - مستمر - تام - تام مستمر) في الجزء الأول من الجملة بما يتفق مع المعني المقصود:

- If my father is sleeping, I won't turn on the TV.
- If you haven't finished your homework yet, I'll help you.

6. التعبيرات (had better / would like / would rather) فى جواب الشرط تشير الى الحالة الاولى:

- If I have a day off work, I'd rather rest at home.

7. من الممكن استخدام should في بداية الجملة كبديل ل if في الحالة الأولي والفعل بعدها يكون بالمصدر

- Should I have some free time, I will hang out with my friends.

لاحظ أننا في حالة نفي should لابد من استخدام الشكل الكامل للنفي Should you not go :

- Should you not go to bed right now, I will tell your father. ~~(NOT: Shouldn't you go)~~

8. للتفريق بين استخدام الحالة الصفرية والحالة الأولي في جملة اختياري ننظر لمعنى الجملة. إذا كان السياق بالجملة يتحدث عن فكرة عامة، نستخدم الحالة الصفرية. أما إذا كان معنى السياق يخصص موقف محدد، نستخدم الحالة الأولي:

- If you put water in the deep freezer, it turns into ice.

هنا الحديث عن حقيقة تنطبق بشكل عام على الماء في كل الأوقات وفي كل المواقف، لذلك استخدمنا الحالة الصفرية.

- If you put this bottle of water in the deep freezer for five minutes, it will freeze.

هنا الحديث يخصص زجاجة مياة محددة (this bottle)، لذلك استخدمنا الحالة الأولي.

Test Yourself

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If plants .... water, they die.
   a. get b. will get c. don't get d. unless get
2. .... it rains heavily, the streets get wet.
   a. Unless b. When c. Should d. If not
3. I .... if I see this scary film.
   a. haven't slept b. should sleep c. won't sleep d. doesn't sleep
4. Whenever I have enough money, I .... a book to add to my library.
   a. buy b. will buy c. bought d. would buy
5. .... she revise well for tomorrow's exam, she will get top marks.
   a. If b. Unless c. Should d. Shouldn't

2- Translate into English:

١-إذا تم تجميده، يزداد الماء في الحجم.

٢-لو لم تتوقف عن إصدار هذه الضوضاء بالمكتبة، سأبلغ أمين المكتبة.

3 The second conditional with "If" الحالة الثانية للشرط

If + فاعل → past simple ماضي بسيط → فاعل + would / could / might + inf.

Uses الاستخدامات

1. نستخدم للتعبير عن حدث غير محتمل في المضارع أو المستقبل:
   - If I had enough time, I would help you with your homework. (I don't have enough time)
   - If she went to bed early, she would be fine. (She doesn't go to bed early)
2. نستخدم لتقديم النصيحة:
   - If I were you, I'd stay home.
   - I wouldn't watch that trivial film if I were you.

ملاحظات

1. من الممكن أن تستخدم **unless** مكان (**if...not**):
   - Unless you gave me permission, I wouldn't go to the party.
   - I would stay up late unless I took those pills.
2. احذر تصريفات بعض الأفعال مثل **cut / put / cost / beat / shut / read** .....الخ،حيث لا تتغير عند تصريفها.
   - If she cuts her finger, she should bandage it. (حالة أولى)
   - If she cut her finger, it would bleed. (حالة ثانية)
3. يمكن استخدام الماضي المستمر في فعل الشرط في الحالة الثانية إذا دلت الجملة على الاستمرار:
   - If you were staying home now, you would see the film with us.
   - If she was lying on the beach now, she would get rid of stress.

4 The third conditional with "If" الحالة الثالثة للشرط

If + فاعل ⟹ past perfect ماضي تام ⟹ فاعل + would / could / might + have + ...

Uses الاستخدامات

ن افتراضات تخص احداث وقعت أو لم تقع بالماضي:

- If I hadn't been so tired last night, I would have watched the film. (I was so ...
- If she had won the competition, she wouldn't have been upset. (She didn't ...

ن اللوم أو الندم على حدث وقع أو لم يقع بالماضي:

- If you had invited me, I would have attended the party. (You didn't invite ...
- You could have avoided the delay if you had taken another road. (You didn't take another ro...

ملاحظات

من الممكن أن نستخدم **unless** مكان (**not .. if**):

- Unless you had invited me, I wouldn't have come to the party.
- My father wouldn't have agreed to my suggestion unless my mother had supported it.

يمكن استخدام الماضي التام المستمر في فعل الشرط في الحالة الثالثة إذا دلت الجملة على الاستمرار:

- If the driver had been driving carefully, he would have avoided the accident.
- If I hadn't been studying all day, I would have gone with you to the farm.

يمكن استخدام **Had + Subj. + p.p.** كبديل لـ **if** في الحالة الشرطية الثالثة:

- If you had revised well, you would have got good marks.

= Had you revised well, you would have got good marks.

يمكن استخدام **Had + Subj. + not + p.p** كبديل لـ **unless** أو **If ....not** في الحالة الشرطية الثالثة:

- Unless you had helped me, I wouldn't have got the job.

= If you hadn't helped me, I wouldn't have got the job.

= Had you not helped me, I wouldn't have got the job.

لاحظ أننا لابد من استخدام الشكل الكامل للنفي **Had + subj. + not + p.p**.

- Had she not invited me to her birthday, I wouldn't have gone there.

~~(Not: Hadn't she invited)~~

نستخدم **If it had not been for / (without / but for) + noun** كبديل لـ **unless** أو **If ...not** في الحالة الثالثة:

- Unless you had / If you hadn't helped her, she wouldn't have got promoted.

= If it hadn't been for / Without / But for your help, she wouldn't have got promoted.

حالة ثانية أم حالة ثالثة؟

1. إذا كان فعل الشرط الموجود بعد if (إسم + had) نفهم أن هذه الجملة في الحالة الثانية للشرط :
 • If I had enough experience, I'd apply for the job.
2. اذا كان فعل الشرط had to + inf. نفهم أن هذه الجملة في الحالة الثانية للشرط :
 • If I had to choose only one pen, I'd choose the blue one.
3. اذا كان جواب الشرط (إسم + would have) نفهم أن هذه الجملة في الحالة الثانية للشرط :
 • If you came with us to the beach, you would have a nice time.
4. اذا كان جواب الشرط (would have to + inf.) نفهم أن هذه الجملة في الحالة الثانية للشرط :
 • If you wanted to see the manager, you would have to wait until he is available.
5. إذا بدأت جملة الشرط بـ Only if، فيجب ان يتم عمل تبديل بين الفاعل والفعل المساعد في جملة جواب الشرط:
 • Only if you went to bed early, would you get enough sleep.

 أما إذا بدأت جملة الشرط بـ If only فلا يتم عمل هذا التبديل.
 • If only you went to bed early, you would get enough sleep.
6. يمكن استخدام تصريف ثالث كصفة بعد If / Unless مباشرة في جملة الشرط (دون فاعل وفعل):
 • If exhausted, I go to bed without having dinner.
 • Unless prepared well, I can't have a job interview.
7. يمكن التعبير عن نفس معنى الجملة الشرطية في الحالة الثالثة باستخدام wish + past perfect أو should have + p.p
 • If I had trained harder, I would have won the game.
 = I wish I had trained harder.
 = I should have trained harder.

Test Yourself

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If I had to stay for another day, I .... and inform you.
 a. can phone b. will phone
 c. would have phoned d. would phone
2. If he put the books on that table, Ali .... them.
 a. will take b. would take c. would have taken d. took
3. .... the weather wasn't so bad, we would go to the park.
 a. If b. Should c. Were d. But for
4. .... the manager of the factory, I would give you a promotion.
 a. If I b. Should I c. Were I d. Had I
5. .... where she lived, I would go and see her.
 a. Hadn't I known b. If I knew c. If I know d. Were I known

2- Translate into English:

١- لو لم أكن مجهدًا الآن لأتيت معك إلى مكتب البريد.
٢- كنتُ سأسعد جدا لو كنتَ قد اتصلت بي يوم عيد ميلادي الشهر الماضي.

Say, Don't say

1. **Don't say** : If you throw a stone into water, it will sink.
   Say : If you through a stone in water, it sinks.

- الظواهر الطبيعية التي تحدث باستمرار تستخدم في الحالة الصفرية وليس الحالة الأولى.

2. **Don't say** : If I had written work, I would have done it.
   Say : If I had written work, I would do it.

- الجملة في الحالة الشرطية الثانية وليس الثالثة فكلمة **written** هنا صفة وليست تصريف ثالث.

3. **Don't say** : Only if I had enough time, I would have a chess game with you.
   Say : Only if I had enough time, would I have a chess game with you.

- عندما تبدأ الجملة الشرطية بـ **Only if** نقوم بعملية تبديل للاماكن بين الفاعل والفعل المساعد في جملة جواب الشرط - ولا يحدث هذا اذا بدأت الجملة بـ **only If**.

4. **Don't say** : Weren't I busy right now, I'd go shopping with my mom.
   Say : Were I not busy right now, I'd go shopping with my mom.

- عند نفي **Were** او **Had** او **Should** كبدائل لـ **if** في بداية الجملة الشرطية، لا تستخدم النفي المختصر ولكن لابد من استخدام الشكل الكامل للنفي (**Should I not / Were I not / Had I not**)

Mini-Test on Conditional Sentences

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. -------- you apologize to the teacher, will she forgive you.
   a. If b. Should c. If only d. Only if
2. I -------- if you had invited me to your birthday party last Sunday.
   a. could come b. will come c. had come d. would have come
3. -------- more time, he could finish decorating the baby's room.
   a. If he has b. Had he c. If he had had d. If he were
4. -------- in your shoes now, I would choose to decline this offer.
   a. Was I b. Should I c. Were I d. Had I
5. If I had known about your illness, I -------- you in the hospital.
   a. should visit b. will visit c. had visited d. would have visited
6. You can borrow my dictionary ---------------- to bring it back tonight.
   a. had you promised b. were you to promise
   c. unless you promise d. if you promise
7. They will sue يقاضي you unless they get the money by tomorrow. This means: --------
   a. Were they to get the money, they would sue him.
   b. They sued him because they didn't get the money.
   c. They won't sue him if they get the money.
   d. Had they got the money, they wouldn't have sued him.

Say, Don't say

1. **Don't say** : If you throw a stone into water, it will sink.
   Say : If you through a stone in water, it sinks.

   ـ الظواهر الطبيعية التي تحدث باستمرار تستخدم فى الحالة الصفرية وليس الحالة الاولى.

2. **Don't say** : If I had written work, I would have done it.
   Say : If I had written work, I would do it.

   ـ الجملة في الحالة الشرطية الثانية وليس الثالثة فكلمة written هنا صفة وليست تصريف ثالث.

3. **Don't say** : Only if I had enough time, I would have a chess game with you.
   Say : Only if I had enough time, would I have a chess game with you.

   ـ عندما تبدأ الجملة الشرطية بـ Only if نقوم بعملية تبديل للاماكن بين الفاعل والفعل المساعد في جملة جواب الشرط – ولا يحدث هذا اذا بدأت الجملة بـ only If.

4. **Don't say** : Weren't I busy right now, I'd go shopping with my mom.
   Say : Were I not busy right now, I'd go shopping with my mom.

   ـ عند نفي Were او Had او Should كبدائل لـ if في بداية الجملة الشرطية، لا نستخدم النفي المختصر ولكن لابد من استخدام الشكل الكامل للنفي (Should I not / Were I not / Had I not)

Mini-Test on Conditional Sentences

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... you apologize to the teacher, will she forgive you.
   a. If b. Should c. If only d. Only if
2. I .... if you had invited me to your birthday party last Sunday.
   a. could come b. will come c. had come d. would have come
3. .... more time, he could finish decorating the baby's room.
   a. If he has b. Had he c. If he had had d. If he were
4. .... in your shoes now, I would choose to decline this offer.
   a. Was I b. Should I c. Were I d. Had I
5. If I had known about your illness, I .... you in the hospital.
   a. should visit b. will visit c. had visited d. would have visited
6. You can borrow my dictionary .... to bring it back tonight.
   a. had you promised b. were you to promise
   c. unless you promise d. if you promise
7. They will sue يقاضي you unless they get the money by tomorrow. This means: ....
   a. Were they to get the money, they would sue him.
   b. They sued him because they didn't get the money.
   c. They won't sue him if they get the money.
   d. Had they got the money, they wouldn't have sued him.

8. If Ali hadn't eaten so much, would have had sweet sleep. This means ....
   a. He ate so much, so he didn't have sweet sleep.
   b. He eats so much, so he doesn't have sweet sleep.
   c. Unless he ate so much, he could have sweet sleep.
   d. Hadn't he eaten so much, he would have had sweet sleep.

2- Translate into English:

١ – إذا شاهد ابني التليفزيون لفترة طويلة فإن عيونه تؤلمه. ماذا يجب ان نفعل؟

٢ – لو كنت قد راجعت المقال جيدا لما طالبني المعلم بإعادة كتابته مرة أخرى.

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My friends get angry if I .... to their messages and emails immediately.
   a. won't reply   b. hadn't replied   c. wouldn't reply   d. don't reply
2. You will have to study hard if you .... to get a top mark on the test.
   a. will want   b. want   c. had wanted   d. wanted
3. If we .... you were coming, we would have prepared a meal.
   a. know   b. would know   c. had known   d. have known
4. What would you have done if you .... late for the exam?
   a. had been   b. were   c. are   d. would be
5. If I studied harder, I .... better exam results.
   a. get   b. will get   c. had got   d. would get
6. If you .... me, we will finish the project sooner.
   a. helped   b. had helped   c. help   d. would help
7. .... you eat plenty of fresh fruit and vegetables can you be really healthy.
   a. Were   b. Had   c. If   d. Only if
8. It would have been fine if you hadn't said anything. This sentence expresses ....
   a. blame   b. regret   c. advice   d. obligation
9. If I were you, I .... a new car instead of suffering with this old one.
   a. will buy   b. was buying   c. had bought   d. would buy
10. What .... if you don't catch the school bus? – I take a taxi to school.
    a. will you do   b. do you do   c. would you do   d. had you done
11. She would be in the basketball team if she .... taller.
    a. is being   b. has been   c. were   d. had been
12. If I had gone to bed early last night, I wouldn't have been tired this morning. This sentence expresses ....
    a. advice   b. regret   c. obligation   d. gratitude
13. If we hadn't taken our map with us, we .... lost.
    a. would have got   b. will get   c. get   d. had got
14. Ahmed is ill and wishes he .... so many sweets.
    a. won't eat   b. didn't eat   c. hadn't eaten   d. hasn't eaten

15. If you had told me earlier, I .... the torch in my bag.
a. would have put b. will put c. had put d. would put

16. Tarek would have gone to the museum if Munir .... him.
a. will invite b. had invited c. invited d. has invited

17. If she .... sun cream to the beach, she wouldn't have got burnt.
a. will take b. took c. had taken d. has taken

18. If you don't supply these plants in the garden with fertilizer regularly, they ....
a. will die b. die c. would die d. died

19. If plants aren't watered regularly, they ....
a. had died b. will die c. would have died d. die

20. .... my grandfather alive today, he would be astonished at all the new buildings that have gone up here.
a. If b. Should c. Were d. Had

21. You would have heard what the teacher said if you .... carefully.
a. would listen b. listened c. will listen d. had listened

22. Unless .... by radar, ships and aircraft must move cautiously or stop in dense fog.
a. aided b. had aided c. are aided d. were aided

23. I'm sure my sister .... university life if she socialized with others, but she is so shy.
a. had enjoyed b. would enjoy c. enjoyed d. could have enjoyed

24. The ordinary people who live in the area .... a lot if a solution isn't found.
a. have suffered b. will suffer c. would suffer d. had suffered

25. .... you were on your own all weekend, I'd have invited you over to our house.
a. Had I known b. If I knew c. Were I to know d. Should I know

26. My friend needs help with a maths question, but I don't know the answer. If I .... the answer, I would help her.
a. know b. had known c. knew d. will know

27. Don't forget to take your phone. You won't be able to call me if you .... your phone with you.
a. don't have b. won't have c. hadn't had d. didn't have

28. My father stopped studying English and now he needs it for work. He wishes that he .... studying it.
a. hadn't stopped b. didn't stop c. doesn't stop d. weren't stopped

29. Jim is having difficulty doing his maths assignment, and he wishes he .... to the instructions of his teacher more carefully.
a. was listening b. should listen c. would listen d. had listened

30. .... you improve the quality of your products will we order any more merchandise from your factory.
a. Even if b. Only if c. Unless d. If

31. If her health doesn't improve overnight, Salma .... to school tomorrow.
a. won't go b. wouldn't have gone
c. doesn't go d. won't be able to go

32. I ate too much and now I feel ill. I ....
a. wish I hadn't eaten too much.
b. shouldn't have eaten too much.
c. regret eating too much.
d. a, b & c are correct.

33. If you get caught cheating in exams, you .... in big trouble.
a. would be
b. will be
c. would have been
d. should have been

34. I didn't know you were in my city yesterday. You .... me to tell me about that.
a. should have phoned
b. will have to phone
c. had phoned
d. phoned

35. .... English, I wouldn't have made international friends.
a. If I didn't learn
b. Unless I learn
c. If only I had learnt
d. Had I not learnt

36. At my school, if it rains, we .... PE indoors.
a. would have done
b. have to do
c. would do
d. had to do

37. .... to the museum last weekend if I had asked you?
a. Did you come
b. Would you have come
c. Will you come
d. Had you come

38. My brother didn't clean his room and now my parents are angry. He wishes he .... his room.
a. he should have cleaned
b. had cleaned
c. would clean
d. cleaned

39. .... cancelled, let me know immediately.
a. If the meeting was
b. Had the meeting been
c. Will the meeting be
d. Should the meeting be

40. If it had rained heavily, we would have got wet. This means ....
a. It rained heavily
b. It won't rain heavily
c. It can rain heavily
d. It didn't rain heavily

41. .... to me before, I would have believed you.
a. Hadn't you lied
b. Were you not lied
c. Should you not lie
d. Had you not lied

42. If the classroom .... with an overhead projector, it would make lessons more interesting.
a. had equipped
b. were equipped
c. had been equipped
d. would be equipped

43. If .... with a shower, our caravan more practical for longer holidays.
a. were equipped
b. had been equipped
c. equipped
d. would be equipped

44. I'm sorry that I sent our driver for you. I .... you at the airport myself, but I was at a business meeting then.
a. should meet
b. should have met
c. had met
d. would meet

45. If you had asked me for suggestions before you left, I .... you some nice restaurants around here.
a. can recommend
b. would recommend
c. had been recommended
d. would have recommended

46. Why are you buying so many books all the time? If you joined a library, you .... money by borrowing them.

a. had saved
b. would be able to save
c. could have saved
d. were able to save

47. If the internet didn't exist, ...

a. communication will be face to face
b. our world would be quite different
c. there wouldn't have been social media sites
d. airports and banks would have been in trouble

48. If Hanan had been at school yesterday, she would have met the new teacher. This means ....

a. Hanan went to school yesterday, but she didn't meet the new teacher.
b. Hanan didn't go to school yesterday, but she met the new teacher
c. Hanan didn't meet the new teacher because she didn't go to school yesterday.
d. Hanan went to school yesterday and met the new teacher.

49. If my brother hadn't walked so slowly, he wouldn't have missed the bus. This means ....

a. My brother missed the bus because he walked so slowly.
b. Unless my brother had walked so slowly, he would have caught the bus.
c. Had my brother not walked slowly, he wouldn't have missed the bus.
d. a, b & c are correct.

50. If they hadn't taken a taxi, they would have been late for the train. This means ....

a. They didn't take a taxi, so they were late for the train.
b. They took a taxi, so they weren't late for the train.
d. They were late for the train because they didn't take a taxi.
c. They would be late for the train because they didn't take a taxi.

51. If he doesn't get here soon, we'll have to leave without him. This means ....

a. Unless he gets here soon, we'll have to leave without him.
b. Should he not get here soon, we'll have to leave without him.
c. Had he not got here soon, we'll have to leave without him.
d. A & B are correct

Writing Practice

A Translate into Arabic:

1. Generous people give generously. A large proportion of what they earn is given away. They choose to live on less than what they make so that they can make a greater impact on other people's lives through their giving.

2. Although Singapore is a prosperous country, Singaporeans are not happy. This is probably because of the hectic life they have. Many people don't have time to interact with each other due to busy lives.
3. As Sudan has been hit by flash floods as a result of torrential rains, Egypt sent two military aircraft carrying foodstuffs, medical supplies and waterproof tents to Khartoum.
4. According to its latest reports, Egypt's Meteorological Authority expects unstable weather conditions across the country over the next three days until Tuesday, alongside an ongoing heat wave.
5. Since the coronavirus panic started, most governments have suspended all activities and services. Nevertheless, things are almost normal. Thanks to technology, work has not stopped as people can work from home.

B Translate into English:

١. تعتبر صفة البخل من الصفات الذميمة التي ويرفضها المجتمع، الذي لا يخلو من البخلاء. ولذلك فالبخل من أسوأ الصفات التي يمكن ان يتصف بها إنسان، فالإنسان الكريم محبوب من الله ومن الناس.

٢. يصيب الاكتئاب شريحة كبيرة من المجتمع نظراً للضغوط التي يتعرضون لها، مما يؤثر على صحة الفرد وسلوكه ويجعله عرضة للأمراض المتعددة، وهو ما جعل كثيرين يطلقون عليه "مرض العصر".

٣. أكد نائب وزير التربية والتعليم ، أن العام الدراسى سوف يتم دون تخفيض فى المناهج أو ساعات الدراسة، وإنما سوف يتم الدمج بين التعليم داخل الفصل والتعليم عن بعد.

٤. مع استئناف السياحة الثقافية فى القاهرة والأقصر وأسوان وفتح المواقع الأثرية والمتاحف، شهدت المقاصد السياحية المصرية وصول رحلات لبعض الأسواق السياحية الهامة من أنحاء مختلفة من العالم.

٥. كل منا يخطىء، خصوصًا عندما يقوم بشىء لأول مرة، ليس المهم أنك تخطأ ولكن المهم هو أن تتعلم من اخطاؤك حتى لا تكررها فى المستقبل.

كلمات مساعدة

proportion	نسبة	suspend	يعلق / يوقف مؤقتا
prosperous	ثري / مزدهر	miserliness	البُخل
hectic	متسارع/ مزدحم	segment	شريحة
flash floods	سيول مفاجئة	vulnerable to	عُرضة لـــ
torrential rains	أمطار غزيرة	deputy minister	نائب وزير
waterproof tents	خيام مضادة للماء	reduction	تخفيض
Meteorological Authority	هيئة الأرصاد الجوية	integration	دمج
unstable	غير مستقر	resumption	استئناف
ongoing heat wave	موجة حارة مستمرة	tourist destinations	المقاصد السياحية

Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

Something that you regret doing. Explain what happened and why you regret it. What would you have done differently?

King Lear

Act III – Scene II

Key Vocabulary

lightning (n)	البرق	rise (v.rose/risen / n)	ينهض / تشرق - نهوض / زيادة
forgive (v.forgave / forgiven)	يسامح / يعفو عن	torch (n)	مصباح
hut (n)	كوخ / منزل صغير	philosopher (n)	فيلسوف / حكيم
hard-hearted (adj)	قاسي القلب	fool (n / v. ed)	أحمق / يخدع
straw (n)	قش / تبن	mice (n)	فئران

[In another part of the field. The storm continues. King Lear enters with the Fool.]

KING LEAR : Blow winds, and let the rain fill our houses with water! Let lightning cut a tree in two, and burn my white hair!

FOOL : Oh, old man, go inside, and ask your daughters to forgive you!

KING LEAR : I'm a poor, weak old man. Why is the weather being cruel to(1) me, like my daughters?

[Kent enters.]

KING LEAR : Who's there?

FOOL : Ah, here's someone who is both a wise(2) man and a fool.

KENT : Oh no, why are you here? Even bears(3) want to stay in their caves on a night like this. There's so much wind and rain! The storm is terrible. Your majesty, there's a poor man's hut near here. It will shelter(4) you from the storm. Stay there and rest, while I go to the house of your hard-hearted daughters.

KING LEAR : When I asked for you, they did not let me in(5) their house, so I'll force(6) them to allow you in. But I think I'm going mad!

[To the Fool.] How are you, my boy? I'm cold. Where's the straw? It's strange how I now want to have horrible things such as a bed of straw to sleep on!

[King Lear exits with Kent.]

[At Gloucester's castle. Gloucester enters with Edmund.]

GLOUCESTER : Oh, Edmund, I don't like the way Goneril and Regan are behaving(7) with their father! When I asked them to help Lear, they told me not to talk about him or to look after him.

EDMUND : That's very cruel of them!

GLOUCESTER : Go to them; but do not say anything. There is some disagreement(8) between the two Dukes, and maybe something even worse than that. I got a letter tonight....

[To himself.] No, it's' too dangerous to talk about it to him.

[To Edmund.] I have locked the letter in my bedroom. Some of the French army have already arrived in England. We must help King Lear. I will go and look for him and help him. You go and talk to the Duke of Cornwall

Arabic meaning

1. قاسي على
2. حكيم
3. دببة
4. يأوي
5. يسمح لي بالدخول
6. يجبر
7. يتصرف
8. خلاف

and do not tell him where I am. If he asks for me, tell him I'm ill and have gone to bed. Strange things are happening, Edmund. Please be careful.

[He exits.]

EDMUND : *[To himself.]* I'll go and tell the Duke immediately about your worries for the King, father. I will tell him about that letter, too. Then I'll get rewarded(9) for this, and I'll win the trust(10) that my father loses. The younger rises as the old man falls!

[He exits.]

[In a field in front of a hut. King Lear enters with Kent and the Fool.]

KENT : Here is a hut where we can shelter, my lord. Please, go inside. This terrible storm makes it impossible for anyone to stay outside.

KING LEAR : Oh, my cruel children! You sent me out into a terrible storm like this. Oh Regan, Goneril! Your kind old father gave you everything! But I'll go mad if I think about this. I won't think about it anymore!

KENT : Please, go inside.

KING LEAR : *[To the Fool.]* You go in first, my boy.

[The Fool goes into the hut.]

Poor homeless(11) people, you are always outside when there's a cruel storm. How can your hungry stomachs(12) and old clothes help you when it rains? Why have I not thought about this before? Rich people should try walking in(13) a poor person's shoes, and then the world would be a better place for us all.

[The Fool enters. He has just come out of the hut and he's very frightened.]

FOOL : Don't go in there, sir. There's a mad man in that hut.

KENT : Who's in there?

FOOL : A mad man! He says his name is Poor Tom.

KENT : Who are you? Come out here.

[Edgar enters disguised (14) as a madman called Poor Tom]

EDGAR : Keep away from me!

KING LEAR : Are you mad like me? Have you given everything to your two daughters?

EDGAR : Nobody gives anything to Poor Tom.

KING LEAR : Have his daughters done this to him?
[To Edgar.] Don't you have anything?

FOOL : No, he only has a blanket(15).

KING LEAR : Only cruel daughters could have made a man so poor. Who were you?

EDGAR : I was a servant(16), who was very proud(17).

KING LEAR : It would be better if you were dead(18) than go around with nothing but a blanket on a night like this!

FOOL : Look, here comes a walking fire.

[Gloucester enters carrying a torch.]

KING LEAR : Who's this?

GLOUCESTER : What's your name?

EDGAR : My name is Poor Tom, and I once had six shirts to wear and a horse to ride, but now all I have is mice to eat.

9. سأحصل على مكافأتي
10. يفوز بالثقة
11. مشرد / بلا مأوى
12. معدة خاوية
13. حاول أن تشعر شعور...
14. متنكر
15. بطانية
16. خادمة
17. فخور
18. ميت

Key Vocabulary

lightning (n)	البرق	rise (v.rose/risen / n)	ينهض / تشرق - نهوض / زيادة
forgive (v.forgave / forgiven)	يسامح / يعفو عن	torch (n)	مصباح
hut (n)	كوخ / منزل صغير	philosopher (n)	فيلسوف / حكيم
hard-hearted (adj)	قاسي القلب	fool (n / v. ed)	أحمق / يخدع
straw (n)	قش / تبن	mice (n)	فئران

[In another part of the field. The storm continues. King Lear enters with the Fool.]

KING LEAR : Blow winds, and let the rain fill our houses with water! Let lightning cut a tree in two, and burn my white hair!

FOOL : Oh, old man, go inside, and ask your daughters to forgive you!

KING LEAR : I'm a poor, weak old man. Why is the weather being cruel to(1) me, like my daughters?

[Kent enters.]

KING LEAR : Who's there?

FOOL : Ah, here's someone who is both a wise(2) man and a fool.

KENT : Oh no, why are you here? Even bears(3) want to stay in their caves on a night like this. There's so much wind and rain! The storm is terrible. Your majesty, there's a poor man's hut near here. It will shelter(4) you from the storm. Stay there and rest, while I go to the house of your hard-hearted daughters.

KING LEAR : When I asked for you, they did not let me in(5) their house, so I'll force(6) them to allow you in. But I think I'm going mad!

[To the Fool.] How are you, my boy? I'm cold. Where's the straw? It's strange how I now want to have horrible things such as a bed of straw to sleep on!

[King Lear exits with Kent.]

[At Gloucester's castle. Gloucester enters with Edmund.]

GLOUCESTER : Oh, Edmund, I don't like the way Goneril and Regan are behaving(7) with their father! When I asked them to help Lear, they told me not to talk about him or to look after him.

EDMUND : That's very cruel of them!

GLOUCESTER : Go to them; but do not say anything. There is some disagreement(8) between the two Dukes, and maybe something even worse than that. I got a letter tonight...
[To himself.] No, it's' too dangerous to talk about it to him.
[To Edmund.] I have locked the letter in my bedroom. Some of the French army have already arrived in England. We must help King Lear. I will go and look for him and help him. You go and talk to the Duke of Cornwall

Arabic meaning

1. قاسي على
2. حكيم
3. دببة
4. يأوي
5. يسمح لي بالدخول
6. يجبر
7. يتصرف
8. خلاف

and do not tell him where I am. If he asks for me, tell him I'm ill and have gone to bed. Strange things are happening, Edmund. Please be careful.

[He exits.]

EDMUND : [To himself.] I'll go and tell the Duke immediately about your worries for the King, father. I will tell him about that letter, too. Then I'll get rewarded[9] for this, and I'll win the trust[10] that my father loses. The younger rises as the old man falls!

9. سأحصل على مكافأتي
10. يفوز بالثقة
11. مشرد / بلا مأوى
12. معدة خاوية
13. حاول ان تشعر شعور...
14. متنكر
15. بطانية
16. خادمة
17. فخور
18. ميت

[He exits]

[In a field in front of a hut. King Lear enters with Kent and the Fool.)

KENT : Here is a hut where we can shelter, my lord. Please, go inside. This terrible storm makes it impossible for anyone to stay outside.

KING LEAR : Oh, my cruel children! You sent me out into a terrible storm like this. Oh Regan, Goneril! Your kind old father gave you everything! But I'll go mad if I think about this. I won't think about it anymore!

KENT : Please, go inside.

KING LEAR : [To the Fool.] You go in first, my boy.

[The Fool goes into the hut.]

Poor homeless[11] people, you are always outside when there's a cruel storm. How can your hungry stomachs[12] and old clothes help you when it rains? Why have I not thought about this before? Rich people should try walking in[13] a poor person's shoes, and then the world would be a better place for us all.

[The Fool enters. He has just come out of the hut and he's very frightened.]

FOOL : Don't go in there, sir. There's a mad man in that hut.

KENT : Who's in there?

FOOL : A mad man! He says his name is Poor Tom.

KENT : Who are you? Come out here.

[Edgar enters disguised [14] as a madman called Poor Tom]

EDGAR : Keep away from me!

KING LEAR : Are you mad like me? Have you given everything to your two daughters?

EDGAR : Nobody gives anything to Poor Tom.

KING LEAR : Have his daughters done this to him?
[To Edgar.] Don't you have anything?

FOOL : No, he only has a blanket[15].

KING LEAR : Only cruel daughters could have made a man so poor. Who were you?

EDGAR : I was a servant[16], who was very proud[17].

KING LEAR : It would be better if you were dead[18] than go around with nothing but a blanket on a night like this!

FOOL : Look, here comes a walking fire.

[Gloucester enters carrying a torch.]

KING LEAR : Who's this?

GLOUCESTER : What's your name?

EDGAR : My name is Poor Tom, and I once had six shirts to wear and a horse to ride, but now all I have is mice to eat.

GLOUCESTER : Has your majesty nobody to help you apart from[19] this mad man? Why have our children grown up to be so terrible, my lord? Why do they h... their fathers?

19. باستثناء

EDGAR : Poor Tom's cold.

GLOUCESTER : Come inside with me, your majesty. I didn't want to do what your cru... daughters asked me to do. They asked me to lock the doors and leav... you outside on this terrible night. I've come to find you and take yo... home, where there's a fire and food ready for you.

KENT : My lord, please accept this man's offer and go to the house.

KING LEAR : First, let me talk to this philosopher. What are you researching?

EDGAR : I am researching how to keep warm and to kill mice.

KENT : *[To Gloucester.]* Ask him again, my lord. He's beginning to go mad. He thinks the poor man is a philosopher.

[Gloucester holding his torch in front of him and looking at Edgar and Kent, but they are both disguised.]

GLOUCESTER : I'm not surprised Lear is mad. His daughters want him to die. Ah, that good man, Kent! He knew what would happen - the poor man! I'm almost mad myself. I have a son who tried to kill me. No father loved his son more than I loved him. What a night this is! Please, your majesty, come with me.

EDGAR : Tom's cold.

GLOUCESTER : Go into your hut, Tom; keep yourself warm.

KENT : This way, your majesty.

KING LEAR : *[Pointing to Edgar.]* I am going with him!

KENT : My lord, let him bring the poor man with us.

GLOUCESTER : OK. Sir, come on; come with us.

KING LEAR : Let's go then, my good philosopher.

[They exit.]

Exercises on King Lear

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. No doubt that population growth has given .... to serious social problems.
   a. climb b. rise c. slope d. height
2. My horse loves to sleep on a bed of fresh ....
   a. straw b. snow c. lightning d. thunder
3. A .... is a light you can carry to help you see when it's dark.
   a. torch b. pile c. website d. hut
4. We got lost in the mountains and spent the night in a wooden ....
   a. tone b. hut c. palace d. website
5. The old tree behind our house burnt down when it was struck by .... during last night's storm.
   a. lightning b. thunder c. downpour d. torch

6. When you stop being angry with someone and stop blaming them, although they have done something wrong, you actually .... them.
 a. upload b. regret c. forgive d. treat
7. The old woman locked the poor child for two days without food. What a/an .... woman she is!
 a. stone-faced b. hard-hearted c. soft-hearted d. kind-hearted
8. Hatem should be a .... when he grows up because he likes to think about important questions.
 a. farmer b. barber c. philosopher d. driver
9. Adam is a .... if he thinks Sara still loves him.
 a. feeling b. fool c. fuel d. fall
10. To be disloyal to someone who trusts you, so that they are harmed or upset is to .... them.
 a. betray b. share c. treat d. pile
11. If you walked in your teacher's ...., you would realise why he is often so serious and strict. "Walk in your teacher's shoes" has a similar meaning to ....
 a. Borrow his/her pair of shoes b. Try to get on with him/her.
 c. Put yourself in his/her position d. lose touch with him/her
12. The time I spent in hospital really made me see things from a different perspective. "See things from a different perspective" has a similar meaning to ....
 a. lose touch with everything. b. Hang out much more often.
 c. Get on with others. d. Think in a different way.
13. .... people need to be provided with somewhere to stay when the weather is cold.
 a. Homeless b. Careless c. Faithless d. Harmless
14. The children were very .... to the little boy, hitting him, and calling him names until he started to cry.
 a. kind-hearted b. loyal c. cruel d. soft-hearted
15. The young man .... himself using a wig, false beard and dark sunglasses.
 a. realized b. advised c. organized d. disguised
16. We need to put these plants next to the wall to .... them from the wind and direct sunlight.
 a. colour b. shelter c. kidnap d. provide
17. A .... stomach, an empty pocket and a broken heart can teach the best lessons of life.
 a. promising b. sheltered c. hungry d. full
18. Keep .... that dog. It's likely to be fierce and it can attack you.
 a. up with b. on with c. away from d. up to
19. To help their families and pay for their education, some of the poor university students work as domestic ....
 a. masters b. servants c. princesses d. landlords
20. Supplies of food, medicine and .... were sent to help survivors of the flood.
 a. agreements b. caves c. straws d. blankets
21. The robbers .... the poor shop assistant to hand over the money.
 a. forced b. had c. behaved d. let

22. Dr. Heba is part of a team which is .... how Covid-19 was first introduced into Eg...
a. disguising b. surviving c. researching d. escaping

23. Bright light that comes from the sky in a storm is called ....
a. torch b. lightning c. thunder d. star

24. Finishing his coffee, the old man picked up his handbag and .... to leave the cafe...
a. rose b. increased c. raised d. woke

25. The crowd .... mad when their team won the championship.
a. went b. kept c. shared d. had

26. The news travelled across the country like lightning. This means that ....
a. The news travelled across the country by plane.
b. No one of the people knew about the news.
c. The people didn't know about the news because of lightning.
d. The news spread all over the country very quickly.

27. Most of government employees are looking forward to an urgent .... in their salarie...
a. rise b. decline c. decrease d. flood

28. Don't let yourself be .... by appearance. Not all that glitters is gold.
a. cooled b. toned c. fooled d. brought

29. Our desserts, apart from their delicious taste, have 30% less fat than regular desserts. The phrase "apart from" means ....
a. except for b. even with c. in spite of d. in addition to

30. During the earthquake that took place in 1992, many of the homeless people were living in .... on the outskirts of Cairo.
a. castles b. palaces c. mansions d. shelters

31. They don't usually let kids in, but this was something of a special occasion. The expression "let kids in" has a similar meaning to ....
a. prevent kids entering a place
b. ask kids to enter a place
c. allow kids to enter a place
d. disappoint the kids entering a place

TEST 7 Unit 6

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A person who studies and thinks about the meaning of life is a/an ....
a. assistant b. philosopher c. betrayer d. selfie

2. In the past, people used to light a .... with fire. Today, we use batteries.
a. paper b. thunder c. wood d. torch

3. .... is dry yellow grass or stems of wheat used to feed or bed animals down.
a. Fire b. Torch c. Fog d. Straw

4. .... is an adjective to describe someone who is unkind.
a. Soft-hearted b. Mean c. Hard-hearted d. Gifted

5. A .... is a small building, usually with just one room.
   a. hut b. pile c. sigh d. tone
6. Hania's finding it hard to .... Hazem for what he said in that online post. She doesn't want to talk to him anymore.
   a. ignore b. forgive c. regret d. argue
7. .... they offer me a high salary, will I accept the job in this company.
   a. If b. Even if c. Unless d. Only if
8. If I finish all this work tonight, ... me come to work a bit later tomorrow morning?
   a. will you let b. had you let c. have you let d. do you let
9. If she .... so well, she wouldn't have become famous.
   a. doesn't sing b. didn't sing c. hasn't sung d. hadn't sung
10. I went out in the rain yesterday and now I have a cold. I shouldn't .... out in the rain.
    a. went b. had gone c. have gone d. would go
11. If you post that picture of Amir, he .... angry for sure.
    a. would have got b. would get c. gets d. will get
12. If Hossam read that essay, he .... nothing.
    a. will understand
    b. would understand
    c. can understand
    d. would have understood
13. The world would be a better place if we .... more tolerant and understanding.
    a. were b. are c. will be d. have been
14. You .... play the piano so well if you didn't practise.
    a. won't be able to
    b. hadn't been able to
    c. aren't able to
    d. wouldn't be able to
15. Amira doesn't feel healthy because she doesn't do any exercise. This means ....
    a. Amira would feel healthier if she did some exercise.
    b. Amira won't feel healthier unless she did some exercise.
    c. Amira would have felt healthier if she had done some exercise.
    d. Amira would feel healthier unless she did some exercise.
16. ...., our national team will never reach the World Cup finals.
    a. Since it was first founded
    b. Unless they find a professional coach
    c. Even if they had taken part in many matches
    d. When the best players of the team left

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

A young actress is about to go onto the stage. As she waits by the side of the stage, she looks nervous. You might hear her whisper to her friend, "I've got butterflies in my stomach." Butterflies in her stomach? How did those get in there? The feeling of butterflies comes from chemicals produced by the body in stressful situations.

One chemical that the body makes under stress is cortisol. This chemical benefits the body in normal situations. In fact, it helps the body start normal activities in the morning after

waking up. It also plays a role in helping the body and mind respond well to healthy exercise. However, when the body is under stress, extra cortisol begins to affect the stomach. For some people, cortisol shuts down the stomach, producing the funny feeling of butterflies. For others, cortisol speeds up the way the stomach works, which makes these people feel sick.

All you need to do to get rid of a few butterflies in the stomach is just relax. Laughing with, or talking to, others about your stress can help reduce it. Stepping out onto the stage will also help those butterflies fly away.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the main idea of this reading?
   a. A new kind of medicine called cortisol
   b. An illness that nervous people get
   c. The cause of butterflies in the stomach
   d. The stress that actors have
2. According to the reading, what is NOT true about cortisol?
   a. In small amounts, it benefits the body.
   b. It can shut down the stomach.
   c. It is found in many kinds of food.
   d. It is produced by the body.
3. What helps a body respond well to exercise?
   a. Butterflies
   b. Cortisol
   c. Stomach acid
   d. Stress
4. According to the passage, what makes some people feel sick?
   a. When situations return to normal
   b. When the stomach shuts down
   c. When the stomach works too fast
   d. When there is too little cortisol

B: Answer the following questions:

5. According to the passage, what's meant by the underlined expression "I've got butterflies in my stomach"?
6. What can a person do to get over butterflies in the stomach?
7. How does stress affect the normal functions of the human body?
8. Find words in the passage that are antonyms for:
   a. relaxing
   b. ignore

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- Egyptian soccer authorities are investigating the disappearance of several trophies, including the Africa Cup of Nations trophy the Pharaohs were awarded in 2010 after winning the tournament three times in a row.

B: Translate into English:

- عُرف العرب منذ القدم بالأخلاق الحميدة ، ولعلّ من أهم هذه الصفات صفة الجود ونبذ البُخل. وقد اعتبر العرب الشخص البخيل شخصًا شاذًا عن الفطرة.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

- Pros and cons of social networking sites

Key Vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
innovator (n)	مبتكر	speed up	يسرع
jokes (n)	نكات	e-books (n)	كتب الكترونية
messaging (n)	إرسال الرسائل / المراسلة	tap (v.ped) (n)	ينقر/ يطرق برفق / صنبور
misunderstand (v.misunderstood)	يسيء فهم	audio (adj)	مسموع/ سماعي/ صوتي
response (n)	استجابة	digital (adj)	رقمي
respond (v.ed)	يستجيب	footprints (n)	آثار أقدام
ruin (v.ed) (n)	خراب / دمار يتلف/ يخرب / يدمر	digital footprints	البصمات الرقمية
tone (n)	نبرة الصوت / نغمة		

Reading

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
chat stories	قصص الدردشة	discover (v.ed)	يكتشف
character (n)	شخصية «في كتاب / فيلم»	Olympic athletes	الرياضيون الأولمبيون
screen (n)	شاشة	upload (v.ed)	يرفع على الانترنت
choice (n)	اختيار	share (v.d)	يشارك
videos (n)	فيديوهات	search history	تاريخ البحث
expressions (n)	تعبيرات	remain (v.ed)	يظل/ يبقى
storytellers	رواة القصص	internet security	أمن الإنترنت (الحماية على الانترنت)
imagine (v.d)	يتخيل	accounts (n)	حسابات
boring (adj)	ممل	private (adj)	خاص/ سرى/ شخصي
include (v.d)	يشتمل على	join (v.ed)	يلتحق بـ/ ينضم إلى
human (adj)	بشرى		

Language Focus & Workbook

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
celebrity (n)	شخص مشهور	psychologists (n)	علماء النفس
role model (n)	شخص قدوة	patient (adj)	صبور
avoid (v.ed)	يتجنب	friendships (n)	الصداقات
interrupt (v.ed)	يقاطع	cable (n)	كابل/ سلك
unreliable (adj)	غير جدير بالثقة	useless (adj)	عديم الجدوى

Expressions & Prepositions

hang out with friends	يخرج لتمضيه الوقت مع الأصدقاء	in my opinion	في رأيي
make sure	يتأكد	make choices	يختار
feel like	يشعر كما لو أن/ يشعر بالرغبة في	leave behind	يترك خلفه
turning their backs on you	يديرون ظهورهم لك (يتجاهلونك)	judge the opinions of others	يحكم على آراء الآخرين
make an effort to	يبذلون جهدا لكي	help you with your homework	يساعدك في واجبك المنزلي
from their point of view	من وجهه نظرهم	to recharge my phone	لإعادة شحن هاتفي
each other	بعضهم البعض	look like	يشبه
write down	يكتب/ يدون		

Reading

New ways to enjoy stories

New technology often changes the way we do things. In the past, people could only tell stories by talking to each other(1), but this changed when stories could be written down(2) and read. Modern technology means we can read e-books(3) and listen to audio books(4), but there are always new ways to enjoy great stories.

Chat stories are short stories that you can read on your smartphone(5). They look like (6) messages between the characters in the story. And when you finish reading one part of the conversation(7), you tap(8) the bottom of your screen to show the next message.

Reading a chat story feels like(9) you're reading someone's messages. Some chat stories also include photos, audio and videos(10), so you can see what a character looks like and the expressions(12) on their face. And some chat stories let you make choices(12) about what happens next.

But some storytellers (13) want us to go further(14). They invite us to imagine(15) how our phones could show the world around us like we were in a film or a video game. Through our phones, we could also meet the characters from our stories. They think that we will learn to enjoy stories in a new way because we will be at the centre of the action. However, we must remember to make the stories fun and interesting because technology can become boring(16) when we forget to include(17) human(18) feelings.

Arabic meaning

1. بعضهم البعض
2. يكتب/ يدون
3. كتب إلكترونية
4. كتب مسموعة
5. الهاتف الذكي
6. يشبه
7. محادثة
8. ينقر/ يطرق برفق
9. يشعر كأنه
10. فيديوهات
11. تعبيرات
12. اختيارات
13. رواه القصص
14. يذهب إلى ابعد من ذلك / نواصل/ نمضى قدما
15. يتخيل
16. ممل
17. يشتمل على
18. بشرى

Reading

Digital footprints[1]

Scientists have discovered[2] human footprints in Australia that are 20,000 years old. There are footprints of a family with a small child, and five men who ran as fast as Olympic athletes[3]. Footprints can tell us a lot about what people did, and they can last for a long time.

The phrase 'digital footprint' describes all the information that we leave behind[4] when we use the internet. It includes things like our social media profiles, posts and the photos we upload[5], as well as the groups that we've joined and posts from other people that we've shared[6].

Our search history[7] is also part of our digital footprint. Emails can remain[8] online for years, and the comments that we make on videos can be seen by anyone.

Taha El-Sayed is an expert in internet security[9]. He advises people to do an internet search for their own names to see what other people can find. Then we're supposed to remove anything that we don't like, and were encouraged to close any social media accounts[10] that we don't use anymore.

He says that we have to be careful with our behaviour and try to be positive online. When asked about advice for young people, he said, 'Think about how other people could react to your photos, videos or comments. Control who can see your posts and keep photos and information private[11] in social media."

He also warned young people not to share addresses, phone numbers or the name of their school with anyone online. He said. "Most young people don't mean to give away too much information, but they often forget about security when they meet new friends or join[12] a group online."

Arabic meaning

1. البصمات الرقمية "جميع المعلومات التي نتركها وراءنا عندما نستخدم الإنترنت"
2. اكتشفوا
3. الرياضيون الأولمبيون
4. نتركها خلفنا
5. يرفع على الانترنت
6. قمنا بمشاركتها
7. تاريخ البحث
8. تبقى / تظل
9. أمن الإنترنت (الحماية على الانترنت)
10. حسابات
11. خاص / شخصي / سرى
12. ينضم الى / يلتحق بـ

Listening

Losing a friend

Yasser : So, Hany posted a funny picture that he had taken last summer and we were all laughing at it. Gamal was in it. He had fallen into a swimming pool with his clothes on. He looked very surprised, so I was making a few jokes about it with Fady. But when Gamal saw the jokes, he was angry. He said he'd only fallen into the pool to stop Hany's little cousin, Amir, falling in. He had asked Hany to take a picture but it was wet and he fell over. Gamal stopped him falling in, but then he fell instead. Gamal wasn't hurt but he wasn't happy, so he asked Hany not to show anyone the picture. Hany had agreed, but then he posted a lot of pictures from last summer and I guess he'd forgotten about that one. So, now I think Gamal isn't my friend anymore.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar spends hours .... his friends on his phone and reading their replies.
   a. massaging b. messaging c. painting d. responding
2. If you walk home in the rain, it will .... your new shoes.
   a. ruin b. innovate c. respond d. interrupts
3. I don't think my message was clear. I hope Manar doesn't .... it.
   a. respond b. understand c. misunderstand d. innovate
4. We really thought you would laugh. This wasn't the .... we were expecting.
   a. destruction b. ruin c. respond d. response
5. We need a/an .... who can change things with new ideas.
   a. discoverer b. innovator c. idiot d. interval
6. He sounded angry and the .... of his voice was not friendly.
   a. note b. tune c. ton d. tone
7. We need to .... and finish this job quickly.
   a. speed up b. misunderstand c. ruin d. damage
8. This comedian makes me laugh a lot. His .... are very funny.
   a. news b. information c. jokes d. yolks
9. After he became an MP, he turned his .... on me.
   a. head b. side c. front d. back
10. My brother likes hanging .... with his fiancée every day.
    a. in b. on c. out d. of
11. The phrase 'digital ....' describes all the information that we leave behind when we use the internet.
    a. fingerprint b. misprint c. serpent d. footprint
12. Teachers who work at primary schools should have a lot of .... so they can be kind to pupils.
    a. anger b. beauty c. patience d. impatience
13. You can read a/ an .... on the screen and turn the pages by pressing buttons.
    a. ebook b. paperback c. hardback d. ordinary book
14. My son had a rough night and I want to .... sure he is OK.
    a. do b. make c. being d. take
15. Just last week, ... and video components were added to our internet site.
    a. ado b. edible c. eatable d. audio
16. .... my opinion, I think you should buy this suit. It is good value for money.
    a. On b. In c. From d. At
17. All the ships had to remain in their .... due to the bad weather.
    a. airports b. airfield c. ports d. shuttles

18. If you get a benefit from something, you .... from it.
a. prophet b. profit c. lose d. miss

19. Can you give me that cable to .... my phone, please?
a. recharge b. change c. fill d. check

20. I think I will .... mad if I need to do this again.
a. talk b. send c. come d. go

21. A .... is a small building with only one room.
a. castle b. palace c. hut d. boat

22. I .... to Eman because 1 was late meeting her at the café.
a. told b. apologised c. persuaded d. said

23. My father wanted to stay at home, but then he .... his mind and came with us.
a. made b. put c. got d. changed

24. I lost my key, so I was locked .... of our house until my mum came home.
a. out b. under c. into d. off

25. I had to walk because there was no .... for me in the car.
a. time b. chair c. room d. move

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My teacher .... me not to frown when I am in a job interview.
a. inquired b. advised c. said d. wondered

2. Ali's father encouraged him .... on revising.
a. to keep b. keep c. keeping d. to keeping

3. I .... that program if I were you.
a. won't download b. wouldn't download
c. wouldn't have downloaded d. don't download

4. If you had told me earlier I .... the torch in my bag.
a. will put b. would put c. would have put d. put

5. At my school, if it ...., we have to do PE indoors.
a. rains b. rained c. had rained d. was raining

6. If you get caught cheating you .... in big trouble.
a. would have been b. would be c. will be d. would have to be

7. Atef seems .... the first pupil to arrive at school today.
a. being b. to be c. be d. been

8. It .... rain last month.
a. didn't suppose b. wasn't supposed to
c. suppose d. isn't supposed

9. Mayar meant .... your feelings.
a. to hurt b. hurting c. hurt d. hurts

10. Nour seems .... a good day.
a. have
b. to be having
c. having
d. has

11. The train is meant .... at 7 o'clock.
a. leave
b. leaving
c. leaves
d. to leave

12. My teacher .... to be happy with my work.
a. seemed
b. meant
c. should
d. let

13. If I were you, I .... a lawyer for advice.
a. will ask
b. would ask
c. ask
d. will have asked

14. If we .... the car, we would have to pay for parking.
a. will take
b. take
c. had taken
d. took

15. .... he understand the lesson if he read the summary?
a. Will
b. Did
c. Can
d. Would

16. If I .... in your shoes, I'd go on a diet.
a. had been
b. am
c. were
d. have been

17. .... to give you a lift if I had my car here.
a. I'd offer
b. I'll offer
c. I would have offered
d. I shall offer

18. If I had written work, I .... it at once.
a. would do
b. did
c. am doing
d. would have done

19. I wouldn't have reached this stage if she .... me.
a. didn't help
b. had not helped
c. don't help
d. had helped

20. If he had remembered to set the alarm clock, Hany .... woken up late.
a. would have
b. wouldn't have
c. have been
d. would be

TEST 8 Revision 2

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... he studied hard, he would have succeeded.
a. If
b. Should
c. Were
d. Had

2. If she hadn't learned how to type, she .... so many books.
a. would have written
b. wouldn't have written
c. wouldn't write
d. would write

3. If he shut the door well, no one .... enter his house.
a. will
b. can
c. could
d. won't

4. If you .... those apples now, they won't taste very sweet.
a. had picked
b. pick
c. picked
d. picks

5. He .... killed her, but he didn't commit that crime.
a. could have
b. could
c. shouldn't have
d. was able to

6. The proctor .... us not to talk to each other during the exam.
   a. promised b. suggested c. warned d. recommended
7. We .... respect elderly people.
   a. are supposed b. are supposed to c. are meant d. is supposed to
8. My mother asked me .... to the shop.
   a. go b. going c. to go d. gone
9. He didn't study hard for the exam, so he failed. He .... studied hard.
   a. should have b. shouldn't have c. ought to d. had to
10. Ahmed .... a lot happier in his new school.
   a. seem to be b. seems to be c. seems to d. is meant to
11. This tablet is .... because the battery is very old. Throw it in the dustbin.
   a. great b. wonderful c. valuable d. useless
12. It's normal for people to ignore each .... in an elevator.
   a. other b. another c. else d. also
13. If you describe a person, machine, or method as .... you mean that you cannot trust them.
   a. reliable b. unreliable c. excellent d. clever
14. A / An .... is a person who studies the human mind and tries to explain why people behave in the way they do.
   a. archaeologist b. architect c. dentist d. psychologist
15. There was a/ an .... at every door in the castle to help protect the King.
   a. guard b. porter c. machine d. doctor
16. Everyone looked at him in .... when my brother said he wanted to climb Everest.
   a. believe b. believer c. disbelief d. disbeliever

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The story of tea began over 5000 years ago in ancient China. According to legend, an early emperor, Shen Nug Required all drinking water to be boiled as a hygienic precaution. One day, when he had stopped to rest during a long journey, his servants were boiling the water as usual when dried leaves from a nearby bush fell into and turned the water brown. Because the emperor was curious by nature, he drank some of this new liquid and found it very refreshing.

The drinking of tea soon spread throughout Chinese, and later Japanese, society. In Japan, it became a complicated art form called "The Ceremony". The most important aspect of this was that the tea should be served in the most polite, graceful and charming manner possible. This required years of training and practice

Tea first arrived in Europe around the sixteenth century. At first, it was very expensive, so only the very wealthy could afford it, but as larger amounts were imported, it slowly got cheaper and became part of the European way of life. Drinking tea became popular in Britain during the 17th century. The British introduced tea production, as well as tea consumption, to India, in order to compete with the Chinese monopoly on tea.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. According to legend, tea was probably discovered in ....
   a. 5000 BC b. 175 AD c. 2750 BC d. 175 BC
2. Tea was discovered ....
   a. accidentally b. intentionally c. deliberately d. on purpose
3. This passage can be part of a/an ....
   a. poem b. interview c. song d. article
4. Now, tea is .... it was in the past
   a. as expensive as b. cheaper than
   c. more expensive than d. the most expensive

B: Answer the following questions:

5. Suggest a suitable to the passage.
6. Find words in the passage that give the same meaning as:
   a. healthy b. rich
7. How was the tea served at "Tea Ceremony"?
8. Give an example from the passage that shows that the emperor was curious.

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- Do you think that modified food is unnatural? A lot of people fear that genetic engineering will cause serious diseases in the future. They believe that the harm done in this case may be too great to overcome.

B: Translate into English:

-لدي اعتقاد راسخ أن تعمير سيناء هو صمام الأمان لمصر وأن بناء مدن جديدة في الصحراء هو الحل الأمثل لحل مشكلة الإسكان.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

A summary of a book that you have enjoyed



Bit by Bit

كتب فى اللغة الإنجليزية

Islamic SELECTIONS

For Al-Azhar Institutes

جزء خاص

لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

Unit 4

Fasting الصيام

Part A

abstention	امتناع	compulsory	إجباري
abstain	يمتنع	observe	يلتزم بـ / يحافظ على
the faithful	المؤمنون	spiritually	روحانيا
vitalize	ينعش / يجدد الحيوية	deeds	أعمال
gate	باب / بوابة	resurrection	البعث
displease	يُغضب	intentions	نوايا
pious	تقيّ	Paradise	الجنة
well-satiated	ممتلئ (شبعان جدا)	dawn	الفجر

Main Text

Fasting is the fourth pillar of Islam. Not only is it the abstention from eating and drinking from dawn to sunset but it is also the abstention from doing all that displeases Allah. Fasting has been made compulsory for the faithful so that they may be pious. The better they observe Fasting, the purer their hearts get. Although they abstain from eating and drinking from dawn to sunset, they get well-satiated spiritually. It is high time for the faithful in Ramadan to have their hearts fed and their souls vitalized to get closer to Paradise with good intentions, words and deeds.

Moreover, there is a Gate in Paradise called «Arrayyan» and those who observe Fasting will enter through it on the Day of Resurrection and none except them will enter through it.

- الصيام هو الركن الرابع من أركان الإسلام ولا يعني الصيام الامتناع عن الطعام والشراب من الفجر وحتى غروب الشمس فحسب بل يعني أيضا الامتناع عن كل ما يغضب الله سبحانه وتعالي. ولقد فرض الصيام على المؤمنين كي يكونوا أتقياء، وكلما أدوا الصيام بطريقة أفضل كلما زادت قلوبهم نقاء. وعلى الرغم من أنهم يمتنعون عن الأكل والشرب من الفجر حتى غروب الشمس إلا أنهم يشعرون بالشبع الروحي الكامل. ورمضان هو الوقت المناسب للمؤمنين لكي ينعشوا أرواحهم لكى تكون أقرب إلى الجنة بالنوايا والأقوال والأفعال الحسنة. والأكثر من ذلك يوجد بالجنة باب يُسمي الريان يدخل منه الصائمون فقط ولا يدخل منه أحد سواهم في يوم البعث.

Questions and Answers

1- What is the fourth Pillar of Islam? • ما هو الركن الرابع للإسلام؟

- Fasting. - الصيام.

2- Is Fasting mere abstention from eating and drinking etc. from dawn to sunset? هل الصوم هو فقط الامتناع عن الأكل والشرب من الفجر حتي المغرب؟

- No. It is also the abstention from doing all that displeases Allah. - لا، فهو أيضا الامتناع عن فعل كل ما يغضب الله.

3- Why was Fasting made compulsory for all the Faithful? • لماذا فرض الصيام على جميع المؤمنين؟

- So that they may be pious. - لكي يكونوا أتقياء.

4- What should the Faithful do in Ramadan to get very closer to Paradise?

• ماذا يجب أن يفعل المؤمنون في رمضان ليقتربوا أكثر من الجنة؟

- They should do good deeds to feed their hearts and vitalize their souls.

– ينبغي أن يفعلوا أعمالاً صالحة لكي تغذي قلوبهم وتنعش أرواحهم.

5- How do the Faithful get closer to Paradise in Ramadan?

• كيف يقترب المؤمنون من الجنة في رمضان؟

- With good intentions, deeds and words.

– بالنوايا والأقوال والأفعال الحسنة.

6- Who will enter through "Arrayyan" Gate?

• من سيدخل من باب الريان؟

- The Faithful who observe Fasting.

– المؤمنون المحافظون علي الصيام.

Part B

namely	تعني	Holy Quran	القرآن الكريم
centuries	قرون	Odd Nights	ليالي وتر
recitation	تلاوة	hopeful	مفعم بالأمل
adhere to	يتمسك بـ	reveal	يوحي
mediate	يشفع	pleased	مسرور

Main Text

In Ramadan, there is a night that is better than one thousand months (eighty-three years and four months) that is namely «Al-Qadr Night» on which the Holy Quran was revealed more than fourteen centuries ago. The faithful have to search for that night in the Odd Nights of the last ten days of Ramadan. The Faithful who adhere to Fasting and the recitation of the Holy Quran get pleased and hopeful when they know that both Fasting and the Holy Quran will mediate for the faithful on the Day of Resurrection.

– رمضان ليلة خير من ألف شهر (٨٣ سنة وأربعة أشهر) وهي تسمي ليلة القدر التي أنزل فيها القرآن الكريم منذ أكثر من ١٤ قرن مضي. ويجب علي المؤمنون أن يتحروا ليلة القدر في ليالي الوتر العشر الأواخر من رمضان. فالمؤمنون الذين يلتزمون بالصيام وتلاوة القرآن الكريم يسعدون ويملئهم الأمل عندما يعرفون بأن كل من الصيام والقرآن الكريم سيشفع لهم في يوم البعث.

Questions and Answers

1- Which night is better than one thousand months?

• أي ليلة أفضل من ألف شهر؟

- Al-Qadr Night.

– ليلة القدر.

2- When was the Holy Quran revealed?

• متى أنزل القرآن؟

- On Al-Qadr Night more than fourteen centuries ago.

– في ليلة القدر منذ أكثر من أربعة عشر قرناً.

3- What should all the Faithful do during the last ten days of Ramadan?

• ماذا يجب على كل المؤمنين أن يفعلوا خلال العشر الأواخر من رمضان؟

- They should search for Al-Qadr Night.

– يجب أن يبحثوا عن ليلة القدر.

4- What do the Faithful do in Ramadan?

• ماذا يفعل المؤمنون فى رمضان؟

- They adhere to fasting and recite the Holy Quran.

– يتمسكوا بالصيام ويتلون القرآن الكريم.

5- What will mediate for the faithful on the day of Resurrection?

• ما الذى سيشفع للمؤمنين يوم البعث؟

- Fasting and the Holy Quran.

– الصيام والقرآن الكريم.

Unit 5 Pilgrimage الحج

Part A

accepted	مبرور - مقبول	status	حالة
males	ذكور	sins	خطايا
quarter	مكان / ناحية	revelations	تجليات
neonatal	ميلاد جديد	grant	يمنح
Pilgrimage	الحج	females	إناث
altogether	تماما	nationalities	جنسيات
haloes	هالات	crowned	متوجين
Blessed Mecca	مكة المكرمة	mounted	على كل ضامر
corners	أركان	acquire	يكتسب
luminous	نورانية		

Main Text

Pilgrimage is the fifth pillar of Islam. This pillar is the pillar through which Allah (Glory be to Him) grants those who perform accepted Pilgrimage a neonatal status having their sins forgiven altogether crowned with luminous haloes of the faithful after Allah's revelations on the Day of Arafat.

Millions of Muslims, males and females, of different nationalities, from different countries and from all corners of the world go to Blessed Mecca every year to perform Pilgrimage. They come from every quarter near and far on foot and mounted.

- الحج هو الركن الخامس من أركان الإسلام وهذا الركن الذي يمنح الله سبحانه وتعالي من خلاله لذين يؤدون الحج ميلادا جديدا. حيث يغفر ذنوبهم جميعا متوجين بهالات نورانية بعد تجليات الله في يوم عرفات. والملايين من المسلمين ذكورا وإناثا من مختلف الجنسيات والدول ومن شتى أنحاء العالم يتوجهون إلي مكة المكرمة كل عام لتأدية فريضة الحج، ويأتون من كل تجاه قريب أو بعيد سيرا على الأقدام أو على كل ضامر.

Questions and Answers

1- What is the fifth Pillar of Islam?
- Pilgrimage (Hajj).

• ما هو الركن الخامس للإسلام؟
- الحج.

2- What do Pilgrims acquire? Why?
- Pilgrims acquire a neonatal status because they perform accepted pilgrimage.

• ماذا يكتسب الحجاج؟ لماذا؟
- يكتسب الحجاج ميلادا جديدا لأنهم أدوا حجا مقبولا.

3- Who forgives the pilgrims' sins?
- Allah "Glory be to Him".

• من الذي يغفر ذنوب الحجيج؟
- الله سبحانه وتعالى.

4- Who goes to Blessed Mecca every year?
- Millions of Muslims, males and females.

• من يذهب إلى مكة المكرمة كل عام؟
- الملايين من المسلمين ذكورا وإناثا.

5- Why does millions of Muslims go to Mecca every year?

• لماذا يذهب ملايين من المسلمين إلى مكة كل عام؟

- To perform Pilgrimage.

- لتأدية فريضة الحج.

Part B

meeting	اجتماع	equal	تساوي
clearly	بوضوح	prayer	الصلاة
brotherhood	أخوّة	sympathize	يتعاطف
members	أعضاء	unified	موحد
care for	يعتني بـ	The Holy Mosque	المسجد الحرام
manifest	تظهر	through	من خلال

Main Text

It is through the meeting of millions of pilgrims that the Muslim brotherhood is clearly manifested to show that all Muslims of the world are one unified family whose members sympathize with one another, help one another and care for one another. It is well-known by all Muslims that Prayer in the Holy Mosque in Blessed Mecca equals one hundred thousand Prayers.

– ومن خلال اجتماع الملايين من الحجيج تتضح الأخوة في الإسلام لتبين بوضوح أن جميع المسلمين في العالم هم أسرة واحدة متحدة يتعاطف أفرادها مع بعضهم البعض، ويساعد بعضهم بعضا ويهتمون ببعضهم البعض. ويعلم جميع المسلمين أن الصلاة في المسجد الحرام في مكة المكرمة تعدل مائة ألف صلاة.

Questions and Answers

1- What manifests the Muslim brotherhood?

• ما الذي يُظهر أخوة المسلمين؟

- The meeting of millions of Pilgrims.

- اجتماع الملايين من الحجيج.

2- What does the Muslim brotherhood show?

• ماذا تُظهر أخوة المسلمين؟

- They are one unified family whose members sympathize with one another, help one another and care for one another.

- أنهم أسرة واحدة متحدة يتعاطف أفرادها مع بعضهم البعض، ويساعد بعضهم بعضا ويهتمون ببعضهم البعض.

3- What do all Muslims know well?

• ماذا يعرف كل المسلمين جيداً؟

- The Prayer in the Holy Mosque equals one hundred thousand Prayers.

- أن الصلاة في المسجد الحرام في مكة المكرمة تعدل مائة ألف صلاة.

Part C

witness	تشهد	grant	يمنح
restore	يستعيد	season	فصل / موسم
truthfulness	صدق	Ka'ba	كعبة
golden	ذهبي	Zulhijjah	ذو الحجة
devotion	إخلاص	highest	الأعلى
pure	طاهر	humility	التواضع
circumambulating	الطواف	kneeling	الركوع
seize	يمسك	earnest	جاد / مخلص
sacrifice	يضحي	point	نقطة
create	يخلق	represent	تمثل
prostrating	سجود	solemn	جاد - خاشع
forgive	يغفر	rituals	شعائر
piousness	التقوى	chance	فرصة
chaste	عفيف	over-crowdedness	زحام شديد

Main Text

Days of Pilgrimage witness the season of piousness, fear of Allah, humility to Allah, devotion, truthfulness and sacrifice. They represent a golden chance for every Muslim to have himself restored to himself as pure as he was created and as chaste as he came to life. Thus pilgrims keep themselves busy in circumambulating "Tawaf" round Blessed Ka'ba, kneeling, prostrating in Solemn prayers and completing rituals of Pilgrimage. The over-crowdedness reaches its highest point on the ninth of Zulhijjah on Arafat. Muslims address their accepted earnest prayers to Allah (Glory be to Him) to forgive them and grant them the greatest reward.

- تشهد أيام الحج موسما للتقوى وخشية الله والتواضع لله والإخلاص والصدق والتضحية وهي تمثل فرصة ذهبية لكل مسلم كي يستعيد نفسه طاهرا كما خُلق وعفيفا كما جاء للحياة. ولذلك فالحجيج يشغلون أنفسهم بالطواف حول الكعبة المشرفة، ركعا سجدا في صلواتهم خاشعين مستكملين شعائر الحج. ويصل الزحام إلي أقصي ذروته في يوم التاسع من ذي الحجة على عرفات. حيث يناجي المسلمون بصلاتهم الجادة المقبولة ربهم سبحانه وتعالي ليعفوا عنهم ويجزيهم أعظم الجزاء.

Questions and Answers

1- What do the days of Pilgrimage witness?

• ماذا تشهد أيام الحج؟

- The season of piousness. — موسما للتقوى
- Fear of Allah. — خشية الله
- Devotion. — الاخلاص لله
- Truthfulness. — الصدق
- Sacrifice. — التضحية

2- How do pilgrims keep themselves busy?

• كيف يشغل الحجيج أنفسهم؟

- In circumambulating "Tawaf" round Blessed Ka'ba. — بالطواف حول الكعبة المشرفة.

3- When does over-crowdedness on Arafat reach its highest point?

• متى يصل الازدحام على جبل عرفات ذروته؟

- On the ninth of Zulhija.

- في يوم التاسع من ذي الحجة.

4- What do Muslims address their Prayers to Allah for?

• لماذا يناجي المسلمين الله في صلواتهم؟

- To forgive them and grant them the greatest reward.

- أن يعفوا عنهم ويجزيهم أعظم الجزاء.

5- What do days of pilgrimage represent?

• ماذا تمثل أيام الحج؟

- They represent a golden chance for every Muslim to have himself restored to himself as pure as he was created.

- تمثل فرصة ذهبية لكل مسلم أن يستعيد نفسه طاهرًا كما خلق.

6- What is meant by "Tawaf"?

• ماذا يعني الطواف؟

- It means circumambulating round Blessed Ka'ba.

- هو الطواف حول الكعبة المشرفة.

Part (D)

farewell	طواف لوداع	tomb	قبر
except	ما عدا	Prophet	النبي

Main Text

Finishing Pilgrimage, pilgrims go to Blessed Ka'ba to perform farewell circumambulating «Tawaf Al-Wada'», then they go to Medina «Al-Madina Al-Munawwarah» to visit the tomb of Prophet Muhammad (Peace be upon him) taking into consideration that Prayer in the Prophet's Mosque is better than a thousand prayers except in the Holy Mosque in Blessed Mecca.

- بالانتهاء من الحج يذهب الحجيج إلي مكة المكرمة لأداء طواف الوداع ثم يذهبوا إلي المدينة المنورة لزيارة قبر النبي محمد (صلى الله عليه وسلم) آخذين في اعتبارهم أن الصلاة في مسجد الرسول أفضل من ألف صلاة إلا في المسجد الحرام في مكة المكرمة.

Questions and Answers

1- Where do pilgrims go to perform farewell circumambulating?

• إلى أين يذهب الحجج لأداء طواف الوداع؟

- To the Blessed Ka'ba.

- إلى الكعبة المشرفة.

2- Why do Pilgrims go to Medina?

• لماذا يذهب الحجاج إلى المدينة؟

- To visit the tomb of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH)..

- لزيارة قبر النبي محمد (صلى الله عليه وسلم)

3- Where was Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) buried?

• أين دفن النبي محمد (صلى الله عليه وسلم)؟

- In Medina.

- في المدينة المنورة.

4- How much is the Prayer in the Prophet Mosque in reward?

• كم مقدار الصلاة في مسجد الرسول في الأجر؟

- A thousand Prayers except in the Holy Mosque.

- ألف صلاة إلا في المسجد الحرام.

5- How much is the Prayer in the Holy Mosque in reward?

• كم مقدار الصلاة في المسجد الحرام في الأجر؟

- A hundred thousand Prayers.

- مائة ألف صلاة.

1 Reading comprehension

كيف تحصل على الدرجة النهائية في قطعة الفهم؟

- سؤال قطعة الفهم من أهم الاسئلة حيث تخصص له درجه كبيره من الامتحان.... سنتناول هذا السؤال في عدة نقاط تساعدك في حله بسهولة.

أولا : مواصفات سؤال قطعة الفهم

- تتكون قطعة الفهم من ٢٠٠ إلى ٢٢٥ كلمة و تنقسم الأسئلة إلى قسمين :

(أ) ٤ أسئلة إختيار من متعدد

(ب) ٤ اسئلة تفكير نقدى

- تقيس الاسئلة مهارات الفهم التالية مثل استخلاص المعلومات / اعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية / فهم إلام يشير الضمير / تخمين معنى كلمة مستخدمة فى سياق معين / اجابة اسئلة تفكير نقدى مثل التعبير عن رأى شخصى أو التنبوء ...الخ.

ثانيا : خطوات تساعدك علي حل سؤال قطعة الفهم:

1. اقرأ الأسئلة أولا قبل قراءة القطعة نفسها لأن هذا يعطيك فكرة عامة عن موضوع القطعة
2. انتبه إلى ما تطلبه هذه الأسئلة من معلومات أثناء قراءة الأسئلة
3. اقرأ القطعة كلها بتأن مرة ثانية قبل أن تقوم بالإجابه على الأسئلة
4. عندما تجد جملة بها إجابة سؤال ضع خط تحتها
5. اذا وجدت أرقام انتبه لها لأن واضع الامتحان عادة ما يسأل عنها
6. اذا صادفت كلمة لا تعرف معناها حاول تخمينها من السياق العام للجملة

كيف تخمن معنى كلمة لا تعرف معناها ؟

1. قد تكون الكلمة الصعبة التي لا تعرفها مشروح معناها أساسا في الكلام التالي لها مباشرة. انظر إلى المثال:

كلمة مثل **(junks)** قد تكون للوهلة الأولي غير معروفة لك. لكن انظر الى الجملة التالية المستخدم فيها هذه الكلمة. مع قليل من التركيز فى الكلام التالى لهذه الكلمة ستعرف معناها:

- Chinese junks were sailing ships with flat bottoms.

من المؤكد أنك عرفت معنى الكلمة الأن وهو «سفن شراعية».

2. قد تتمكن من تخمين معنى كلمة بسبب وجود عبارة أو كلمة دالة على التناقض مثل:

unlike	على العكس من../ على خلاف	but	ولكن
in contrast	فى المقابل	yet	ولكن

انظر إلى المثال:

- Unlike animals that hunt during the day, nocturnal hunters must find their way in the darkness.

كلمة nocturnal كلمة قد لا تكون معروفة لك ولكن عندما ننظر الى ما سبقها (على عكس الحيوانات التي تصطاد أثناء النهار،....) نفهم منها ان الـ nocturnal hunters هى الحيوانات التى تصطاد ليلا ...

3. أحيانا يمكننا تخمين معنى الكلمة بسبب وجود مرادف لها مذكور بعدها وعادة يسبق هذا المرادف عبارات مثل:

in other words,	بكلمات أخري،....	..... is also known as	.....يُعرف كـ
that is,	هذا يعني	..... is commonly called	.....يُسمي عادةً

انظر إلى المثال وحاول أن تخمن معنى كلمة **dromedary**

- The dromedary, commonly called a camel, stores fat in its hump.

واضح من سياق الجملة أن كلمة **dromedary** تعني حيوان الجمل (المرادف مذكور بعدها).

4. قد تتمكن من تخمين معنى كلمة من خلال السوابق prefixes أو اللواحق suffixes المتعلقة بأصل الكلمة. مثلا impossible نفهم من خلال السابقه im (التي تعنى «غير» أو «ليس» أنها عكس possible فيكون معناها (غير ممكن/ مستحيل) أو كلمة homeless نفهم من خلال اللاحقة less التي تعنى (بدون/ بلا) أن معنى الكلمة (بلا مأوى/ مشرد)

5. تلخيصا لما سبق يمكنك أن تفهم معنى الكلمة من السياق المستخدمة فيه - فالكلام الذى يأتي قبلها والذى يأتي بعدها عادة يوضح معناها ..
ببساطة: ترجم الجملة كلها واترك فراغ مكان الكلمة التى لا تعرفها ثم فكر كلمه بالعربى تتماشى مع معنى الجملة فمثلا أنت قرأت الجملة التالية:

- Do you reckon that the King will agree to meet us?

وأنت لا تعرف معنى كلمة **reckon** ولكنك تعرف باقي الكلمات.
ستقول: هل ....أن الملك سيوافق على مقابلتنا؟ - الكلمة التى تتماشى مع هذا السياق ماذا هي؟ هل تعتقد أن الملك سيوافق على مقابلتنا؟

ثالثا : الأنماط الأكثر شيوعا فى اسئلة قطعة الفهم:

(أ) اسئلة الاختيار من متعدد:

1. قد تجد أن واضع الامتحان وضع خط تحت كلمة فى جملة معينة بالقطعة ثم يسأل عما تشير إليه الكلمة الموضوع تحتها مثل:

- No one likes to exercise. But the fact is, it makes you feel good!

-The **underlined** word **'it'** refers to ....

a. chocolate b. booklet c. exercise d. exams

2. قد تجد أن واضع الامتحان يسأل عن معنى أو مرادف **synonym** لكلمة أو عبارة **phrase** او تعبير **expression** مذكور بالقطعة .... على سبيل المثال يقول لك:

- The word '....' may be replaced by ....

كلمة «....» يمكن استبدالها بـ

- In line ..., the word "........." is closest in meaning to.....

فى سطر..... كلمة «......» أقرب من حيث المعنى إلى ......

- The word "......." in the passage means ....

كلمة «.......» فى القطعة تعنى.........

- The underlined word "....." gives the meaning of......

كلمة «..............» الموضوع تحتها خط تعطى معنى.......

- Which of the following is equivalent in meaning to "......." ?

أى مما يلى مساو فى المعنى لـكلمة «.......»؟

- The word "....." in the passage is the synonym of ......

كلمة «............» الموجودة فى القطعة هى مرادف لـ......

- What does "....." mean?

ما ذا تعنى كلمه «.......»؟

مثال ورد فى قطعة من أحد الإمتحانات :

- The word **"quiet"** may be replaced by..............

a. noisy b. miserly c. calm d. poor

3 قد تجد أن واضع الامتحان يسأل عن مضاد أو عكس كلمة موجودة فى القطعة antonym/ opposite كأن يقول :

• The word "........" in the passage is the antonym/ opposite of......
كلمة «......» فى القطعة هى مضاد/ عكس ......

• Which of the following is the antonym/ opposite of ".........."?
أى مما يلى هو مضاد/ عكس كلمة «........»؟

• The antonym/ opposite of the word '.....' is......
مضاد/ عكس كلمة «........» هو ....

مثال ورد فى قطعة من أحد الإمتحانات :

- The antonym of the word 'persuasive' is ....
a. irregular b. unconvincing c. irrelevant d. unfamiliar

4 قد تجد أن واضع الامتحان يسأل عن المصدر المأخوذة منه القطعة، مثلا هل هى جزء من مقال أو من مقابلة شخصية أو عرض أو ملصق ......إلخ.

فمثلا قد يقول:

- The above passage can be a part of a / an ....
a. article b. poster c. presentation d. interview

5 قد تجد أن واضع الامتحان يسأل عن الفكرة الرئيسية للقطعة أو عن العنوان الأنسب لها أو عن موضوع القطعة ويكون هذا السؤال بأكثر من شكل مثل:

• Which title best summarizes the main idea of the passage?
أي عنوان يعطى أفضل تلخيص للفكرة الرئيسية للقطعة؟

• Which of the following would be the best title of the passage /article/text...?
أى مما يلى هو العنوان الأفضل للقطعة / المقال/ النص....؟

• What is the main idea of the passage?
ما هى الفكرة الرئيسية للقطعة

• What is the subject of this passage?
ما هو موضوع القطعة؟

• The main idea of this passage is best expressed in which sentence?
أي جمله تعبر عن الفكرة الرئيسية للقطعة؟

6 قد تجد أن واضع الامتحان يسأل عما هو صواب أو ما هو خطأ . مثلا يقول لك :

• Based on the passage, what is probably true about ...
بناءً على القطعة ، ما الذى قد يكون صحيح بشأن ...

• According to the passage, all of the following are true except ...
وفقًا للقطعة، كل ما يلي صحيح ماعدا ...

• According to the text, which statement is not true?
وفقًا للقطعة، أي عبارة غير صحيحة؟

(ب) أسئلة التفكير النقدى:

1 قد تتحدث القطعة عن موضوع فية أراء مختلفة ويسألك هل أنت مع أم ضد رأى ما ويطلب منك ذكر السبب. مثال:

• Are you for or against ...? Why / Why not?

2 قد يسألك عن غرض الكاتب من كتابته لهذة القطعة أو لفقرة معينه فى القطعة. مثال:

• What is the author's main purpose in this passage?
• What was the writer's purpose in paragraph 3?

3 قد يكون هناك فى القطعة نصيحة ويسألك هل توافق على هذه النصيحة أم لا مع ذكر السبب.

• Do you agree with the advice in the passage? Why? Why not?

❹ قد يطلب منك تلخيص ما تعلمته أو ما عرفته من القطعة عن أمر ما في جملتين:

. Summarize in TWO sentences what you learnt from the passage about.....

❺ قد يربط موضوع القطعة بك فيسألك مثلا: هل تحب .... أو هل تكرة ....؟ لم / لم لا؟

. Do you like....? Why? Why not?

❻ قد يطلب منك أن تعطى عنوان مناسب للقطعة أو تذكر الفكرة الرئيسية لها:

. Give a suitable title to the passage

. Suggest a suitable title for the passage

. Mention briefly the main idea of the passage

❼ قد يطلب منك إيجاد كلمات من القطعة تعطى معانى معينة:

. Find words in the passage which mean:

a. b.

❽ قد يطلب منك إيجاد كلمات من القطعة تعطى عكس كلمات معينة:

. Find words in the passage that mean the opposite of the words given below:

a. b.

نماذج لقطعة الفهم

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People may be divided into two types; winners and losers. Because our families and friends have a great influence on us as we grow, we are born helpless and dependent on our environment . Winners are able to change their situation and become independent by being responsible for their own lives. They don't blame their own mistakes on others. They do their own thinking, they listen to others, evaluate what they say, and then they make up their minds. Although they may fail at times, yet they keep self-confidence . Winners overcome their bad experiences. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature.

They freely enjoy themselves but they can postpone it if duty calls. Losers, on the other hand, never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many causes why people can become losers: disease , poor nutrition, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences. **These** can interfere with the normal progress towards becoming a winner. Whereas winners fight these situations, losers hang on to them, and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel anxious, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and often repeat their own mistakes again and again.

Losers spend their lives waiting for something wonderful to happen to save them from their problems with their lives but never try to change.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- When winners fail at times, they ....

a. are afraid to try new things
b. never keep their self-confidence
c. spend their time waiting
d. never repeat their own mistakes

2- Losers are people who ....

a. blame others for their mistakes
b. overcome their bad experiences
c. learn to take responsibility
d. try to change

3- Winners can change their own lives by ....

a. blaming others for their mistakes
b. using their mistakes as excuses
c. waiting for something wonderful
d. being responsible for their own lives

4- What determines the lives of the winners?

a. Hope
b. Happy relationships
c. Making excuses
d. Their own thinking

B: Answer the following questions:

5- What does the underlined word "**These**" refer to?

6. Winners have a positive attitude towards life. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

7- Find in the text words which mean:

a. to put off until a later time
b. to get in the way of

8- Give a suitable title for the passage.

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

A material is what something is made of. There are five basic materials. Most things are made with these materials. Some things are made of metal. Some things are made of glass. Some things are made of wood. Some things are made of cloth. And some things are made of plastic. There are some other materials. But they are not used as much as these 5 materials. Let's talk about metal first. Metal is very heavy. And it is very hard and strong. It usually feels cool if you touch it. We use metal to make lots of things. We use it for forks and knives. We use it for keys. We use it for cars. We use it for these things because it is very strong.

Next, let's talk about glass. Glass is very smooth. It feels cool to touch. It is not as heavy as metal. It is hard. But it is not strong. It breaks very easily! Then why do we use it? We use it because it is clear! You can see through glass! That's why we use it for windows. That's also why we use it for glasses.

Now, let's talk about wood. Wood is lighter than metal and glass. It is not as strong as metal. But it is much stronger than glass. We use wood to make lots of things. Things made from wood are usually light and hard and strong. Chairs and tables are made from wood. Pencils are made from wood.

Now let's talk about cloth. Cloth is very light. It is much lighter than wood. And it is very soft. We use cloth to make lots of things. For example, it is used to make clothing. And it is used to make blankets.

Last, let's talk about plastic. Plastic is also very light. But it is different from cloth. Sometimes it is soft. And sometimes it is hard. Plastic can be used to make thin plastic bags. These are light, soft, and strong. But plastic can also be used to make bicycle helmets. These are light, hard, and strong. A helmet and a bag seem different. But they are both made from plastic.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Which sentence from the passage best describes the main idea?

a. "We use cloth to make lots of things."
b. "Metal is very heavy."
c. "There are five basic materials."
d. "A helmet and a bag seem different."

2- According to the passage, which of these things is a material?

a. chairs
b. clothing
c. windows
d. wood

3- According to the passage, how does glass feel?

a. smooth and cool b. warm and soft

c. light and hard d. sharp and heavy

4- Which material would you use if you wanted to make something that was strong and very light?

a. plastic b. wood c. metal d. glass

B: Answer the following questions:

5- In this passage, we learn about five different materials. Which of these materials do you think is the best? Why?

6- Mention two materials other than those mentioned in the passage.

7- Plastic has started to replace metal, wood and glass in some industries. Discuss.

8. Find in the text words which mean:

a. flat covers of beds made of wool or similar material usually used on a bed

b. of great weight; difficult to lift or move

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

In a recent survey, it was found that 25 percent of the women interviewed reported drying and burning of the skin after using certain soaps, ten percent had eye and nasal irritations after using certain perfumes, and eight percent had cracked lips after using certain lipsticks. The most common symptoms of allergic dermatitis are extremely dry skin, scaling, and redness with swelling and itching. The products most likely to cause this condition are lipstick, nail polish, soap, hair preparations, deodorants, and perfumes. Various drugs are being developed for the relief of allergy sufferers. However, your best help is to convert to a cosmetic product to which you have no harmful reaction. Remember that the product is not at fault or in any way injurious; it is your particular sensitivity to it that creates the problem. A line of hypo-allergenic cosmetics that are relatively free from substances that have been found to create allergic reactions is on the market.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The writer advises those with allergic reactions to ....

a. take anti-allergenic drugs

b. change their brand of cosmetics

c. avoid all cosmetics

d. complain to the manufacturer

2- It's likely that the aim of the survey was to..........

a. test how well a particular brand of soap was selling

b. aid the drug manufacturers in their development of remedies

c. claim for damages against a cosmetics company

d. get an idea of how women react physically to cosmetics

3- Certain products cause allergies because..........

a. women take drugs which react adversely to the cosmetics

b. women overuse them by as much as 25 percent

c. certain people are sensitive to their ingredients

d. the manufacturers use harmful ingredients.

4- Investigation or study of people's behaviour and opinions is defined as
a. allergy b. symptom c. survey d. cracks

B: Answer the following questions:

5- Find words in the passage that mean :
a. sign of illness, indicated by changes in the body's condition.
b. unpleasant feeling on the skin which makes the person want to scratch it
6- Suggest a suitable title for the passage.
7- Do you think drug manufacturers should be involved in finding solutions to the problem of allergic reactions to cosmetics? Why / Why not?
8. What are the most common symptoms of allergic dermatitis?

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

Should we work all the time without having rest or entertainment? The answer is that we can't go on working without sleeping, from time to time at regular intervals, to have some rest and some **recreation**. If we didn't we could make mistakes and the quality of our work might get worse. An overworked person may end up by losing the ability to think clearly and by having not energy to go on working. Sleep is one of the ways in which nature renews our energy. Spots and games are also essential for brain workers, who stay in closed offices and don't have a good chance to exercise their muscles. Such activities as swimming and walking may do them a lot of good' so we wouldn't open. Having forgotten all about our work and the worries of life, we can then enjoy ourselves to the full land return the next day to work with our energy fully renewed. Change has a magic effect on man's health and consequently on his performance.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The underlined word "**recreation**" means ....
a. health b. recover c. enjoyment d. procession
2- Overworking results in ....
a. lack of sleep b. less energy c. more energy d. sound thinking
3- Mona can renew her energy by ....
a. having enough food b. working hard all time
c. having enough sleep d. watching cartoons
4- This text is extracted from ....
a. a film b. an article on nutrition
c. a science magazine d. a science fiction book

B: Answer the following questions:

5- Why should people stop working now and then?
6- In your opinion what is the best way to renew our energy?
7- What do you think sports and games teach us?
8- Give a suitable title for the passage.

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

When another old cave is discovered in the south of France, it is not usually news. Rather, it is an ordinary event. Such discoveries are so frequent these days that hardly anybody **pays heed to** them. However, when the Lascaux cave complex was discovered in 1940, the world was amazed.

Painted directly on its walls were hundreds of scenes showing how people lived thousands of years ago. The scenes show people hunting animals, such as bison or wild cats. Other images depict birds and, most noticeably, horses, which appear in more than 300 wall images, by far outnumbering all other animals.

Early artists drawing these animals accomplished a monumental and difficult task. <u>They</u> did not limit themselves to the easily accessible walls but carried their painting materials to spaces that required climbing steep walls or crawling into narrow passages in the Lascaux complex. Unfortunately, the paintings have been exposed to the destructive action of water and temperature changes, which easily wear the images away.

Because the Lascaux caves have many entrances, air movement has also damaged the images inside. Although they are not out in the open air, where natural light would have destroyed them long ago, many of the images have deteriorated and are barely recognizable. To prevent further damage, the site was closed to tourists in 1963, 23 years after it was discovered.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In line 3, the words '**pays heed to**' are closest in meaning to ....
   a. discovers b. watches c. notices d. buys
2. Based on the passage, what is probably true about the south of France?
   a. It is home to rare animals.
   b. It has a large number of caves.
   c. It is known for horse-racing events.
   d. It has attracted many famous artists.
3. According to the passage, which animals appear most often on the cave walls?
   a. Birds b. Bison c. Horses d. Wild cats
4. According to the passage, all of the following have caused damage to the paintings EXCEPT ....
   a. temperature changes
   b. air movement
   c. water
   d. light

B: Answer the following questions:

5- Suggest a suitable title for the passage.
6. Why was painting inside the Lascaux complex a difficult task?
7. What does the passage say happened at the Lascaux caves in 1963?
8- What does the underlined word '**They**' refer to?

2 Writing

Essay Writing

المقال عبارة عن موضوع إنشاء مكون عادة من ٣ إلى ٥ فقرات يعكس أرائك الخاصة في موضوع معين.

١- أنواع المقالات التي تأتي عادة في الامتحان:

1. قد يطلب منك واضع الإمتحان أن تكتب عن مزايا وعيوب شيء ... (مثل الانترنت / الموبايل / الكمبيوتر / التلفزيون...إلخ)
مثال على ذلك :

- The internet is used everywhere. Write about its advantages and its disadvantages / its merits and demerits / its pros and cons

2. قد يطلب منك واضع الإمتحان أن تكتب عن مشكله وتوضح أسبابها ونتائجها وكيفيه حلها ...
مثال على ذلك:

- Pollution is one of the worst problems from which Egypt suffers. Discuss this problem and suggest solutions.

3. قد يطلب منك واضع الإمتحان أن تكتب عن شئ شخصي - يتعلق بك أنت شخصيا - مثلا يطلب أن تكتب عن الهدف الذي تريد تحقيقه في حياتك / عن مثلك الأعلى في الحياة / عن شخصيه أثرت فيك ....الخ الخ.
مثال على هذا :

- In our lives we meet many people. Write about the most interesting character that you have ever known.

4. قد يطلب منك كتابة مقال تخيلى ، أى عن شيء من وحى خيالك.
مثال على هذا :

- Imagine that you became very rich all of a sudden, how would you spend the money?

5. قد يطلب منك الكتابة عن موضوع جدلي - يؤيدة بعض الناس ويعارضة أخرون . ويطلب منك أن توضح رأيك.
مثال على هذا :

- "All students in secondary schools should study science". What do you think? Give reasons for what you say. (ث.ع 2003)

6. أحيانا يطلب منك الكتابة عن موضوع عام (أهميه شيء مثل الرياضة أو السياحة أو المال أو القراءة أو العمل الجاد أو التعاون أو العمل الجماعى أو الأدب ....إلخ).
مثال على هذا :

- Write an essay of about (180) words about the following topic:

"The importance of tourism"

- أو يطلب منك الكتابة عن دور فرد أو مجموعة في المجتمع مثل دور الشباب في مجتمعنا ..../ دور المرأة في المجتمع .... الخ ..أو عن كتاب قرأته أو فيلم شاهدتة أو مكان زرته ... إلخ. مثال على هذا :

- Write an essay of about (180) words about the following topic:

"The role of the youth in our society"

٢- أجزاء المقال:

أجزاء المقال ثلاثة:(مقدمة - موضوع - خاتمة)

١- المقدمة

المقال يبدأ بمقدمه ملخصه للأفكار الرئيسيه التي سيتم تناولها وهذه المقدمة تنتقل من الكلام العام إلى الكلام المحدد... حاول أن تستفيد من رأس الموضوع المقدم لك فمن الممكن مثلا أن تسأل أسئلة وتفكر في اجاباتها ...ويجب أن تشتمل الإجابات على كل الأفكار الرئيسية باختصار شديد.

٢- الموضوع أو جسم المقال

- يتكون الموضوع من فقرة أو فقرتين أو ثلاثة فقرات أو أكثر
- ابدأ كل فقرة بجملة topic sentence تلخص ما تدور عنه هذه الفقرة وبعدها جمل مساندة supporting sentences تشرح ما قلته في بداية الفقرة.

٣- الخاتمة

تكون الخاتمة عادة من جملتين أو ثلاثة. من الممكن ان تختتم المقال بنصيحة أو بأمنية تتعلق بمضمون الموضوع أو بملخص لما ناقشته بأسلوب آخر لكن لا تقدم أفكار أو معلومات جديدة في الخاتمة.

كيف تتعامل مع هذا السؤال في الامتحان؟

● يطلب منك واضع الامتحان كتابة موضوع من حوالي ١٨٠ كلمة كهذا الموضوع مثلا :

Write an essay of about 150 words about:

The pros and cons of smartphones

١- إقرأ رأس الموضوع وترجمة بشكل صحيح حتى تحدد المطلوب منك كتابته. (عندما ترجمنا الموضوع عرفنا أن المطلوب منا أن نكتب عن : مزايا وعيوب الهواتف الذكية.

٢- حدد الزمن الذي سوف تستخدمه عند الكتابة .... (اذا كنت ستكتب عن حقائق معروفة استخدم زمن المضارع البسيط واذا كنت ستكتب عن شيء انتهى في وقت معروف في الماضي استخدم زمن الماضي البسيط واذا كنت ستكتب عن شيء في المستقبل استخدم زمنا مناسبا من أزمنة المستقبل)

٣- قسم المقال إلى أربع فقرات:

(أ) ابدأ بمقدمة جذابة تتضمن الأفكار الرئيسية التي ستتناولها عند كتابتك للموضوع وهي هنا مزايا وعيوب الانترنت، فمن الممكن ان تكتب مثلاً:

- The saying goes, "Perfection is a divine attribute". Everything in life has pros and cons. This rule applies to smartphones. Do they have more advantages or disadvantages? This essay will examine the merits and demerits of smartphones and provide a logical conclusion.

يقول المثل : «الكمال لله وحده» فكل شيئ في الحياه له مزايا وعيوب وهذه القاعده تنطبق على الهواتف الذكية. هل مزايا الهواتف الذكية أكثر أم عيوبها؟ سوف يبحث هذا المقال في مزايا وعيوب الهواتف الذكيه ويقدم خاتمه منطقية.

(ب) في الفقرة التالية للمقدمة أكتب عن المزايا. أعط أمثله واضحة ومحددة.

(جـ) في الفقرة الثالثة أكتب عن العيوب. أعط أمثلة واضحة ومحددة أيضا.

(د) في الختام أعد ذكر المزايا والعيوب باختصار ثم اذكر رأيك النهائي ..مثلا قل :

- To conclude, although smartphones have certain disadvantages like ...., they have a lot of advantages such as .... I believe that these benefits of smartphones outweigh their drawbacks.

حاول أن تستفيد مما هو آت :

١- لكي تأكد كلامك ممكن أن تبدأ جملتك بأحد هذة التعبيرات :

- It is crystal clear that	- من الواضح تماما ان ....
- It can't be denied that	- لا يمكن إنكار أن ....
- It goes without saying that	- غني عن البيان ان نقول أن ....
- It is taken for granted that	- من المسلم به ان ....
- There is no doubt that	- مما لاشك فيه ان ....
- I am not exaggerating when I say that	- لا أبالغ عندما أقول ان ....
- I reveal no secret when I say that	- لا افشى سرا عندما أقول ان ....

- It is known that	- من المعروف ان ....
- Everyone knows that	- الجميع يعرف ان ....

٢- إذا أردت أن تقول «رأبي كذا» أو «أنا أعتقد كذا»

- In my opinion, ...	- في رأيي
- I do believe that	- أعتقد أن ....
- From my own point of view, ...	- في رأيي

٣- اذا أردت أن تقارن حقيقتين أو فكرتين مختلفين

- On the one hand, ...	- من ناحية
- On the other hand,......	- ومن ناحيه اخرى

٤- لكي تعطى مثال ابدأ جملتك بـ... For example,

إذا أردت أن تعطى مثال داخل الجملة استخدم such as أو like

٥- إذا أردت أن تضيف فكره جديده من الممكن أن تبدأ بـ:

- Moreover, ... / Furthermore,... / In addition to that .....إضافة الى ذلك
- It is worth mentioning that......من الجدير بالذكر ان
- Concerning بخصوص / Another thing is that........ شيء أخر هو ان
- Last but not least, ...وأخيرا وليس أخرا

هناك بعض الروابط والكلمات التي يمكن أن تكتب مع بداية كل فكرة جديدة لربط أفكار الموضوع مثل:

- On one hand, ...	- من ناحية، .....
- In addition / Besides, ...	- بالإضافة الي ذلك / علاوة على ذلك .....
- Above all, ...	- وفوق كل ذلك، .....
- Thus, ...	- هكذا، .....
- At the same time, ...	- في نفس الوقت، .....
- On the other hand, ...	- من ناحية اخري، .....
- Moreover = Furthermore, ...	- علاوة علي ذلك، .....
- Hence, ...	- ومن ثم، .....
- However, ...	- ومع ذلك،.....
- As a consequence of ......,	- ونتيجة لـــ....،
- And as a result, ...	- ونتيجة لذلك،.....
- Consequently, ...	- نتيجة ذلك،.....

يمكن أن ننهي الموضوع بإحدى هذه العبارات:

- Finally, it is quite clear that....is really ...
- ختاماً ، من الواضح أن .. هو حقًا ...
- To sum up, we can say that ... is really ....
- لكي نلّخص، نستطيع أن نقول أن ... هو حقًا ..
- Undoubtedly, ... has/have affected our life. We should do our best to find suitable answers to it / them.
- مما لا شك فيه أن ..... قد أثر على حياتنا. فيجب علينا أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لكى نجد حلولاً لهم.
- In brief, I think that ... is really ...
- بإختصار، أعتقد أن ..... هو حقًا ...
- In brief, with ....., we may overcome our difficulties and achieve progress.
- بإختصار، بـ....... يمكن أن نتغلب على مشاكلنا ونحقق التقدم.
- From what I have mentioned above, it's clear that ....
- مما ذَكرت سالفاً / من قبل؛ من الواضح أن .....

مقالات نموذجية

1- What would you like to be?

I come from a family of teachers. My father was a teacher, my sister is a teacher, and I would like to be a teacher, too. What do we all find interesting about this job? The answer to this question needs elaboration.

Teaching is a "people job". It involves interacting with students and helping them to interact with each other. Teachers deal with human beings and not with machines! Therefore, they have to discover the key to every student's personality so that they can get their ideas across to their students in an interesting way.

Teachers play a key role in preparing students to be good citizens. They not only provide them with information, but they also train them in good manners. Teachers are the torch-bearers of knowledge. They foster creativity, develop character, and provide students with the skills they need to reach their goals and lead productive lives

Teachers are like the candle that burns itself to give light to others. They see the fruits of their efforts every day. They do feel happy when their students succeed in life and get high positions in the society. All these things motivate me to be a teacher.

2- National unity in Egypt

All Egyptians say, "Religion is for Allah and Egypt is for all". This means that there is no distinction between the sons of Egypt due to religion, race, or colour. National unity between Muslims and Christians is not a slogan but rather a tangible reality.

Muslims and Christians are the two elements of our country. There is no difference between them. They have the same rights and they do the same duties. In all wars and revolutions, we saw Christians fighting side by side with Muslims. They are always partners in joy and annoy. When a Christian gets married, his Muslim friends and neighbours go to the church to attend his wedding party and vice versa. Whenever a Muslim dies, Christians condole his family and vice versa. On feasts, both Muslims and Christians exchange, congratulations, gifts and good wishes.

To conclude, I would like to point out that national unity is one of the most important features of the Egyptian society and Egypt will remain a homeland for all its sons whatever their religions are.

3- Is money the root of every evil?

Is money the root of every evil? The answer to this question needs clarification. Money is a tool that can be used well or badly. Therefore, I'd prefer to say that it is the love of money which is the root of all evil and not money itself.

Some corrupt people commit crimes so that they can become rich in a short time. Not a single day passes without hearing about a bank robbery or a murder. The reason why such crimes are committed is usually the desire to make a fortune in no time without exerting great efforts.

Although having a lot of money is a blessing from God, it can be a curse if we misuse it. For example, a lot of deviated wealthy people spend their money in a way that displeases God. Some of them waste their money on drinking wine, gambling or taking drugs. In this way, they ruin themselves and their families. Others are wasteful of their money. Wastefulness is a bad quality of course.

On the other hand, money is indispensable. If someone said," Money is not important", we would consider him foolish. We need money to spend on our education, food, shelter and so on. When we use it well, it becomes a servant to us. Wise people use it for the good of the society in which they live so as to gain the satisfaction of Allah.

4- Charitable Organizations

It is known that there are a lot of people who live in abject poverty. These people are in bad need of those who lend them a hand to lead a decent life. That's why charitable organizations are indispensable in our country.

Charitable organizations do an excellent job when they collect money from rich people and give it to those who are in dire need of it. They sometimes provide them with clothes and food. There are also medical charitable organizations which help a large number of poor patients. Some of the best doctors treat the needy free of charge. Charities also provide essential services that positively affect the lives of citizens, such as building hospitals, schools, orphanages and religious centers

It is our duty to help charitable organizations by all possible means as they contribute greatly to relieving the pains of poor people and draw a smile on their lips. In this way, they open the door of hope before them and make them feel that they are not alone in this world.

5- My role-model in life

It is an exaggeration to say that my father is an example to be followed by a lot of people. I do think so because my father is a self-made person, a loving father, and – as my mother says - a model husband.

My father's parents were very poor, so they asked him not to go to school as they couldn't spend on his education. However, he insisted on continuing his education and maintaining himself by working part time. He found a job at a bakery shop in the evening. It was hard work, but he had to do it in order to earn enough money to spend on his education.

He was a hard-working student and he always came first despite the hard life he used to live. As a father, my dad is the second to none. He is a very loving father. He brings me whatever I need. He helps me with my studies. He has taught me what is right and what is wrong and trained me in good manners since my childhood. He is really great!

As a husband, he is really a distinguished person! When my mother is ill, he does all the housework instead of her. I do believe that all these things make my dad a role-model and an example to be followed.

Writing

Write an essay of about (180) words on the following:

1- The importance of social work
2- Technology has made the world a global village
3- Unemployment is one of the most dangerous problems that we face nowadays
4- A day you will never forget
5. What courses would like to have? Why?
6. A story you have enjoyed reading
7. The importance of eating healthy food
8. The qualities of a good leader
9- How can we encourage tourists from all over the world to visit Egypt again?
10- Smoking is a bad habit
11- An embarrassing experience that happened to you and how it affected you
12- The importance of making friends
13- The places of interest that tourists can visit in Egypt
14. Your opinion of the new exam system. Do you think it's better for you to do your exams on the tablet or on paper booklets?
15. Should boys and girls be in separate classes at school? Express your opinion.
16. "Cooperation is an effective means to solve a lot of our problems."
17- The role played by the charitable organizations in helping the poor
18- The most amazing piece of news you have read about in the papers
19. Summer camps for students
20- Some young children spend a great amount of time practising sports. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of this

3 Translation

كيف تحصل على الدرجة النهائية فى الترجمة؟

الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى اللغة الانجليزية وبالعكس سؤال أساسي في الامتحان ولكى تحصل على الدرجة النهائية فى هذا السؤال تحتاج إلى جانب حفظك للكلمات إلى دراستك لعدد من قواعد الترجمة ستتعرف عليها بالتفصيل من خلال مجموعة من الجمل متدرجة المستوى.

بعض القواعد والخطوات لتسهيل عملية الترجمة

1. تبدأ الجملة الخبرية المبنية للمعلوم في اللغة الإنجليزية بالفاعل ثم الفعل.

مثال : تعمل الحكومة بجد من أجل توفير فرص عمل للشباب.

– The government works hard to provide job opportunities for the youth.

2. إذا لم يوجد فعل في الجملة الاسمية العربية نستخدم **(verb to be)** غالباً عند الترجمة إلي اللغة الإنجليزية.

مثال : إن تنشئة جيل واع هو السبيل الوحيد للتقدم ومسايرة ركب الحضارة.

– Bringing up a conscious generation is the only way to progress and coping with civilization.

3. لا نترجم (إن فى أول الجملة / أن بعد الأفعال الناقصة .....) إلي اللغة الإنجليزية.

مثال : عندما يتفهم المواطن مشاكل العصر يمكنه ان يشارك فى حلها.

– When a citizen understands the age problems, he/she can participate in solving them.

4. كلمة (أن) في منتصف الجملة وبعدها جملة تترجم إلي (**that**).

مثال : قال وزير التعليم أن التعليم هو العامل الأهم فى عملية تنمية وطننا.

– Education Minister said that education is the most important factor in the process of developing our country..

5. كلمة (أن) في منتصف الجملة وبعدها (فعل عادي) تترجم غالباً إلي **(to + inf.)**.

مثال : لقد قررت الحكومة أن تزيد الانتاج وتحسنه من اجل حماية الصناعة المحلية.

– The government has decided to increase and improve production to protect local industry.

6. كلمة (إن) الشرطية تترجم إلى **If** لأن معناها (إذا / لو).

مثال : إن تُذاكر جيدًا للامتحان القادم، ستنجح.

– If you study well for the next exam, you will succeed.

7. ترجمة اللام بمعانيها المختلفة :

ترجم اللام حسب معناها فى الجملة:

(أ) إذا استخدمت اللام للتعليل أي إذا كان معناها (كى / لكي / حتي / من أجل) نترجمها إلي :

to /in order to / so as to + المصدر / so that + جملة

مثال : أذهب إلي المدرسة لأتعلم مواد دراسية مختلفة.

– I go to school to learn different school subjects.

(ب) إذا استخدمت اللام بمعني (من أجل) نترجمها **(for)**

مثال: اشتريت لأخي هاتفاً محمولاً عندما أن حصل علي الدرجات النهائية:

– I bought a mobile for my brother when he got the full marks.

(جـ) عندما تشير اللام إلى الملكية أي إذا كان معناها (لدى / عند / يملك) نترجمها إلي **verb to have**:

مثال: لمصر دور رائد فى منطقة الشرق الأوسط.

– Egypt has a leading role in the Middle East area.

(د) عندما تشير اللام إلى التبعية نترجمها إلى of :

مثال: الشباب هم العمود الفقري للأمة.

- The youth are the backbone of the nation.

8 تترجم (مَن + فعل مضارع يشير إلى الجمع) إلى **those who**

مثال: مَن يكرسون وقتهم وجهدهم من أجل بلدهم يستحقون التكريم.

- Those who devote their time and effort for the sake of their country deserve to be honoured.

9 يترجم الأسلوب (من الـ...... أن ......) كما يلي:

It's + adj. + for + اسم أو ضمير + to + inf.

مثال: من الضروري علي كل مواطن أن يعمل بجد.

- It's important for every citizen to work hard.

It's + adj. + that + جملة

- It's important that every citizen work hard.

10 يترجم الأسلوب (من + صفة على وزن أفعل) كما يلي:

فاعل + is one of + superlative adjective

مثال : إن السياحة من أهم موارد العملة الصعبة لمصر.

- Tourism is one of the most important earners of hard currency for Egypt.

11 يترجم (علينا / عليك / عليكم / على ....../ لا بد / يجب ...... / يجدر بـ.......) كما يلي:

فاعل + should/ must + inf.

مثال : عليك ان تهتم بدراستك لان ذلك يساعدك علي النجاح في الحياة.

- You should pay attention to your study because this helps you to succeed in life.

12 يترجم الأسلوب (كلما ......) كما يلي:

the + comparative adjective ...... the + comparative adjective

مثال : كلما قرأت اكثر، كلما تعلمت أكثر.

- The more you read, the more you learn.

13 كلمة (كل) تترجم إلي (every) أو (all) حسب ما يتبعها:

مثال : كل أب مسئول عن عائلته (يتبعها مفرد).

- Every father is responsible for his family.

مثال : كل الآباء مسئولون عن عائلاتهم (يتبعها جمع).

- All fathers are responsible for their families.

14 تترجم (تعتبر / تعد / تمثل) عاده الى **verb to be:**

مثال : تعتبر الديمقراطية حجر الأساس لبناء مجتمع سليم.

- Democracy is/ is considered the cornerstone of building a sound society.

– تترجم (هو / هى / هم / هن...) اذا جاءت بعد فاعل الجملة عاده الى الى **verb to be:**

مثال : إن هوايتي المفضلة هي القراءة.

- Reading is my favourite hobby.

15 تترجم كلمة (هناك / يوجد) إلى **There is / There are**

مثال : توجد الكثير من المشاكل التى تحاول الحكومة جاهدة حلها.

- There are a lot of problems which the government tries hard to solve.

(16) عند ترجمة المفعول المطلق غالبًا ما يستخدم فعل ثم تحول الصفة إلي ظرف أو عبارة ظرفية تدل علي معناه.

مثال : إن تقدم أى أمة يعتمد اعتماداً كبيراً على شبابها والخدمات التى يمكن أن يقدموها لبلدهم.

- The progress of any nation depends greatly on its youth and the services they can render their country.

(17) يترجم المضاف والمضاف إليه باستخدام **of** بينهم أو نبدأ بالمضاف إليه ثم المضاف.

مثال : إن تلوث المياه قضية عالمية ينبغي علي جميع دول العالم حلها.

- Water pollution is an international issue that all world countries should solve.

(18) عند ترجمة الفعل من اللغة العربية إلي الإنجليزية:

- جملة تدل علي حقيقة ثابتة أو عادة متكررة → **Sub. + V/V-s,es,ies**	- جملة تدل علي حدث مستمر في الوقت الحالي → **Sub. + am, is, are + V-ing.**

مثال : يساعد الماء كل الكائنات الحيه علي الحياه.

- Water helps all living creatures to live.

مثال : تحاول الدولة ان تقيم مشروعات ضخمة في الوقت الحالي.

- Currently, the state is trying to set up great projects.

- جملة تدل علي حدث ماض مذكور توقيت حدوثه → **Sub. + past simple**	- جملة تدل علي حدث ماض له تأثير علي الحاضر → **Sub. + have, has + p.p.**

مثال : اتصلت بمستشفي النيل أمس.

- I called the Nile Hospital yesterday.

مثال : أصبح الكمبيوتر هاماً في حياة كل فرد.

- The computer has become important in everyone's life.

- جملة تدل علي عادة متكررة من الماضي توقفت في الحاضر → **Sub. + used to + inf.**	- جملة تعبر علي حدث مستمر في الماضي (كان + فعل مضارع) → **Sub. + was, were + V-ing.**

مثال : كان الناس في الماضي يسافرون بالقطارات والسفن.

- People used to travel by trains and ships in the past.

مثال : كان أحمد يلعب عندما وصل أبي.

- Ahmed was playing when dad arrived.

- جملة تدل علي المستقبل (سأفعل - لن أفعل) → **Sub. + Future Tense**	- جملة تدل علي الإحتمال (قد + فعل مضارع) → **Sub. + may + inf.**

مثال: ستنفذ الحكومة العديد من المشروعات لتوفير فرص عمل للشباب.

- The government is carrying out a lot of projects to provide job opportunities for the youth.

مثال: قد يتوفر علاج للأمراض الخطيرة مثل الايدز في المستقبل القريب.

- A treatment for dangerous diseases like AIDS may be available in the near future.

(19) اذا جاء فعل بعد حرف الجر يأتي في صيغة **(V-ing.)**

مثال : تهدف الحكومة لتحقيق الرخاء والاستقرار لوطننا.

- The government aims at achieving welfare and stability for our country.

(20) الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية تأتي قبل الموصوف ولا تجمع (ويسبقها **a/an** اذا سبقت اسم مفرد معدود).

مثال : مصر غنية بطبيعتها الرائعة وجوها البديع ومشاهدها الجميلة وتراثها العظيم.

- Egypt is rich in its fascinating nature, wonderful weather, beautiful scenery and great heritage.

لكن الصفة تأتى بعد الموصوف مع الكلمات التالية :

something / everything / anything / nothing / somebody / anywhere

فنحن نقول something interesting وليس interesting something

21 إذا وجدت مفعولاً يليه فعلاً لابد من الفصل بينهما بضمير وصل.

مثال : أعطانى عمر هدية أسعدتنى كثيرا..

- Omar gave me a present that pleased me a lot.

22 ظروف التكرار تأتى قبل الفعل الأصلى أما إذا كان الفعل الأصلى فعل (يكون **be**) فتأتى بعده:

مثال : عادةً ما يكون الطقس دافئاً في مصر في الشتاء.

- The weather is usually warm in Egypt in winter.

مثال : يأتى السياح عادة إلى مصر لمشاهدة أثارها التى ليس لها مثيل.

- Tourists usually come to Egypt to see its unique monuments.

23 أفعال يليها حرف جر في اللغة العربية ولا يليها حرف جر في اللغة الانجليزية.

affect	يؤثر على	arrest	يقبض على
enjoy	يستمتع بـ/ ينعم بـ	contain	يحتوى على
feel	يشعر بـ	include	يشتمل على
impress	يؤثر في	celebrate	يحتفل بـ
donate	يتبرع بـ	join	يلتحق بـ
catch	يلحق بـ	fear	يخشى أن
admire	يعجب بـ	sacrifice	يضحى بـ
eliminate	يقضى على	defend	يدافع عن
recognize	يتعرف على	admit	يعترف بـ
risk	يخاطر بـ	overcome	يتغلب على
praise	يشيد بـ	obtain / get	يحصل على
reduce / decrease	يقلل من	keep / conserve	يحافظ على

مثال : ان المتهم يدافع عن نفسه ضد أى اتهام.

- The accused man defends himself against any accusation.

24 الجملة التي تبدأ بمصدر في اللغة العربية تبدأ بـ **(V-ing.)** في اللغة الإنجليزية:

مثال : إن ممارسة الرياضة تساعد على تحسين صحتك.

- Doing sports helps improve your health.

25 بعض الأفعال مثل (يقوم بـ..../ يعمل على / يتم......) تحذف نهائيا أو تُستبدل بفعل مناسب للمعنى.

مثال : تقوم الحكومة ببناء المدارس والمستشفيات لتحسين الخدمات التعليمية والصحية.

- The government builds schools and hospitals to improve education and health services.

مثال : تعمل الدولة على حل مشاكل البطالة والإسكان.

- The state tries to solve the problems of unemployment and housing.

26 الضمير المستتر في اللغة العربية يجب إظهاره عند الترجمة.

مثال: لن نستطيع التغلب على مشكلاتنا الاقتصادية إلا بزيادة الإنتاج والتصدير.

- We will not be able to overcome our economic problems unless we increase production and exportation.

27 ظرف الزمان يوضع غالباً أول الجملة أو آخرها.

مثال: نحتفل كل عام بشم النسيم.

- Every year, we celebrate Sham El-Nessim.
- **OR:** We celebrate Sham El-Nessim every year.

28 إذا كان فعل الجملة الإنجليزية في المجهول يفضل ترجمة للعربية في المعلوم أو يستخدم (تم) يليها إسم مشتق من الفعل الأصلي:

- **EX:** Overpopulation problem can be solved by building new cities in the desert.

يمكن حل مشكلة التكدس السكاني عن طريق بناء مدن جديدة في الصحراء.

29 الأسماء المعنوية / الأسماء التي لا تعد / الأسماء الجمع لا تسبقها أداة المعرفة **the** عند ترجمتها (بمعني عام).

مثال: إن العمل الجاد والعلم هما مفتاح التقدم.

- Hard work and science are the key to progress.

مثال: يعمل العلماء بجد من أجل إيجاد بدائل جديدة للطاقة غير المتجددة.

- Scientists work hard to find alternatives to non-renewable energy.

مثال: إن الماء هو مفتاح الحياة.

- Water is the key to life.

ماذا تفعل إذا واجهتك كلمه لا تعرف معناها؟

إذا واجهتك كلمة لا تعرف معناها في الترجمة من الممكن ان تتغلب على ذلك بأكثر من طريقة:

(أ) - استخدم كلمه تساوى الكلمة الصعبة من حيث المعنى.

مثال: تذخر المكتبات العامة بالكثير من الكتب الجيدة.

- إذا كنت لا تعرف معنى «تذخر بـ» بالإنجليزية ابحث عن معنى يساويها باللغة العربية ستجد كلمة سهله مثل «مليئة بـ» فتكون الترجمة:

- Public libraries <u>are full</u> of good books. (are full of = abound with)

(ب) غير الكلمة من اسم إلى (فعل/ صفه/ ظرف....) أو العكس:

مثال: تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية ضرورة لكل الطلاب.

ضرورة (نحولها إلى: ضروري **necessary**)

- Learning English is necessary for all students.

(جـ) إعادة صياغة الجملة بشرط عدم تغيير المعنى:

مثال: يجب أن يمد الأغنياء يد العون للفقراء.

نعيد صياغتها فتكون : الأغنياء يجب أن يساعدوا الفقراء

- The rich should help the poor.

احفظ التعبيرات الآتية حيث تساعدك على بناء جملة سليمة:

There should be ………	- يجب أن يكون هناك ……
for the good of ………	- لصالح / لخير / لمصلحه ……
We should double our efforts to ………	- يتحتم علينا / علينا أن نضاعف جهودنا لكي ……
We live in the age of ………	- نحن نعيش في عصر الـ ……
The government pays great attention to ………	- تهتم الحكومة إهتماماً كبيراً بـ ……
We should make (good/the best) use of ………	- علينا أن نحسن استغلال ……
stand on equal footing with ………	- تقف علي قدم المساواه مع ……
play an important role in ………	- يلعب دوراً هاماً في ……
We owe much to ………	- ندين بالكثير لـ ……
in the form of ………	- تتمثل في ……
It is our duty to …	- إن من واجبنا أن ……
It is reasonable that ………	- من المعقول أن ………
It is not easy to ………	- ليس من السهل أن ………
We can't do without ………	- لا يمكننا الإستغناء عن
The state tries hard to ………	- تسعى الدوله جاهده لكي ……
exert great effort	- يبذل مجهود كبير
spare no effort	- لا يدخر وسعاً
We don't exaggerate when we say that ………	- لا نبالغ عندما نقول أن ……
We should do our best to ………	- يجب أن نبذل أقصى جهد لكي ……
improve the standard of living	- يحسن مستوى المعيشة
lead a happy / peaceful / quiet life	- يحيا حياة سعيدة / هادئة
achieve prosperity and welfare	- يحقق الرخاء و الرفاهية
overcome (solve) our problems	- نتغلب على مشاكلنا
develop the individual awareness	- ينمي وعي الأفـــراد
stand against war and terrorism	- يقف ضد الحرب والإرهاب
play an important part in ………	- يلعب دورا هاماً في ……
devote / dedicate (himself) to ………	- يكرس حياته من أجل ……
work seriously and sincerely	- يعمل بجد وإخلاص
We can't imagine life in the absence of ………	- لا يمكن ان نتخيل الحياه في غياب ……
for the sake of ………	- من أجل ……
cooperate together	- نتعاون معاً
put an end to ………	- يضع حداً لـ ……
instead of ……… = rather than	- بدلاً من ……
find alternative sources of energy	- يجد مصادر بديلة للطاقة
This problem leads to ………	- هذه المشكلة تؤدى إلي ……
The problem of over-crowdedness	- مشكلة شدة الازدحام
The problem of over population / food shortage	- مشكلة تزايد السكان / نقص الغذاء

be marked by stress	- يتسم بالتعب النفسي
offer (us) many services	- يقدم (لنا) خدمات كثيرة
We are grateful to	- نحن شاكرين لـ ......
help (the handicapped) overcome	- يساعد (المعوقين) على التغلب على ......
supply ...... with = provide ...... with	- يزود بـ ......
the sense of duty / loyalty / belonging	- الشعور بالواجب / بالولاء / بالإنتماء
create a good citizen	- يخلق مواطن صالح
have / has a great effect on	- لها أثر كبير على ......
everywhere all over the world	- في كل مكان في أنحاء العالم
We have to stand firmly against	- علينا أن نقف بثبات ضد ......
in the field of economy	- في المجال الاقتصادى
a revolution in information resources	- ثورة في مصادر المعرفة
strengthen our ties with	- يقوي علاقتنا مع ......
In this way, ...	- بهذه الطريقة ......
With the help of	- بمساعدة ......
one of the advantages of .... is that	- أحد مميزات ...... هو أن ......
bring out radical changes	- يجلب تغييرات جذرية
the welfare of man	- رفاهية الإنسان
seek peace	- يسعى للسلام
the spread of crime	- إنتشار الجريمة
We must exploit all our natural resources	- يجب أن نستغل كل مواردنا الطبيعية
.... goes side by side with	- ...... تسير جنب إلى جنب مع ......
It's no use = it's no good	- لا جدوى من
a means to an end	- وسيلة لغاية
to bring prices down	- لكي تخفض الأسعار
one of our most difficult problems	- أحد أصعب مشاكلنا
in a bad need of	- في حاجة ماسة لـ ......
thanks to	- بفضل ......
Egypt is rich in its fascinating nature	- إن مصر غنية بطبيعتها الخلابة
It is the only way to	- إنه السبيل الوحيد لـ ......
From my own point of view, ...	- في رأيي ......
Mass media plays a vital role in	- تلعب وسائل الإعلام دوراً حيوياً في ......
.... is considered evidence for	- ...... تعتبر دليل على ......
pave the way to	- يمهد الطريق لـ ......
We can't live apart from	- لا نستطيع أن نعيش في معزل عن ......
cover a long distance	- يقطع شوطاً طويلاً
on the occasion of	- بمناسبة ......
part and parcel of	- جزءاً لا يتجزأ في
cast light on	- يلقي الضوء على

do (perform) a duty	- يؤدي واجب
render services to	- يسدي خدمات لـ
the only outlet for	- المخرج الوحيد لـ
in all possible ways	- بكل الطرق الممكنة
by different means	- بوسائل مختلفة
by all means	- بكل السبل
witness to the age	- شاهد على العصر
a means not an end	- وسيلة لا غاية
take into consideration / account	- يأخذ في الاعتبار
from cradle to death = from womb to tomb	- من المهد للحد
place hopes upon	- يعقد الآمال على
there is no doubt that	- مما لا شك فيه أن ....
The government does its best to	- تبذل الحكومه قصارى جهدها لكي....
The state pays great attention to..............	- تولي الدوله اهتماما كبيرا بـ
It is extremely important to....................	- من المهم للغاية أن
It is our duty to	- إن من واجبنا أن
....is the main concern of..................	- (....) هو الشغل الشاغل لـ
....is a double-edged weapon	- (....) سلاح ذو حدين
....is a mixed-blessing	- (....) نعمه ونقمه
It is crystal clear that...............................	- من الواضح تماما أن
I am not exaggerating when I say that......	- لا أبالغ عندما أقول أن.
There is no doubt that.....................	- .....مما لا شك فيه أن
It goes without saying that = Needless to say,	- غنى عن البيان أن/ من نافلة القول أن
We can't do without	- لا يمكن ان نستغنى عن
There should be	- يجب أن يكون هناك
We should double our efforts to	- يتحتم علينا / علينا أن نضاعف جهودنا لكي
We live in the age of	- نحن نعيش فى عصر الـ
We should make good use of	- علينا أن نحسن استغلال
stand on equal footing with	- تقف على قدم المساواه مع
play an important role in	- يلعب دوراً هاما فى
We owe much to	ندين بالكثير لـ
a witness to the age	شاهد على العصر
The state is trying hard to .... -	تسعى الدوله جاهده لكى
from now on	من الآن فصاعدا
limited to	قاصر على
appeal to	تستهوى/ تروق إلى

is not restricted to	مقصورا على
meet our needs = satisfy our needs	احتياجاتنا
people with special needs	الاحتياجات الخاصة
in cold blood	بارد / مع سبق الإصرار والترصد
of no avail = in vain	جدوى / بلا طائل

Translation

A: Translate into Arabic:

1. Anger, fear, or the shock of sudden sorrow brings physical changes in our bodies. The digestion is shut down, the blood pressure is raised, the heart speeds up, and the skin becomes cold.
2. On 15 April 1912, the Titanic disappeared into the icy depths of the North Atlantic. Some 1,500 people died. After striking a huge iceberg, the 46,500-ton vessel sank in less than three hours.
3. The definition of natural disasters is any catastrophic event that is caused by nature or the natural processes of the earth. The severity of a disaster is measured in lives lost, economic loss, and the ability of the population to rebuild.
4. Sphinx is a legendary monster with a human head and a lion's body. In ancient Egypt, where the idea originated, the head was usually a portrait of the reigning pharaoh.
5. Literary and artistic creativity have generally been highly valued by the French people, and such activities have flourished there and gone on to spread the influence of French culture throughout the world.
6. Graffiti originally was the term used for inscriptions found on the walls of ancient ruins. But it has evolved to include any decorations inscribed on rocks or walls. However, some people consider graffiti an art form.
7. Allah has granted Egypt a lot of natural resources. If they are well used, we will become one of the richest countries. Egypt deserves a distinguished position among great nations.
8. Countries undertake mega projects to solve the unemployment problem, by providing job opportunities for citizens among the most important priorities and tasks of governments in all countries of the world.
9. Ambition and patience are the most important qualities that we should have to be able to succeed. However, to achieve success, concentration and determination are a must.
10. Governments must pay attention to sport, as it is one of the means that achieve communication and understanding between peoples, and it can also be a way to pave the way for effective political and economic relations between the countries of the world.
11. It has become clear that great efforts must be exerted to provide enough food, housing, education, medical assistance and jobs for the over-increasing population in Egypt.

12. A natural disaster is the result of a natural hazard - such as flood, hurricane, volcanic eruption, earthquake, or landslide - that affects the environment, and leads to financial, environmental and human losses
13. Every day, the average person inhales about 20,000 liters of air. Air pollution includes all contaminants found in the atmosphere. These dangerous substances can be either in the form of gases or particles.
14. Egypt has always been known as the " Birthplace of Civilization" due to its long and rich history. Currently, we are to restore our glories to catch up with the progress achieved in developed countries.
15. Hibernation is like deep sleep. This allows the animals to save their energy when there is no food. These animals' bodies go through several changes during their hibernation.

B: Translate into English:

١- لقد كانت الطيور على مر العصور مصدر عجب لكل من رآها وهي تطير أو استمع إلى أصواتها الحلوة كما أنها فريدة من نوعها لأنها الحيوانات الوحيدة المغطاة بالريش.

٢- لمعسكرات الشباب فوائد كبيرة لأنها تعلمهم التعاون والاعتماد على الذات والانضباط والتضحية من أجل الآخرين كما أنها تساعدهم على تطوير مهارات اجتماعية وعاطفية ومعرفية هامة.

٣- مصر في حاجة ماسة إلى الأشخاص الذين لديهم القدرة علي الابتكار والأشخاص المخلصين الذين يريدون أن يضعوا مصر في طليعة الأمم المتقدمة.

٤- ما هو أفضل تعريف للصديق الحق؟ من وجهه نظري الصديق الحق هو الشخص الملم بنقاط قوى وضعف صديقه وهو الذي يبقى معه حين يتخلى عنه الآخرون.

٥- نفخر بأن التعليم هو المشروع القومي الأول في مصر و يهدف نظامنا التعليمي إلى خلق جيل من العلماء القادرين على وقف احتكار الدول المتقدمة للعلوم والتكنولوجيا.

٦- إن رغبة مصر في إنشاء مفاعل نووي لا تتعارض أبدًا مع دعوتها لجعل الشرق الأوسط منطقة خالية من أسلحة الدمار الشامل.

٧- للهوايات فوائد كثيرة حيث تساعد صاحبها علي تفريغ الطاقة السلبيّة بما تشمله من قلقٍ واكتئابٍ وضغوطاتٍ في الدراسة أو العمل أو المشاكل الأسريّة بطرق سليمة.

٨- تحتوي البيئة التي يعيشُ فيها الإنسانُ علي العديد من أشكالِ التلوّث التي تؤثّر علي حياته وصحته، وأحد هذه الأشكال هيَ التلوّث الضوضائي. تنتج الضوضاء عن الأنشطة البشريّة التي تصدر أصواتا مرتفعة.

٩- لا شك أن كلنا مغرمون بالسفر الذي يعد من الأمور المثيرة للاهتمام، فمن الممتع أن نرى أماكن جديدة وبلدان أخرى، وغالبا يسافر الناس إما للمتعة أو للعمل.

١٠- المعلم هو حجر الزاوية في العملية التعليمية، فهو ناقل المعرفة الرئيسي بها، وهو صاحب رسالة مقدسة على مر العصور لذا يجب على الدولة الاهتمام به ورعايته.

١١- لن نتمكن من التغلب على مشاكلنا الاقتصادية حتى نزيد إنتاجنا ونشجع الصادرات ونستقطب المزيد من الاستثمارات بهدف جلب المزيد من العملات الصعبة.

١٢- التدخين والتلوث من أهم أسباب انتشار الأمراض القاتلة. سيجارة واحدة فقط هي المسئولة عن الارتفاع الكبير في مخاطر الإصابة بسرطان الرئة.

١٣- المواطنون الصالحون على استعداد للتضحية بأنفسهم عندما تكون بلادهم في خطر. المواطن الصالح يلتزم بجميع القوانين ويسعى إلى ضمان السلام والوئام في المجتمع.

١٤- من حقك أن تعبر عن رأيك بحرية ولكن يجب أن تحترم رأي الآخرين، طالما لم يصدر منهم إيذاء أو اهانة لك فحرية التعبير عن الرأي حق لكل فرد.

١٥- الأسعار المرتفعة ونقص الطعام هما المشكلتين الرئيسيتين التي تعاني منهما كل دول العالم وذلك ينذر بمزيد من الجوع والفقر وخاصة في الدول النامية.

Final Revision Units (1 - 6)

Unit (1)

The most important vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
infect (v.ed)	يُعدِي / ينقل مرض	muscles (n / v.d)	عضلات / نفوذ / قوة
infection (n)	عدوَى / مرض	boost (v.ed)	يدعم / يقوِّي - يعزز
infectious (adj)	مُعدِي	cell (n)	خلية/ زنزانة
infected (adj)	مصاب بالعدوى	immune system	الجهاز المناعي بالجسم
perform (v.ed)	يقوم بـ/ يؤدي / يعزف/ يمثل	virus (n)	فيروس
performance (n)	أداء / عرض	organ (n)	عضو من اعضاء الجسم / آلة موسيقية
react (v.ed)	يتفاعل / يستجيب	play (n)	مسرحية
reaction (n)	رد فعل / استجابة	character (n)	شخصية روائية او تمثيلية - صفات
severe (adj)	حاد / قاسي / عنيف	operate (v.d)	يشغل / يجري عملية
technique (n)	أسلوب فني/ طريقة	operation (n)	تشغيل / عملية
technician (n)	اخصائى تقنى	allow (v.ed)	يسمح بـ / لـ
technical (adj)	تقنيّ	allowance (n)	اعانة -مصروف - جرعة مسموح بها
heart (n)	قلب / محور	guide (v.d / n)	يرشد - مرشد
lungs (n)	الرئتين	guidance (n)	نصيحة - استشارة / ارشاد
brain (n)	مُخ / ذكاء	third (n)	ثُلث
duke (n)	دوق - حاكم	sword (n)	سيف
act (n / v.ed)	فصل في مسرحية- فعل/ عمل- يمثل	duty (n)	واجب / مهمة
action (n)	نشاط / أداء	title (n)	لقب / عنوان كتاب او رواية
scene (n)	مشهد في فيلم او مسرحية / موقع	foolish (adj)	أحمق / سخيف
sir (n)	سيدي (أسلوب مؤدب في الخطاب)	shout about	يبدى سعادة أو فخر
kingdom (n)	مملكة	give away	يمنح - يهدي
answer (n / v.ed)	إجابة/ رد - يجيب/ يرد	giveaway (n)	هدية ترويجية
divide (v.ed)	يقسِّم	riches (n)	أشياء ثمينة / ثروات
beauty (n)	جَمال		

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People with this virus may feel perfectly well, but they can still .... others.
   a. protect b. collect c. infect d. respect

2. The children all got a/an .... in their eyes after swimming in the polluted water of the lake.
   a. infection b. direction c. connection d. collection
3. During the interview, they asked me to .... a few tasks on the computer to test my computer skills.
   a. inform b. transplant c. transport d. perform
4. - How did your father .... when you told him that your bicycle had been stolen?
   - He got angry.
   a. react b. contact c. attract d. extract
5. She suffered from .... depression after losing her job.
   a. angry b. spicy c. helpful d. severe
6. The actress gave a really professional .... in the master scene of the play.
   a. difference b. performance c. ignorance d. conference
7. There are various .... for dealing with industrial pollution.
   a. antiques b. techniques c. celebrities d. traditions
8. The heart .... blood through the blood vessels of the circulatory system الجهاز الدوري.
   a. pumps b. serves c. survives d. inherits
9. Smoking is specifically related to about 87% of .... cancer cases in this country.
   a. shoulder b. pumpkin c. lung d. curry
10. You really have to use your .... if you want to solve this puzzle. Only a genius can solve it.
    a. forehead b. brain c. stomach d. chest
11. He wants to build up the .... in his arms, so he has begun lifting weights.
    a. puzzles b. battles c. metals d. muscles
12. Advertising on the internet hasn't .... our sales as much as we thought it might.
    a. boosted b. served c. deserved d. received
13. This new medicine is supposed to attack diseased .... and destroy them.
    a. patients b. occasions c. cells d. natives
14. Laughter lowers levels of stress and strengthens the .... system.
    a. heating b. immune c. visual d. lighting
15. What was your first .... to the news of your promotion to general manager? – I felt I was over the moon.
    a. section b. station c. reaction d. question
16. She caught some kind of terrible ...., and was sick for months.
    a. malware b. pumpkin c. virus d. option
17. When I was young, my parents didn't .... me to stay out after midnight until I was 18 years old.
    a. guide b. exit c. let d. allow
18. The patient is bleeding internally, and needs to be .... immediately.
    a. shouted about b. operated on c. given away d. knocked down
19. You need to have a careful heart .... before undergoing such a surgery.
    a. neglectance b. examination c. immunity d. performance

20. Animals living in the wild normally develop natural .... to diseases that kill those in zoos.
a. security b. capacity c. necessity d. immunity

Exercises on King Lear

21. The cartoon .... of Mickey Mouse was created by Walt Disney in 1928.
a. person b. operation c. heritage d. character

22. A .... is a story written to be performed by actors, especially in a theatre.
a. play b. novel c. film d. poem

23. The problem of King Lear is that he gave away his .... to his daughters who proved to be disloyal to him.
a. village b. boredom c. kingdom d. hut

24. The Princess donated a big part of her .... to children's charities.
a. beauty b. riches c. character d. servants

25. It is the .... of every citizen to respect the law.
a. duty b. cell c. organ d. pump

26. Mr. Ali's official .... in the company is general manager, but he sometimes helps in designs.
a. act b. address c. scene d. title

27. The company is promising that their new product will really be something to ....
a. give away b. eat out c. shout about d. give in

28. It was really .... of you to believe such a liar. I don't know how he was able to convince you.
a. foolish b. intelligent c. smart d. kind

29. A/An .... is a man with the highest social rank outside the royal family.
a. king b. prince c. duke d. soldier

30. Every year, my sister .... all her old clothes to her housemaid.
a. gives way b. gives in c. gives up d. gives away

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You .... pay to go in the museum. It is free to enter.
a. must b. mustn't c. have to d. don't have to

2. Leila .... work hard if she wants to pass her exams.
a. doesn't have to b. mustn't c. need d. has to

3. You .... forget to bring a coat to the mountains. It will be cold!
a. don't have to b. mustn't c. must d. have got to

4. You .... come to the supermarket with me. I can do it on my own.
   a. don't have to b. must c. have to d. mustn't
5. You .... take food into the library. It's not allowed.
   a. needn't b. don't have to c. mustn't d. don't need
6. You .... use the elevators if the building is on fire. It's too dangerous.
   a. needn't to b. must c. have to d. mustn't
7. I was late for school this morning because I .... wait a long time for the bus.
   a. mustn't b. don't have to c. had to d. must
8. You .... cross the road when the light is red.
   a. mustn't b. don't have to c. need to d. must
9. You .... wait for the bus. I can give you a lift.
   a. needn't b. must c. needn't have d. have to
10. You .... done the washing up, mom. I was planning to do it after school.
    a. mustn't have b. didn't have c. needn't have d. shouldn't
11. You .... stay and have lunch with us. We have turkey for lunch. I know you like it very much.
    a. needn't b. need to c. mustn't d. must
12. Is it a/an .... that I attach my personal photo to the application form? Yes, you have to.
    a. must b. have to c. need to d. needn't
13. You .... go and look for a teller machine. I can lend you the money you need now.
    a. needn't b. don't need c. don't have d. needn't have
14. When you go to Alexandria, you .... miss visiting the old castle of Qaitbay and Alexandria Library. They are amazing.
    a. don't have to b. mustn't c. needn't d. must
15. Must I write the full names of all the members of my family in the application form? – No, you .... It's optional.
    a. mustn't b. must c. have to d. needn't
16. Ali isn't late for school; he .... hurry.
    a. mustn't b. don't have to c. needn't d. has to
17. You .... worry. You still have a lot of time to catch the train.
    a. don't have to b. must c. should d. have to
18. You .... try my sister's cake now. It's really delicious!
    a. needn't b. had to c. must d. mustn't
19. You .... pass a driving test to drive a car in Egypt.
    a. mustn't b. needn't c. have to d. must
20. Is it a/an .... to take this medicine?
    a. advice b. unnecessary c. necessary d. must
21. At an airport, I .... show my passport.
    a. can't b. don't have to c. have to d. shouldn't

22. There are a lot of tomatoes in the fridge. You .... buy any.
a. must b. have to c. needn't d. had to

23. Unfortunately, my friend broke his leg and .... go to hospital where he received proper treatment.
a had to b. mustn't have c. has to d. didn't have to

24. Photography is not allowed in the museum. This means ....
a. you don't have to take photographs b. you must take photographs
c. you need to take photographs d. you mustn't take photographs

25. A: Shall I post the letter now?
B; No, You .... post it now. You can post it tomorrow.
a needn't b. mustn't c. must d. have to

TEST 1 Unit 1

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How many litres of blood does the .... pump every hour?
a. lung b. stomach c. shoulder d heart

2. What does a child have to do before they .... up a new sport? – They need to have a medical examination.
a. look b. rise c. take d. offer

3. The whole staff in the hospital were worried because the minister had a serious .... and was about to die.
a. fiction b. safety c. calmness d. bacteria

4. I think I dialed the wrong number because someone I don't know .... the phone.
a. answered b. replied c. operated d. smashed

5. During the lesson, the teacher .... the class into four groups. Each group had a task to do.
a. broke b. shared c. cut d. divided

6. Mona is really economical; she .... more bread; she actually has much in the fridge.
a. needn't have bought b. didn't have to buy
c. should have bought d. had to buy

7. I want to do a course to know how to .... first aid.
a. make b. undergo c. perform d. come

8. My father stayed in bed this morning because he .... to work. It was his day off.
a. didn't have to do b. needn't have gone
c. mustn't have gone d. mustn't go

9. A: What were you doing at the bank yesterday?
B: I .... my bank manager for a loan, and luckily, I managed to get it.
a. must have asked b. need to ask
c. had to ask d. can't have asked

22. There are a lot of tomatoes in the fridge. You .... buy any.
   a. must   b. have to   c. needn't   d. had to
23. Unfortunately, my friend broke his leg and .... go to hospital where he received proper treatment.
   a. had to   b. mustn't have   c. has to   d. didn't have to
24. Photography is not allowed in the museum. This means ....
   a. you don't have to take photographs   b. you must take photographs
   c. you need to take photographs   d. you mustn't take photographs
25. A: Shall I post the letter now?
   B; No, You .... post it now. You can post it tomorrow.
   a. needn't   b. mustn't   c. must   d. have to



TEST 1 Unit 1

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How many litres of blood does the .... pump every hour?
   a. lung   b. stomach   c. shoulder   d. heart
2. What does a child have to do before they .... up a new sport? – They need to have a medical examination.
   a. look   b. rise   c. take   d. offer
3. The whole staff in the hospital were worried because the minister had a serious .... and was about to die.
   a. fiction   b. safety   c. calmness   d. bacteria
4. I think I dialed the wrong number because someone I don't know .... the phone.
   a. answered   b. replied   c. operated   d. smashed
5. During the lesson, the teacher .... the class into four groups. Each group had a task to do.
   a. broke   b. shared   c. cut   d. divided
6. Mona is really economical; she .... more bread; she actually has much in the fridge.
   a. needn't have bought   b. didn't have to buy
   c. should have bought   d. had to buy
7. I want to do a course to know how to .... first aid.
   a. make   b. undergo   c. perform   d. come
8. My father stayed in bed this morning because he .... to work. It was his day off.
   a. didn't have to do   b. needn't have gone
   c. mustn't have gone   d. mustn't go
9. A: What were you doing at the bank yesterday?
   B: I .... my bank manager for a loan, and luckily, I managed to get it.
   a. must have asked   b. need to ask
   c. had to ask   d. can't have asked

10. I was just about to buy a new pair of glasses when my mother rang to say that she had found my glasses in the kitchen. So I .... a new pair after all.
   a. needn't have bought
   b. mustn't buy
   c. don't have to buy
   d. didn't need to buy

11. You .... anything until after your operation. The nurses will tell you when it is all right.
   a. mustn't eat
   b. don't have to eat
   c. needn't eat
   d. can't have eaten

12. We'd better go home now. It is getting late and we .... very early tomorrow for work.
   a. can't have got
   b. mustn't get up
   c. needn't get up
   d. have to get up

13. - I have brought two big bottles of Coca Cola.
   - Thank you very much, but you .... anything. We have enough of it.
   a. mustn't have brought
   b. needn't have brought
   c. can't have brought
   d. won't have brought

14. I .... my room yesterday; my sister had already tidied it.
   a. don't have to tidy
   b. didn't have to tidy
   c. had to tidy
   d. must have tidied

15. I'm sorry for not visiting you last night; I .... see my doctor.
   a. needn't
   b. didn't have to
   c. had to
   d. must

16. You are wasteful; you .... more sugar. We already have a lot at home.
   a. can't have bought
   b. had to buy
   c. didn't have to buy
   d. needn't have bought

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

When people are ill with a non-life threatening condition, they often see a General Practitioner (GP). These doctors generally work in surgeries rather than hospitals.

As the name suggests, GPs are doctors who do not have a specialty. They are able to diagnose and treat all the possible diseases and problems that patients might have. They can treat and manage most illnesses and perform some minor surgeries in their practice. Then for more serious cases they refer the patient to a specialist who works in a hospital.

If you are ill and need to see a GP, you will need to make an appointment. Sometimes you can just walk into the surgery and see a doctor, but that is not very likely as GPs are normally very busy and all their appointment times are fully booked. If you are too ill to wait you have to go to a hospital and visit the accident and emergency department.

GPs also make house-calls to see elderly people who might be ill and need the doctor to give them medicine or to check on them and makes sure they are ok.

If you are ill, a GP normally prescribes you medicine and tells you to go away for a few days before you go back and visit them again. The GP also explains how you can have a better lifestyle that could prevent you from becoming ill. Once you have your prescription you need to visit a pharmacy to get the medicine the doctor prescribed you.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where do GPs normally work?
   a. In a hospital
   b. In a school
   c. In a theater
   d. In a mobile vehicle
2. Why do you often have to wait for long to see a GP?
   a. Very often, their appointments are fully booked.
   b. To make sure you are really ill.
   c. The GP will have enough work to do each day.
   d. You need to travel a long way to see them.
3. What sort of person will most likely be visited by a GP in their own home?
   a. A new born baby.
   b. An old person.
   c. Someone with a serious illness.
   d. GPs do not visit patients in their houses.
4. What do GPs do as well as making ill people better?
   a. They give advice about how to not become ill.
   b. They help the families of people who have died.
   c. They participate in local community activities.
   d. They sell medicine.

B: Answer the following questions:

5. In your opinion, what makes a specialist different from a GP?
6. If you had a heart disease, would you see a GP? Why / Why not?
7. Suggest a suitable title for the passage.
8. Find words in the passage that have similar meanings to ....
   a. not serious
   b. home visits

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

William Shakespeare was an English playwright, poet, and actor. He was widely regarded as the greatest writer in the English language and the world's greatest dramatist.

B: Translate into English:

لا تتطلب الإسعافات الأولية أن يكون الشخص طبيبًا كي يمارسها، ولكن عليه أن يكون قد تدرب عليها حتى لا يقوم بأخطاء تؤذي المصاب، وأول ما يجب تعلمه هو عدم القيام بأي خطوة لم يتدرب عليها لأن المصاب ليس حقلًا للتجارب.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

The preventive measures that must be taken to stop the spread of dangerous diseases

Unit 1 تدريبـــات الأزهـــر الشريف

1 Find the mistakes and correct them:

1. Must you wearing that yellow tie? (........)
2. She had to done exactly the way she was told. (........)
3. You don't have to breathe a word about this. It's top secret. (........)
4. I needn't forget to buy some sugar. We don't have any. (........)
5. I mustn't wash the car every morning. A little boy comes and washes it. (........)
6. You don't have to visit us at our new house. It will please us very much. (........)
7. I had to go now, or I'll miss the train. (........)
8. All cyclists had better wear helmets. It's a law. (........)
9. You haven't written this report yourself, sir. I could have written it for you if you had told me. (........)
10. This car causes me a lot of trouble. I shouldn't buy it. (........)

2 Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets to keep the same meaning:

1. You can go shopping with me or stay home. It's up to you. **(don't have to)**

....

2. I'd be very happy if you stayed for a cup of coffee with me. **(must)**

....

3. It wasn't necessary for you to buy all this fruit. We have enough of it. **(needn't)**

....

4. Good revision before exams is extremely important. **(must)**

....

5. There are many emails in my mail box that need to be replied to. **(have to)**

....

Unit (2)

The most important vocabulary

Word	Meaning
amount (n) (v.ed)	كمية / قدر - يساوي / يبلُغ
celebrate (v.d)	يحتفل بـ
celebration (n)	احتفال
celebrity (n)	شخصية مشهورة / شُهرة
eat out (v. ate – eaten)	يأكل خارج المنزل
get together (v. got)	يجتمع / يتجمع
occasion (n)	مناسبة
occasional (adj)	عَرَضي (لا يحدث بانتظام)
prepare (v.d)	يجهز / يعدّ / يحضِّر
preparation (n)	تجهيز / تحضير
preparatory (adj)	إعدادي / تمهيدي
serve (v.d)	يخدم على المائدة / يقدم خدمة
service (n) (v.d)	خدمة/ فحص السيارة - يفحص سيارة
traditional (adj)	تقليدي
tradition (n)	تقليد / عُرف
salty (adj)	مالح
my heart is broken	قلبي يتحطم / أشعر بالحزن الشديد
deserve (v.d)	يستحق
send away (v.sent)	يبعِد أو ينفي شخص
ill (adj)	مريض / سيئ
anger (n) (v.ed)	غضب / يُغضِب
inheritance (n)	إرث / ميراث / تراث
inherit (v.ed)	يرث
heritage (n)	إرث / تراث
survive (v.d)	ينجو / يبقى حيًا
survival (n)	النجاة / البقاء على قيد الحياة
survivor (n)	ناجي / على قيد الحياة بعد كارثة
popular (adj)	رائج / محبوب
popularity (n)	شعبية / رواج
rare (adj)	غير كامل النضج - نادر الوجود
special (adj)	خاص / مميز
expensive (adj)	غالي الثمن
spicy (adj)	حار
sweet (adj) (n)	حلو المذاق/ لطيف - حلوى
personally (adv)	بشكل شخصي / من وجهة النظر الشخصية
personal (adj)	شخصي
repeat (v-ed)	يكرر
repetition (n)	تكرار
option (n)	اختيار
optional (adj)	اختياري
loyalty (n)	ولاء / إخلاص
loyal (adj)	مخلص / وفي
exit (v.ed) (n)	يخرج - مَخرَج
lie (v.d) (n)	يكذب - كذبة
liar (n)	كذاب
trust (v.ed) (n)	يثق في - ثقة
deceive (v.d)	يخدع
income (n)	دخل / ايراد

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The volume of traffic on roads has increased dramatically in recent years. The word "volume" in this context is a synonym of ....
   a. amount b. quality c. number d. popularity
2. The coffee I drink here has distinctive taste and smell. The word "distinctive" here is closest in meaning to ....
   a. common b. ordinary c. normal d. special

3. Congratulations on your promotion. We must go out and .... !
   a. operate b. delegate c. celebrate d. generate
4. Nowadays, wedding .... cost too much money.
   a. operations b. celebrations c. presentations d. conversations
5. It's fun to .... sometimes, instead of cooking at home.
   a. give up b. shout about c. care for d. eat out
6. If you have a problem, you should .... with others who have the same problem and share ideas with them.
   a. get up b. get together c. get over d. take off
7. I .... drink coffee when I go out with friends, but generally I don't drink coffee. I prefer tea.
   a. occasionally b. physically c. culturally d. traditionally
8. On the .... of the New Year, I extend my warmest greetings and best wishes to you all.
   a. location b. formation c. occasion d. reduction
9. She .... a car accident in which both her parents were killed. Now she suffers sadness and loneliness.
   a. existed b. remained c. sustained d. survived
10. Hurghada and Sharm El-Shaikh are still the most .... destinations with tourists.
    a. public b. general c. popular d. abnormal
11. In their early stages at school, children learn very well by .... They need to hear and say the same thing several times to learn.
    a. repetition b. condition c. religion d. suspicion
12. If you are planning to travel to China for study, you need to learn how to have your meals using ....
    a. chopsticks b. spoons c. bowls d. forks
13. The only time my family get together is at .... It's a tradition of our family to have meals together.
    a. lifetimes b. pastimes c. overtimes d. mealtimes
14. I always get .... between the past tense and the present perfect in English.
    a. confuse b. confused c. confusing d. confusable
15. Dr. Ahmed Zewail spent most of his professional life outside his .... Egypt.
    a. active b. native c. massive d. passive
16. The file includes .... from the works of several well-known authors on the subject you are researching. I'm sure it's useful to you.
    a. contacts b. impacts c. extracts d. damages
17. The shortest way to do many things is to do only one thing .... One can't do a lot of things at the same time.
    a. as a time b. same time c. at a time d. for time
18. Children should be taught to .... respect for their parents and teachers.
    a. do b. show c. perform d. make
19. In this big coat, hat and tone of speech, you look .... Sherlock Holmes or Conan the detective.
    a. like b. as c. for d. with

20. What's your opinion .... this new shirt? I bought it yesterday.
a. with b. on c. to d. of

21. I wish I could communicate in English like a/an ....
a. native b. narrative c. relative d. olive

Exercises on King Lear

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

22. It .... my heart when my grandmother died. She was very kind to me.
a. complained b. failed c. broke d. pumped

23. Congratulations on the reward that the head teacher gave you. You really .... it.
a. reserve b. conserve c. preserve d. deserve

24. My sister is very .... She has caught a serious lung infection.
a. ill b. injured c. wounded d. broken

25. What did you do to .... your mother like that? She is insistent on not giving you your weekly allowance.
a. please b. confuse c. anger d. respect

26. Her .... from her mother, who died about a year ago, included a little farm in the countryside and some jewellery.
a. attendance b. inheritance c. distance d. conference

27. Some scientists claim they have .... in finding a cure for Covid-19. I hope it's true.
a. intended b. expected c. insisted d. succeeded

28. It is difficult for a two-year-old child to know the difference between telling the .... and lying.
a. truth b. youth c. cloth d. tooth

29. If you .... your exam marks, how would I trust your word about anything else?
a. gave away b. got on c. lied about d. took off

30. The fighter plane was able to use an electronic jamming تشويش ألكتروني system to .... the enemy radar.
a. receive b. deceive c. believe d. achieve

31. Our family .... was lower than usual last year because my mother quit work.
a. welcome b. kingdom c. income d. custom

32. When the fire broke out, the young woman took her child and .... through a small back door, in the kitchen.
a. exited b. permitted c. committed d. benefited

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ola is .... hard-working than Asmaa.
a. so b. as c. much d. more

2. The Red Sea is not .... big as the Mediterranean.
a. much b. so c. less d. more

3. Of all sports, free diving is .... dangerous sport.
   a. the most b. the less c. the more d. most
4. The Indian Ocean is .... as the Pacific ocean.
   a. more deep b. deep c. not so deep d. deeper
5. No other river in the world is .... the River Nile.
   a. so long b. longer than c. the longest d. as long
6. That's the .... delicious cake I've ever eaten. I liked it so much.
   a. most b. much c. best d. least
7. I don't read as .... books as you do.
   a. much b. more c. most d. many
8. The white flower is pretty, but the red one is even ....
   a. pretty b. prettiest c. prettier d. most pretty
9. The .... fat you eat, the healthier you become.
   a. less b. least c. most d. much
10. You have much .... money than I do.
   a. many b. most c. more d. the least
11. The test wasn't as difficult as I thought. This means ....
   a. The test was easier than I thought. b. The test was more difficult than I thought.
   c. The test wasn't so easy as I thought. d. The test was as easy as I thought.
12. This is .... place I've ever travelled to.
   a. the farther b. the farthest c. farther than d. much farther
13. You look .... than the last time I saw you.
   a. far thinner b. much thin c. most thinner d. as thin
14. Which one of the following sentences is WRONG?
   a. Much less water flooded into the house than I expected.
   b. There are less people here than expected.
   c. Tennis is a far harder game than football.
   d. This house is twice as big as the other one we saw.
15. Which one of the following sentences is CORRECT?
   a. Your dog is so friendlier than my one.
   b. That company is considerably richest than that one.
   c. The more you protest, guiltier you look!
   d. That's by far the largest dam I've ever seen.
16. He spent a year in India and loves spicy food. The hotter the food is, the .... he likes it.
   a. most b. least c. less d. more
17. I think she is still ill. She looks even .... than last week.
   a. worst b. worse c. more d. most
18. The problem is that your child's results are .... his colleague's. He needs to work harder.
   a. as good as b. better than c. not so good as d. not worse than
19. Which of the three supermarkets do you think has .... range of products?
   a. widest b. the widest c. the more wider d. the most widest
20. It's becoming .... to attract new customers. What we need is a new strategy.
   a. harder and harder b. harder and hardest
   c. hard and hard d. hard and harder

21. Things are better organized now. We have .... problems than before.
   a. less b. more less c. the least d. fewer
22. This car is more modern than ....
   a. our b. mine c. her d. your
23. My friend got more marks in the final exam than ....
   a. me b. mine c. I did d. A & C are correct
24. Petrol has become very expensive! I want to buy .... car than that.
   a. a more efficient b. the most efficient c. as efficient as d. a lot efficient
25. I really regret buying this oven. It burns food .... my old one!
   a. often than b. the most often c. more often than d. so often than

TEST 2 Unit 2

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She seems .... since she got married.
   a. happier b. as happy c. more happier d. happier than
2. Teaching children with .... needs requires patience and understanding.
   a. special b. unique c. private d. original
3. Excuse me, sir. I couldn't hear the last sentence clearly. Would you .... it, please?
   a. delete b. permit c. predict d. repeat
4. The .... thing by far about being unemployed is having no money.
   a. bad b. worse c. worst d. more worse
5. My neighbour is driving me mad! It seems that the .... it is at night, the louder he plays his music!
   a. later b. late c. latest d. much late
6. The slower you work, ... the job will take you to finish.
   a. longer b. the longer c. the longer than d. the longest
7. How do you like your stick, madam? Rare or well done? – Well done please. The word "rare" is closest in meaning to ....
   a. overcooked b. underdone c. scarce d. unique
8. ...., I have never performed CPR, because one should be trained well before trying to do it.
   a. Socially b. Personally c. Necessarily d. Privately
9. Although Mo Salah is currently plays for Liverpool, he shows his love and .... to his first team, Al-Moqaweloon Al-Arab.
   a. capacity b. loyalty c. penalty d. community

10. When the journalist angered the king with his stinging article, the king decided to .... to a remote island.
 a. give him up
 b. send him away
 c. get on with him
 d. give him away

11. It's becoming .... to secure a good job nowadays.
 a. more and more hard
 b. harder and harder
 c. hardest and hardest
 d. A & B are correct

12. My younger sister is probably .... person in my life.
 a. much more important
 b. far less important
 c. the most important
 d. as important as

13. Out of the two girls, Basma was ....
 a. the more hard-working
 b. as hard-working
 c. more hard-working
 d. less hard-working

14. One of the following sentences is CORRECT. Which one is it?
 a. Your car isn't cheap than mine.
 b. Your car isn't as cheaper as mine.
 c. Your car is much cheaper than mine.
 d. Your car is the most cheapest of mine.

15. My new computer is a bit .... than the old one.
 a. good
 b. better
 c. best
 d. worst

16. August and September are the busiest months of the year for us. This means ....
 a. We're less busy in August and September than we are in other months.
 b. We're more busy in other months than we are in August and September.
 c. We're as busy in other months as we are in August and September.
 d. We aren't so busy in other months as we are in August and September.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

Since the dawn of time, people have found ways to communicate with one another. Smoke signals, tribal drums and letters were some of the earliest forms of communication. The telegram and telephone set the stage for more modem means of communication. With the invention of the cellular phone, communication itself has become mobile.

Walkie-talkies أجهزة اللاسلكي, telephones and cell phones are **duplex** communication devices. They make it possible for two people to talk to each other. Cell phones and walkie-talkies are different from regular phones. A walkie-talkie is sometimes called a half-duplex communication device because only one person can talk at a time. A cell phone is a full-duplex device because it uses both frequencies at the same time. A walkie-talkie can transmit and receive signals across a distance of about a mile. A cell phone can transmit and receive signals over hundreds of miles. In 1973, Martin Cooper invented the cell phone and made the first cell phone call while walking down the streets of New York City. People on the sidewalks gazed at Cooper in amazement. Cooper's phone weighed 2.5 pounds.

After a decade, Motorola introduced the first cell phones for commercial use. The early cell phone and its service were both expensive. The cell phone itself cost about $ 3,500. It took nearly 37 years for cell phones to become available for public use. Today, there are more than sixty million cell phone customers with cell phones producing over thirty billion dollars per year.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
   a. The increasing number of people using cell phones.
   b. How Cooper invented the cell phone.
   c. The history of a cell phone.
   d. The difference between cell phones and telephones.
2. Which of the following definitions of a cell phone is true?
   a. A hand-held wireless communication device.
   b. A version of walkie-talkie.
   c. One of the first devices used for communication.
   d. Something we use just for playing games.
3. Which of the following is WRONG about a walkie-talkie?
   a. It has one channel.
   b. Only one person can talk at a time.
   c. It can be used within a distance of a mile.
   d. It was first designed in 1973.
4. The underlined word "duplex" is closest in meaning to ....
   a. quick b. having two parts c. modern d. having defects

B: Answer the following questions:

5. Using the cell phone in public was astonishing to some people. Discuss.
6. Which do you think is more effective in the process of communication, a walkie-talkie or a regular phone? Why?
7. Were the first cell phones available for all people to use? Why/Why not?
8. Find words in the passage that are antonyms for ....
   a. not moving at all b. private

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

A lot of young men can find online proper jobs that suit their abilities rather than waiting for a governmental one. These job opportunities can save time and share in solving the problem of unemployment.

B: Translate into English:

يجب أن ننفذ برامج تعليمية عالية الجودة لرفع مستوى طالب التعليم الابتدائي. يجب أن تواكب هذه البرامج أحدث الستراتيجيات التي تؤدي إلى خلق طفل مبدع وقادر على التواصل مع العالم من حوله بما فيه من تغيرات تحدث في لمح البصر.

D Writing

4. **Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:**

Compare two popular dishes in Egypt and write a description of them.

Unit 2 تدريبـــات الأزهـــر الشريف

1. **Find the mistakes and correct them:**

1. The much food you eat, the fatter you become. (..........)
2. No student in our class is as cleverer as Basma. (..........)
3. This is the more higher building in our city. (..........)
4. Cairo is the more crowded city in the world. (..........)
5. Of all the students in this class, Mona is more hard-working. (..........)
6. The blue vase is the same expensive as the yellow one. (..........)
7. The weather is many colder than normal for this time of year. (..........)
8. That's the funny joke I have ever heard. (..........)
9. This is most exciting film I've ever seen. (..........)
10. Eating fruit is most beneficial than eating chocolate. (..........)

2. **Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:**

1. This is the most boring film I've ever seen. **(more)**

....

2. If you go to bed early, you will get up early. **(earlier)**

....

3. The red shirt is as expensive as the white shirt. **(same)**

....

4. Samy is not as tall as Ali. **(height)**

....

5. The test was not as easy as I thought. **(more)**

....

Unit (3)

The most important vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
agriculture (n)	الزراعة	products (n)	منتجات
agricultural (adj)	زراعي	source (n)	مصدر
crop (n)	محصول/ غلة	sustainable (adj)	مستدام
earth (n)	تراب / أرض/ كوكب الأرض	sustainability (n)	الاستدامة
innovation (n)	ابتكار/ تجديد	variety (n)	تنوع/ تشكيله
livestock (n)	الماشية	various (adj)	متنوع/ عديد/ مختلف
production (n)	إنتاج	algae (n)	طحالب
produce (v-d) (n)	ينتج / منتجات زراعية	hydroponics (n)	الزراعة المائية (بدون تربه)
producer (n)	مُنتج	urban (adj)	حضري/ مدينى (مرتبط بالمدن وليس بالريف)
attack (v-ed)	يهاجم	The cart is pulling the horse	الأمور ليست كما ينبغى أن تكون (العربة تجر الحصان)
disguise (v-d)	يتنكر	A taste of your own medicine	تجرع مرارة ما فعلته بالآخرين / تذوق من نفس الكأس
servant (n)	خادم	guilty (adj)	مذنب
behave (v-d)	يتصرف	honest (adj)	أمين
rude (adj)	وقح	mad (adj)	مجنون
encourage (v-d)	يشجع	kind (adj)	طيب
wise (adj)	حكيم	power (n)	السلطة
cart (n)	عربه كارو	attendants	الحاضرين
hit (v)	يضرب	immediately (adv.)	فورًا/ على الفور
foolish (adj)	أحمق	exit (v) (n)	يخرج/ مخرج
noisy (adj)	صاخب		

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... forms the backbone of the rural economy.
   a. Culture b. Vulture c. Agriculture d. Culpture
2. The........ goes round the sun, doesn't it?
   a. stars b. earth c. sky d. rain
3. We need to encourage .... in industry.
   a. backwardness b. deficiency c. carelessness d. innovation
4. Asia is the biggest........in the world.
   a. country b. city c. capital d. continent
5. The broken window was .... that a burglary had taken place.
   a. evidence b. invasion c. prove d. disproof

6. The company is in need of .... staff to improve its situation in the market.
a. lazy b. efficient c. difficult d. passive

7. Food .... is still increasing faster than demand.
a. production b. products c. productive d. population

8. The .... of Sharqiyya Governorate is more than eight million.
a. price b. population c. people d. number

9. '........' is the opposite of 'rural'.
a. Ancient b. Urban c. Wealthy d. Healthy

10. Mr. Essam loves me very much. He gives me .... treatment.
a. private b. cruel c. special d. harsh

11. My son is missing. I am .... him. Have you seen him?
a. looking at b. looking for c. looking out d. searching

12. My uncle got a babysitter to look .... his children while he is at work.
a. at b. for c. after d. forward to

13. The noise made it hard for me to .... on work.
a. focus b. neglect c. ignore d. forget

14. I fully understand the reason .... your decision.
a. at b. for c. why d. of

15. Our products .... no artificial preservatives مواد حافظة or colourings.
a. contain b. consist c. includes d. are composed

16. He made one big mistake, and, ..., lost his job.
a. because b. due to c. as a result d. because of

17. According .... the forecast, it will be sunny tomorrow.
a. to b. for c. in d. of

18. A .... is a period of ten years.
a. century b. decade c. millennium d. fortnight

19. Football and cricket are .... games.
a. outdoor b. outdoors c. indoors d. indoor

20. The population of Egypt is growing only by nearly two .... a year.
a. percentage b. average c. ratio d. percent

Exercises on King Lear

21. He .... herself as a beggar so that he could gather information about the criminals.
a. disguised b. created c. killed d. invented

22. 'The cart is pulling the horse' is an expression which means "........"
a. The horse is pulling the cart.
b. Things are the way they should be.
c. Things are not the way they should be
d. None of the above

23. He is so .... that nobody can bear him.
a. polite b. gentle c. cute d. rude

24. People lack the willpower, rather .... strength.
a. then b. than c. as d. so

25. My father .... me a good piece of advice yesterday.
a. took b. gave c. received d. made

26. A/ An .... is a vehicle with no roof that is usually pulled by an animal and used for carrying heavy things.
a. train b. bus c. cart d. van

27. Don't be rude to others. You won't like it when you get a taste of your own ....
a. tablet b. dose c. pill d. medicine

28. The .... should be punished, shouldn't they?
a. innocent b. kind-hearted c. guilty d. honest

29. This girl seems to be stupid. I will marry her even if she is ....!
a. foolish b. beautiful c. kind-hearted d. honest

30. I love all my teachers. They always .... me to study hard.
a. discourage b. encourage c. dissuade d. make

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: Have you got any plans for tomorrow?
B: Yes, I .... my grandparents.
a. will visit b. would visit c. am going to visit d. visiting

2. A: Why is she learning Spanish?
B: She .... travel to Spain.
a. is going to b. will c. would d. will be

3. A: I am thirsty.
B: Wait here. I .... get some water.
a. will have b. am going to c. would d. will

4. A: What do you want the keys for?
B: I .... close the door.
a. am going to b. will c. would d. will have

5. A: We need one more player. .... play with us tomorrow?
B: OK. I don't mind.
a. Would you b. Did you c. Are you going to d. Will you

6. At this time next week, we .... on the beach.
a. will be lying b. will lie c. would lie d. lying

7. Next week, the class .... Unit 4 of the book.
a. study b. studying c. would study d. will be studying
8. A: What do you intend to study when you join the university?
B: I .... medicine
a. will study b. am going to study c. study d. would study
9. Will you carry this heavy bag for me, Hamada? This sentence expresses a/an ....
a. offer b. warning c. threat d. request
10. Do you think that people .... mobile phones in twenty years' time?
a. will still be using b. would use c. going to use d. are using
11. Oh, the phone's ringing! I .... it.
a. am going to answer
b. am answering
c. answer
d. will answer
12. At five o'clock tomorrow, I .... for the train.
a. would wait b. will be waiting c. going to wait d. wait
13. A: We haven't got enough bread for the children.
B: Really? In this case, I .... and buy some.
a. will go b. go c . am going d. am going to go
14. I haven't made any plans for the weekend. I .... at home.
a. am going to stay b. will probably stay c. staying d. would stay
15. My mum .... a new ring next week. She told us about her intention.
a. is buying b. buys c. will buy d. is going to buy
16. I think there .... flying taxis in most cities by 2030.
a. are being b. are going to be c. are d. will be
17. A: I don't know how to connect my TV to my phone.
B: It's easy! I .... you.
a. am showing b. going to show c. will show d. show
18. I .... the Faculty of Engineering when I grow up; it is my intention.
a. will join b. join c. am joining d. am going to join
19. A: Why are you switching on the TV?
B: I .... watch a football match.
a. am going to b. will c. would d. will have
20. I .... probably be away for a week this summer.
a. am going to b. would c. will d. will have
21. I expect they .... the match tomorrow.
a. are winning b. win c. will win d. are going to win
22. In the future, every new book .... as a new book.
a. will be published
b. would be published
c. is going to publish
d. will have published

23. At three o'clock tomorrow, I .... in my office.
   a. would work b. will be working c. going to work d. worked
24. I .... 54 in a few days' time. What will you buy me on my birthday?
   a. going to be b. am being c. will be d. am
25. A: Why do you want so many oranges?
   B: I .... make an orange juice.
   a. am going to b. will c. will be d. would

TEST 3 Unit 3

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Only eat a small .... of food before you do sports or exercise.
   a. number b. amount c. quantities d. tonne
2. Eat a wide .... of food instead of the same type of food every day.
   a. various b. number c. variety d. kind
3. The farmer keeps a lot of .... such as goats and sheep.
   a. agriculture b. livestock c. innovation d. crops
4. In some areas, fishing is not .... because one day there will be no fish left.
   a. sustainable b. delivered c. destroyed d. changing
5. It was quite difficult to see, ... with the light on.
   a. so b. due to c. because d. even
6. .... customs, beliefs, or methods are ones that have existed for a long time without changing.
   a. Traditional b. Modern c. Temporary d. Unconventional
7. Some scientists believe that more people .... seaweed in the future.
   a. eat b. will eating c. will be eating d. are eating
8. A: This year I'm going on holiday with my family to Italy.
   B: I'm sure you .... it.
   a. are enjoying it b. enjoy c. will enjoy d. enjoying
9. A: I'm going on holiday to Europe this October. Should I take an umbrella?
   B: Yes, it ....
   a. is probably raining b. will probably rain c. probably rains d. is raining

10. I .... apply to study medicine at Cairo University because I'm going to be a doctor.
a. am going to b. will be c. would d. shall have

11. He is a respectable man with a very strong personality. Perhaps he .... the coming leader of the party.
a. is going to be b. will be c. shall be d. is being

12. Shall we meet at the club tonight? – OK. I .... you there.
a. will see b. going to see c. would see d. see

13. I expect your team .... tomorrow's match.
a. are going to lose b. loses c. would lose d. will lose

14. I have decided to spend my holiday in Marina. I .... spend my holiday there.
a. am going to b. will c. shall d. would

15. I .... an MSC when I get my university degree. This is my plan.
a. will do b. do c. have done d. am going to do

16. This time tomorrow , I .... English .
a. studying b. be studying c. will be studying d. studies

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

Nine thousand years ago, people did not have money. They traded animals for things they wanted. They traded crops for what they wanted. In China, in about 1200 B.C., people traded shells for the things they wanted. Chinese people also traded metal tools for the things they wanted. For example, they traded metal knives and shovels for the things they wanted. Later in China, people made metal money. In about 100 B.C., the Chinese made money of animal skin. The first paper money was made from white coloured deer skin. **It** came from China about 900 years later. In about 700 B.C., people made the first round metal coins. The coins were made of gold and silver. They looked very similar to the coins we use today. These coins came from Lydia. Lydia was located where the country called Turkey is located today.

After people made coins in Lydia, people in Rome, Iran, and Greece also began making coins. Coins were very durable – they were strong and could last a long time without becoming damaged. Wampum are necklaces made from beads and seashells. The beads had holes in them. People put beads on strings. American Indians used wampum for money in the 1500s. Money changes with time. No matter what it looks like, money is an idea. It is the thought that people can trade something they have for something they want. Money makes trading easier.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Before people had money, they traded ....
a. crops for what they wanted
b. animals for what they wanted
c. metal tools for what they wanted
d. All of the above

2- The first paper money was made in ....

a. the year 1200 BC in China.
b. the year 700 BC in Lydia.
c. the year 800 AD in China.
d. the 1500s in North America.

3- All money is based on the idea that ....

a. gold and silver are good money
b. people can trade what they have for what they want
c. people can trade things for animals
d. coins are the best kind of money

4- Tools are things you ....

a. use for money
b. use to do work
c. put in the bank
d. trade for some

B: Answer the following questions:

5. Suggest a suitable title for the passage.

6- If you'd lived nine thousand years ago, how would you have bought and sold thing

7- What does the underlined pronoun **"It"** refer to?

8- Find words in the passage which mean:

a. commerce
b. continue

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

The plight of the homeless is a pressing problem facing communities. It is difficult t estimate how many people are homeless because the number depends on how the homeless are defined.

B: Translate into English:

لقد باتت الهجرة غير الشرعية في الآونة الأخيرة مشكلة كبيرة في كثير من دول العالم الثالث، فلقد حاول المئات الهروب من ظروفهم الاقتصادية الصعبة بالفرار إلى أوروبا.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

A person you look up to as a model or an example to be followed.

Unit 3 تدريبـــات الأزهــر الشريف

1 Find the mistakes and correct them:

1. Take a coat to London next week because it's going be cold. (..........)
2. I can't come to the sports club next week because I will travelling to Aswan. (..........)
3. Don't be late for the bus because it will wait for you. (..........)
4. Why don't you stay home and watch tonight's film on TV? I'm sure you are liking it. (..........)
5. Don't worry about money. I promise I'm lending you the money you need. (..........)
6. The final match is on 3rd October. I hope our team is going to win. (..........)
7. Mr. Gawish is going to be 54 next month. (..........)
8. I have decided that I am doing more exercises in the future. (..........)
9. It is really a good match. I am sure you enjoy it. (..........)
10. He is a very good player. I expect they include him in the national team. (..........)

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. My plan is to study hard all week. **(going to)**

....

2. I predict a sandstorm. **(will)**

....

3. Do you intend to buy a car? **(going to)**

....

4. It is my father 50th birthday tomorrow. **(will)**

....

5. Yousri has a plan to travel to the KSA tomorrow. **(going to)**

....

Unit (4)

The most important vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
abbreviation (n)	اختصار	frown (v-ed) (n)	يعبس / عبوس
abbreviate (v-d)	يختصر	tone (n)	نبرة الصوت / نغمه
abbreviated (adj)	مُختَصر	prefixes (n)	سوابق/ بادئات (الكلمات)
formal (adj)	رسمي	suffixes (n)	لواحق (الكلمات)
innovator (n)	مُبتكِر	procedure (n)	إجراء/ طريقة
innovate (v-d)	يبتكر	introduction (n)	مقدمة/ تمهيد
linguist (n)	عالم في اللغة	conclusion (n)	خاتمة/ استنتاج
misunderstand (v-misunderstood)	يسيء الفهم	findings (n)	نتائج (بحث)
misunderstanding (n)	سوء الفهم	text massaging	إرسال رسائل نصية
emoji (n)	الوجوه التعبيرية (التي نستخدمها في تطبيقات ومواقع التواصل الاجتماعي)	not necessarily	ليس بالضرورة
guard (n) (v-ed)	حارس/ يحرس	disbelief (n)	عدم التصديق
beggar (n)	متسول / شحاذ	faithful (adj)	مخلص/ وفي
reward (n) (v-ed)	مكافأة/ يكافئ	persuade (v-d)	يقنع
profit (v-ed)	يربح	port (n)	ميناء
pretend (v-ed)	يتظاهر	change his mind	يغير رأيه
plot (n) (v-ted)	مؤامرة/ يتآمر	a stab in the back	طعنة في الظهر/ غدر
call (v-ed) out	ينادي بصوت عال	My heart is broken!	قلبي محطم!

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Abu Bakr is hopeful and confident. He's got a really .... attitude to life.
   a. negative b. sad c. positive d. sorrowful
2. Because there was a/an .... in the instructions I gave, the letter I mailed was delivered to the wrong address.
   a. misunderstanding b. understanding c. comprehension d. apprehension
3. A/ An .... is a very large house.
   a. hut b. cottage c. mansion d. office
4. The prisoners escaped through a .... in the wall.
   a. gab b. gap c. grab d. grape
5. .... is an antonym for 'informal'.
   a. Casual b. Unofficial c. Formal d. Habitual
6. .... you and me, I think Hany got fired because he's completely incompetent.
   a. Among b. Between c. Amongst d. A & C are OK

7. Some people find it unacceptable to .... medical research on animals.
a. do b. make c. draw d. carry

8. My back has been bad .... I fell and hurt it two years ago.
a. ago b. ever since c. due to d. because of

9. New technology is being .... into our company. I am sure our profits will increase.
a. introduced b. refused c. induced d. deduced

10. To .... is to talk in a friendly informal way, especially about things that are not important.
a. insult b. chat c. shift d. debate

11. Mom, I hate the way you always .... me with my elder brother. I have my own character.
a. compare b. praise c. encourage d. chat

12. A: Have you .... in touch with your college roommate?
B: Yes, I call him every day.
a. made b. lost c. missed d. kept

13. Wolves and domestic dogs are .... of the same species.
a. numbers b. members c. persons d. plants

14. Students need to learn how to .... their work so that they can succeed.
a. organize b. disorganize c. confuse d. destroy

15. He managed to get himself a job on a building .... near his house. He goes there on foot.
a. website b. sight c. site d. link

16. In a .... each participant wants to be seen as the "winner."
a. chat b. speech c. monologue d. debate

17. Donya's main .... are reading and playing chess.
a. hobbies b. professions c. tasks d. duties

18. The need to ask .... advice arises periodically throughout life.
a. in b. for c. of d. on

19. The main .... of the course is to improve your writing.
a. aim b. demerit c. disadvantage d. B & C are OK

20. The road signs were very .... and we ended up getting lost .
a. confuse b. confusion c. confused d. confusing

Exercises on King Lear

21. Antarah Ibn Shaddad who died in the year 606 AD was good at fighting with ....
a. sniper rifles b. machine guns c. pistols d. swords

22. Parents often give their children .... for passing exams.
a. rewards b. punishments c. beatings d. imprisonment

23. Policemen have authority to .... lawbreakers and take them to jail .
a. reward b. arrest c. honour d. die

24. He has no son to .... his land after his death. Therefore, he donated it to a charitable organization.
a. inherit b. hurt c. hear d. listen

25. I will try to .... my father to let me go to the cinema tomorrow.
a. make b. let c. persuade d. A, B & C are OK

26. During the difficult times, soldiers remained .... to the king. That's why he loved them a lot.
a. faithful b. disloyal c. traitors d. unfaithful

27. Terrorists who .... our country must be hanged.
a. love b. build c. plot against d. defend

28. .... was pouring from the wound, so we took him to a nearby hospital.
a. Bold b. Blood c. Parasites d. Petroleum

29. He is stubborn, but she'll work on him to make him .... his mind.
a. transplant b. donate c. burn d. change

30. A lot of young people consider Mohamed Salah a good example to ....
a. ignore b. deny c. follow d. hate

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The teacher .... us not to make noise.
a. asked b. suggested c. warned d. recommended

2. I .... downloaded that program. Now I have a virus on my computer.
a. can't have b. could have c. shouldn't have d. will have

3. I advised my sister .... revising for the English exam. I want her to get 100% in English.
a. don't start b. doesn't start c. not to start d. to start

4. She said to him, "Please wait here till I return." She .... him to wait there till she returned.
a. ordered b. requested c. said d. wondered

5. She said to me, "Could you please open the window?" –She .... me to open the window.
a. ordered b. advised c. said d. asked

6. My father said, "Do your homework". My father .... me to do my homework.
a. told b. begged c. said d. inquired

7. I .... bought sugar and tea but I didn't know we needed it.
a. shouldn't have b. could have c. ought to d. had to

8. They .... come to have breakfast with us but they went to bed too late the night before. They were willing to do that.
a. will have b. could have c. ought to d. could be

9. You .... bought some milk at the shops. We don't have any milk.
a. shouldn't have b. should have c. ought to d. will have

10. Atef .... joined Ain Shams University, but he decided to travel instead.
a. couldn't have b. could have c. ought to d. shouldn't

11. I .... stayed up late, but I decided to go to bed early.
a. couldn't have b. shouldn't have c. ought to d. could have

12. Ahmed should have studied hard. This means he .... hard.
a. studied b. didn't study c. did study d. A & C

13. Donya .... arrived by now, but she hasn't.
a. should have b. shouldn't have c. couldn't have d. could

14. I didn't go to bed early and now I'm tired. I .... gone to bed early.
a. should have b. shouldn't have c. couldn't d. ought to

15. I arrived late to English class. I .... left my house earlier.
a. ought to b. shouldn't have c. couldn't d. should have

16. She .... won the gold medal if she hadn't fallen three times.
a. ought to b. shouldn't have c. couldn't d. could have

17. I'm not a fan of their logo. I think they .... changed it years ago.
a. should have b. shouldn't have c. couldn't d. ought to

18. Do you think we .... avoided the economic crisis if we had taken greater precaution?
a. should have b. ought to have c. could have d. must have

19. Our new hire is exactly what we needed. We .... asked for a better employee.
a. shouldn't have b. wouldn't have c. couldn't have d. may have

20. Yousri .... been at the party last night. He flew to Japan yesterday morning.
a. shouldn't have b. couldn't have c. might not have d. may not have

21. It was wrong of you to phone me at 3 a.m. last night. You .... that.
a. shouldn't have done b. couldn't have done
c. should have done d. ought to do

22. She told Nour .... the washing-up.
a. do b. to do c. doing d. does

23. My father ordered me .... a mess.
a. doesn't make b. never make c. don't make d. not to make

24. Esraa said to me, "I was wondering if you could possibly tell me the time?" She .... me to tell her the time.
a. commanded b. ordered c. asked d. advised

25. Why did you eat too much? You .... eaten so much!
a. shouldn't have b. should have c. ought to have d. must

TEST 4 Unit 4

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You .... mentioned it in front of the rest of the team. I would have talked to him in private about it.
   a. shouldn't have b. should have c. would have d. oughtn't
2. Abu Bakr .... graduated college in 2011. He was only 14 years old.
   a. should have b. couldn't have c. might not have d. may not have
3. You .... told me you needed help. I would have helped you.
   a. shouldn't have b. should have c. must not have d. ought to
4. The virus .... done us a lot of harm. Fortunately, it didn't.
   a. could have b. couldn't have c. should have d. may have
5. You .... asked my permission before you used my mobile. I'm really angry with you.
   a. needn't have b. should have c. ought to have d. B & C are OK
6. Nobody told her anything about the argument. She .... known about it.
   a. must have b. couldn't have c. could have d. may have
7. The party was supposed to be a secret. You .... anything.
   a. shouldn't say b. shouldn't have said
   c. ought mot to say d. A & C are correct
8. The policeman ordered him .... out of the car.
   a. to get b. to getting c. get d. getting
9. The man with the gun .... us not to move.
   a. begged b. warned c. said d. wondered
10. He ordered his son .... smoke.
    a. not b. don't c. doesn't d. not to
11. Did you know that "CUl8er" is the .... for "see you later"?
    a. acronym b. informal c. emoji d. abbreviation
12. My friend makes lots of spelling mistakes in his messages. He is very ....
    a. careless b. careful c. carefully d. carelessly
13. Mega projects .... jobs for a lot of people.
    a. work b. employ c. create d. reduce
14. My mother usually gives money to any .... she sees in the street because she likes to help poor people.
    a. businesswoman b. millionaire c. princess d. beggar
15. The children .... to be kings and queens when they are playing.
    a. persuade b. guard c. pretend d. follow

TEST 4 Unit 4

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You .... mentioned it in front of the rest of the team. I would have talked to him in private about it.
   a. shouldn't have b. should have c. would have d. oughtn't
2. Abu Bakr .... graduated college in 2011. He was only 14 years old.
   a. should have b. couldn't have c. might not have d. may not have
3. You .... told me you needed help. I would have helped you.
   a. shouldn't have b. should have c. must not have d. ought to
4. The virus .... done us a lot of harm. Fortunately, it didn't.
   a. could have b. couldn't have c. should have d. may have
5. You .... asked my permission before you used my mobile. I'm really angry with you.
   a. needn't have b. should have c. ought to have d. B & C are OK
6. Nobody told her anything about the argument. She .... known about it.
   a. must have b. couldn't have c. could have d. may have
7. The party was supposed to be a secret. You .... anything.
   a. shouldn't say b. shouldn't have said
   c. ought mot to say d. A & C are correct
8. The policeman ordered him .... out of the car.
   a. to get b. to getting c. get d. getting
9. The man with the gun .... us not to move.
   a. begged b. warned c. said d. wondered
10. He ordered his son .... smoke.
    a. not b. don't c. doesn't d. not to
11. Did you know that "CUI8er" is the .... for "see you later"?
    a. acronym b. informal c. emoji d. abbreviation
12. My friend makes lots of spelling mistakes in his messages. He is very........
    a. careless b. careful c. carefully d. carelessly
13. Mega projects........ jobs for a lot of people.
    a. work b. employ c. create d. reduce
14. My mother usually gives money to any........ she sees in the street because she likes to help poor people.
    a. businesswoman b. millionaire c. princess d. beggar
15. The children .... to be kings and queens when they are playing.
    a. persuade b. guard c. pretend d. follow

16. You'll need to format the disk before you can .... the files across.
a. copy b. pretend c. persuade d. write

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

Sham el-Nessim means smelling the breeze and it is celebrated all over Egypt on a Monday in April or May. The festival started in about 2700 BCE. The ancient Egyptian year had three seasons and Sham el-Nessim was held to celebrate the onset of spring. This festival doesn't have any religious background, following Easter. Sham el-Nessim isn't celebrated in any other country. Today, Sham el-Nessim is a holiday and families head out to enjoy the fresh spring air. The spring air is very good for you! People often have a picnic in the country, in parks or along the Nile.

Special food is eaten at Sham el-Nessim. Traditionally, boiled eggs are eaten for breakfast. Eggs are decorated in bright colours by children. They usually paint the eggs in the morning and leave them in the sun to dry. Another traditional food which is eaten on this day is feseekh: fish that is dried with salt.

This tradition also dates back to ancient Egyptian times. When people had more fresh fish than they could eat, they put salt on it to preserve it. It is important to buy feseekh from a clean shop so that you are sure that the fish will be good for you. Egyptians also celebrate by dancing, singing and attending theater performances. Over time, Sham el-Nessim has also become an opportunity for families to go to beaches and enjoy the pleasant weather.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- BCE stands for ....
a. Beside Calendar Egyptian b. Before Common Era
c. By Church Eastern d. Before Christian Einstein

2- Sham el-Nessim is celebrated in ....
a. one country b. two countries c. three countries d. all over the world

3- People preserved fish ....
a. to make it saltier b. so that it wouldn't rot
c. to make it dry d. so that it would be delicious

4- Sham el-Nessim has a/an .... background.
a. Islamic b. Christian c. Jewish d. None

B: Answer the following questions:

5- Are Sham el-Nessim's ceremonial rituals limited to eating and going to picnics? Why / Why not?

6- How do you think ancient Egyptians celebrated Sham el-Nessim?

7- Find in the passage words which mean:
a. keep something safe b. beginning

8. Suggest a suitable title for the passage.

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

Our Armed Forces are able to protect our borders. They are ready to defend Egypt's national security and secure its borders on all strategic directions, no matter the sacrifices.

B: Translate into English:

لا أحد ينكر أن الشباب يلعب دورًا رائدًا في تقدم ورفاهية وتنمية بلادنا وذلك لأنهم عصب الأمة.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

How to keep our environment clean.

Unit 4 تدريبات الأزهر الشريف

1 Find the mistakes and correct them:

1. He should has studied more for the exam. (..........)
2. I could have stay up late, but I decided to go to bed early. (..........)
3. He couldn't have pass the exam, even if he had studied harder. It's a really, really difficult exam. (..........)
4. She ought to has helped me yesterday, but she didn't. (..........)
5. Omar advised me don't waste my time. (..........)
6. I said my son to do his homework. (..........)
7. Atef asked his father buy him a new mobile. (..........)
8. Mr. Essam encouraged me speak English with my friends. (..........)
9. You should have helped your mother yesterday. This means you helped her yesterday. (..........)
10. You could has told the truth. (..........)

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I didn't go to bed early and now I'm tired. **(should)**
....
2. It was impossible for me to have arrived any earlier. **(couldn't have)**
....
3. Esraa said to me, "Could you please open the window?" **(asked)**
....
4. Donya said to Omar, " "Don't be late!" **(told)**
....
5. My mother said to me, "Don't make a mess!" **(ordered)**
....

Unit (5)

The most important vocabulary

update (v.d/n)	يُحدّث/ يزود بأحدث الاخبار/ تحديث
up-to-date (adj)	حديث
reliable (adj)	موثوق/ يعتمد عليه
reliability (n)	موثوقية
reliance (n)	اعتماد
consult (adj)	يستشير
consultant (n)	مستشار
download (v.ed/n)	يحمل من الانترنت/ ملف محمل
downloadable (adj)	يمكن تحميله من الانترنت
upload (adj/n)	يرفع معلومات للانترنت/ ملف مرفوع
upgrade (v.d/n)	يطوّر/ يُرقي/ تطوير
take down (v)	يزيل/ يدون ملحوظة/ يُخفض
behaviour (n)	سلوك/ تصرف
behave (v.d)	يتصرف
profile (n/v.d)	صفحة شخصية/ يعطي نبذه عن
sponsor (v.ed/n)	يرعى/ يمول/ راعي
turn ... back on	يتخلى عن ...
lock ... out	يطرد
apologize (v.d)	يعتذر
set eyes on...	يرى ......
double (n)	ضعف العدد
sponsorship (n)	رعاية
advertise (v.d)	يعلن عن (سلعة / وظيفة)
advertiser (n)	مُعلِن
advertisement = advert (n)	إعلان
sponsored advert (n)	إعلان ممول
year of birth	سنة الميلاد
banner advert (n)	شريط إعلان
search results	نتائج البحث
cookies (n)	ملفات تعريف الارتباط/ بسكويت
smart (adj/v.ed)	ذكي/ أنيق/ ينزعج/ يتألم
smartness (n)	ذكاء/ أناقه
sensible (adj)	حكيم/ عاقل
sensibility (n)	حكمة/ عقلانية
symbol (n)	رمز
symbolise (v.d)	يرمز الي
symbolic (adj)	رمزي
patience (n)	صبر
go mad	يُجن
room (n)	فراغ
shelter (n/v.d)	مأوى - يأوى / يلوذ بـ

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I wish you had .... me before buying this used car. I have a good knowledge about used cars.
   a. affected   b. consulted   c. uploaded   d. advised
2. Most of the information or news we read on social networking sites is not ....
   a. variable   b. comfortable   c. sociable   d. reliable
3. Our anti-virus program needs to be .... regularly to keep up with new viruses as they appear.
   a. updated   b. installed   c. removed   d. doubled
4. The Minister of Health holds weekly press conference to keep people .... with the latest news about Covid-19.
   a. upgraded   c. out of date   c. up-to-date   d. developed

5. .... music and videos from the internet is becoming increasingly popular.
   a. Downloading b. Uploading c. Descending d. Decreasing
6. Why don't you .... this video to You Tube so that people all over the world can see it?
   a. upgrade b. download c. upload d. increase
7. .... adverts are adverts that are displayed on websites, blogs, mobile sites, apps and web pages on the World Wide Web.
   a. Flag b. Banner c. Sticker d. Motto
8. It's you who can decide whether to .... this photo on your Facebook profile or keep it.
   a. give away b. hang out c. get on d. take down
9. I've searched the web for information about solar energy and the search .... are encouraging.
   a. engines b. teams c. results d. parties
10. .... are information that a website leaves in your computer so that it will recognize you when you use it again.
   a. Cookies b. URLs c. Viruses d. Results
11. Many sporting events are .... by big companies, which pay too much to have their name associated with the event.
   a. discouraged b. sponsored c. measured d. honoured
12. .... have become a popular tool for political campaigns to reach their target audience.
   a. Computer programmers d. Sponsored adverts
   c. Uniform Resource Locators d. Targeted selfies
13. Through .... adverts on Facebook and other social networking sites, customers can be persuaded to purchase a product.
   a. connected b. applied c. affected d. targeted
14. It's time you gave up such childish .... Now you are adult enough to behave sensibly.
   a. update b. behaviour c. research d. privacy
15. The .... thing to do if someone tries to start a fight with you is to just walk away.
   a. irrational b. gradual c. sensible d. foolish
16. The Olympic .... is made up of five interlocking rings, standing for the continents of Europe, Asia, Africa, Australia, and North America.
   a. cookie b. symbol c. sponsor d. profile
17. Even though I generally .... with his views, I have to admit that he may be right this time.
   a. agree b. discuss c. criticize d. disagree
18. The charge for the hotel room .... breakfast and dinner.
   a. includes b. contains c. symbolizes d. uploads
19. You Tube, Facebook and Twitter have been the most popular social media .... so far.
   a. games b. cookies c. platforms d. banners
20. Memorizing a long list of words is not a very .... way of learning vocabulary. You need to understand the use of these words in sentences.
   a. efficient b. ancient c. patient d. reliant

11. Have you ever been a/an .... of a cyberbully? If yes, tell us about this experience.
a. platform b. blog c. advert d. victim

12. It's very bad of you to switch on my mobile phone and read my private massages. This is a violation of انتهاك لـ my own ....
a. efficiency b. gallery c. privacy d. policy

13. The ministry of Education has hired a group of foreign .... to find ways to improve our educational system.
a. employees b. servants c. attendants d. consultants

14. For most employers, ... is the most important quality an employee should have.
a. reliability b. instability c. disability d. inequality

15. If you try this version of Microsoft Windows and register, you will receive regular .... from the company for free.
a. malware b. sponsors c. updates d. virus

Exercises on King Lear

26. After becoming a famous writer, the young man turned his .... on his old friends and relatives and lost contact with them.
a. shoulder b. stomach c. back d. head

27. I left the keys in the flat and accidentally .... myself out. I had to get a carpenter to open the door for me.
a. locked b. hacked c. gamed d. missed

28. The student .... to the teacher for handing in his assignment late, explaining that he had been quite sick.
a. congratulated b. criticized c. advertised d. apologized

29. At the police station, the servant escaped being put in the .... when he admitted to stealing his master's money.
a. profiles b. stocks c. blogs d. platforms

30. Honestly, I loved my wife the first minute I .... on her.
a. turned backs b. set eyes c. broke heart d. lost a leg

31. Your 200 pounds is .... your sister's 100 pounds. Then why are you angry? You must thank your mother for that.
a. half b. third c. double d. fifth

32. You'll need .... and understanding if you're going to be a teacher.
a. patience b. silence c. privacy d. foolishness

33. Why didn't you bring your coat? - My suitcase was so full. I didn't have .... for anything else.
a. a park b. a distance c. a room d. room

34. It's nearly night and strong winds are blowing. Let's find somewhere to .... for the night.
a. shelter b. sponsor c. double d. target

35. When someone says or does something to make people laugh, especially a funny story or trick, we say he is telling ....
a. secrets b. lies c. jokes d. replies

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Why are you watching TV? You are .... doing your homework now.
a. meant to being b. supposed to be c. seeming to be d. meant to being
2. The police .... to protect people.
a. are meaning b. supposed c. are seemed d. are meant
3. Oh dear, we don't .... have understood each other. You often misunderstand me.
a. mean to b. seem to c. supposed to d. meant to
4. The train was .... to arrive at 11.00. Why was it so late?
a. meaning b. seemed c. supposing d. supposed
5. The government .... to generate new jobs every year.
a. supposed b. is meant c. meant d. is seemed
6. He doesn't .... value his position anymore and often takes terrible risks.
a. supposed to b. meant to c. seemed to d. seem to
7. You can't go to school today. You're .... to be ill.
a. supposed b. seemed c. meaning d. suppose
8. Bit By Bit is .... the best book for secondary school students.
a. meaning b. supposed to be c. means to be d. seemed to being
9. I'm going to wash the car now. I .... to do it yesterday but I didn't feel like it.
a. supposed b. was seemed c. was supposed d. was mean
10. Mary .... to be at all scared when she drove the motorbike.
a. didn't seem b. didn't supposed c. wasn't mean d. wasn't seemed
11. We .... agreeing that we should take an action towards that guy.
a. seem to be b. are supposed to c. are meant to d. supposed to being
12. It is usually .... that girls are less aggressive than boys.
a. means b. seemed c. supposed d. seeming
13. The play .... to be really good.
a. supposed b. was seemed c. meant d. was meant
14. She .... in need for a period of time to recover after the surgery she has had.
a. is supposed to b. seems to be c. is meant to d. is seemed to be
15. The old woman doesn't .... hearing what I'm saying. She must be deaf.
a. meant to be b. supposed to c. seem to be d. seem to
16. A doctor will tell you that you're .... to exercise if you want to stay healthy.
a. supposed b. seem c. meaning d. seemed
17. This talk .... to be a secret. Don't tell anyone about it.
a. supposed b. is seemed c. is supposed d. meant

8. Come on, Salma, you're .... helping me.
   a. supposed to b. seem to c. meant to be d. seem to be
9. You are not .... loudly in a library.
   a. meant talking b. seem to talk c. supposed to talking d. supposed to talk
10. The diagram is .... the different stages of the experiment.
    a. supposed to showing b. seemed to show
    c. meant to show d. seems to be showing
11. I totally forgot I .... to call you last night, sorry.
    a. supposed b. was supposed c. meant d. was seemed
12. The party .... have been a thank-you to the staff from the management.
    a. was meant to b. was supposing to c. seemed d. supposed to
13. You're .... the bottle before use.
    a. supposed to shaking b. meant to shake
    c. seemed to shaking d. seem to shake
14. The terrific medicine can prevent many of the health problems that .... come with age.
    a. supposed to b. seem to c. meant to d. are meant

TEST 5 Unit 5

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The soldier was arrested for being a/an .... for the army of the enemies. He tried to give them information about our army.
   a. sponsor b. spy c. forum d. platform
2. There is a bitter .... over money and property between her and her dead husband's three children from his previous two marriages.
   a. experiment b. enforcement c. attachment d. disagreement
3. When the manager started to talk in the meeting, his secretary was ready to .... his instructions.
   a. put down b. give up c. take down d. get into
4. The little boy had a guilty look on his face when his mother asked him if he knew who had eaten all the ....
   a. profiles b. adverts c. cookies d. URLs
5. Actually, we are looking for a rich .... to help support our local soccer team.
   a. hacker b. sponsor c. forum d. banner
6. The red colour on the country's flag .... the blood of those who died defending the nation.
   a. symbolizes b. realizes c. criticizes d. minimizes

7. We .... have gone on holiday this week, but father fell ill so we couldn't go.
   a. are supposed to   b. seemed to   c. supposed to   d. were meant to
8. Although many travel companies had financial difficulties last year, they .... have recovered.
   a. are supposed   b. are meant   c. seem to   d. mean to
9. I'd better hurry up; I'm .... my father at the airport at eleven o'clock.
   a. supposed to meat   b. suppose to be meeting
   c. seemed to meet   d. supposing to meet
10. These batteries .... for a year.
   a. are meant to last   b. were meant to be lasted
   c. are seemed to last   d. mean to last
11. We .... a good supply of food. I don't need to go shopping this week.
   a. seem to have   b. are supposed having
   c. are meant having   d. seem having
12. Only bicyclists .... to use this bike path.
   a. mean   b. supposed   c. are seemed   d. are supposed
13. This exercise .... to be difficult.
   a. didn't mean   b. wasn't meant   c. didn't supposed   d. wasn't seemed
14. The new employer I work for does not .... doing what I have expected.
   a. meant to be   b. supposed to be   c. seem to be   d. mean to being
15. He .... at a business meeting at 2:00. It's now 2:15 and he's calling to say that he'll be late.
   a. was meant to being   b. was supposed to be
   c. seemed to be   d. supposed to being
16. I .... to call you when I reached Hurghada, but I lost your number.
   a. meant   b. seemed   c. am supposing   d. was seemed

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

Telecommuting is some form of computer communication between employees' homes and offices. For employees whose jobs involve sitting at a terminal or word processor entering data or typing reports, the location of the computer is of **no consequence**. If the machine can communicate over telephone lines, when the work is completed, employees can dial the office computer and transmit the material to their employers. A recent survey in USA Today estimates that there are approximately 8,7 million telecommuters. But although the numbers are rising annually, the trend does not appear to be as significant as predicted. Business Week published "The Portable Executive" as its cover story a few years ago. Why hasn't telecommuting become more popular?

Clearly, change simply takes time. But in addition, there has been active resistance on the part of many managers. These **executives** claim that supervising the telecommuters in a large work force scattered across the country would be too difficult, or, at least, systems

for managing them are not yet developed, which complicates the manager's responsibilities. It is also true that employees who are given the option of telecommuting are reluctant to accept the opportunity. Most people feel that they need regular interaction with a group, and many are concerned that they will not have the same consideration for advancement if they are less visible in the office setting. Some people feel that even when a space in their homes is set aside as a work area, they never really get away from the office.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. With which of the following topics is the passage primarily concerned?
   a. The advantages of telecommuting. b. A definition of telecommuting.
   c. An overview of telecommuting. d. The failure of telecommuting.
2. The underlined phrase "**of no consequence**" means........
   a. harmful b. no good c. unimportant d. irrelevant
3. The underlined word "**executives**" refers to........
   a. telecommuters b. managers c. employees d. most people
4. One of the reasons why telecommuting has not become popular is that employees ....
   a. need regular interaction with their families.
   b .are worried about the promotion if they are not more seen at the office.
   c. feel that a work area in their home is away from the office.
   d. are ignorant of telecommuting.

B: Answer the following questions:

5. According to the passage, what's meant by telecommuting?
6. Are you for or against telecommuting? Why?
7. From managers' point of view, what should be done to promote telecommuting?
8. Find words in the passage that are synonyms for ....
   a. important b. spread

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

Banner adverts have become a major promotional tool for many companies to market their services. To achieve better promotion, they use targeted advertisements, which allows tracking and analyzing the user's activity on the internet to display ads that fit his/her interests and desires

B: Translate into English:

يجب أن تراعي ضرورة عدم نشر أيّة معلومة قد تُهدّد خصوصيّتك أثناء استخدامك لوسائل التواصل الاجتماعي، فهناك من الناس من يميلون للحديث عن التفاصيل المتعلّقة بحياتهم الشخصية.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

How to stay safe while using social media

Unit 5 تدريبــــات الأزهـــر الشريف

1 Find the mistakes and correct them:

1. He's not seemed to drive any more. He has had a serious problem with his sight. (..........) (..........)
2. By law, you mean to wear a seatbelt while driving.
3. Labels suppose to help the customer identify what the particular product contains. (..........)
4. I supposed to tell you Mr. Ali had phoned, but it completely slipped my mind. (..........) (..........)
6. I was mean to meet you as we agreed, but I was delayed. (..........)
7. You're not seem to park here. This is a private parking area. (..........)
8. You're mean to arrive by 9.00 for the interview. (..........)
9. You're late! You were seemed to be here an hour ago. (..........)
10. You were mean to wear a suit for the meeting. (..........)
5. Cars suppose to make our lives easier. (..........)

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. When is the train due to arrive? (supposed)

....

2. We expected the bus driver to stop somewhere for a cup of coffee, but he didn't. (meant)

....

3. The people in this region are likely to know nothing about Covid-19. (seem)

....

4. According to the brochure of the tour, we are to see the famous London sights. (supposed)

....

5. Lunch was expected to be in a typical English restaurant, but it wasn't. (meant)

....

Unit (6)

The most important vocabulary

...t (v.ged)	يتوسل - يتسول	keep in touch (with)	يبقى على تواصل (مع)
...oor (n / v.ed)	متسول - يُفقر	lose touch (with)	يفقد التواصل (مع)
...gary (n)	التسول - الفقر الشديد	bring ... back (v.brought)	يذكر / يُعيد ذكرى
...an (adj / v.meant)	بخيل - وضيع / يعني / يقصد	fall out with (v.fell / fallen)	يتشاجر مع
...e (n / v.d)	كومة - يراكم	get into (v.got / got)	يستمتع بـ / يدخل في
...gh (v.ed / n)	يتنهد - تنهيد	get on with	ينسجم مع / يكون على علاقة طيبة بـ
...e (n / v.d)	نار / مدفأة - يطلق النار / يطرد من العمل	hang out with	يقضي وقتا مع
...ghtning (n)	البرق	rise (v.rose/risen / n)	ينهض/ تشرق - نهوض / زيادة
...rgive (v.forgave / forgiven)	يسامح / يعفو عن	torch (n)	مصباح
...ut (n)	كوخ / منزل صغير	philosopher (n)	فيلسوف / حكيم
...ard-hearted (adj)	قاسي القلب	fool (n / v. ed)	شخص أحمق / يخدع
...raw (n)	قش / تبن	mice (n)	فئران

Exercises on Vocabulary

...hoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The problem is that the number of homeless and poor people .... on the streets is increasing.
   a. passing b. crossing c. begging d. meeting
2. The old farmer was too .... to take his wife to a doctor. He left her suffering until she died.
   a. mean b. generous c. noble d. loyal
3. My children never wash their clothes. They just leave .... of dirty laundry in their bedrooms.
   a. files b. piles c. tiles d. miles
4. The woman looked at the mirror and .... for her lost youth.
   a. trekked b. called c. sighed d. reached
5. My grandmother loves sitting by the .... on cold winter nights.
   a. fire b. herring c. pumpkin d. cough
6. I don't know what to do with my children. They often .... with each other over trivial things.
   a. give away b. get on c. hang out d. fall out
7. I first .... spicy food when I was in India. I liked it so much.
   a. got on b. gave away c. got into d. fell out

8. It seems we are going to .... our new neighbours. Actually they are a very nice family.
a. get away from b. get on with c. come up with d. get out to

9. I used to chat and .... with my school mates on social media. Now I don't have enough time to do it.
a. give away b. get into c. bring back d. hang out

10. Goodbye me friend. I wish you the best of luck. Please, don't .... with me.
a. keep in touch b. keep away c. lose touch d. get on

11. Spending too much time on .... sites has negative effects on physical health.
a. social media b. first aid c. immune System d. thanksgiving

12. Visiting my old hometown evoked a lot of .... of my childhood.
a. business b. memories c. series d. agencies

13. The children were trying to tease the little girl, but she just .... them. She did nothing.
a. performed b. ignored c. informed d. separated

14. I've just been .... from my job, and I don't know what to do.
a. shot b. allowed c. fired d. missed

15. A female ...., with five or six children dressed in rags, comes here every day to ask people for money or food.
a. donor b. beggar c. guide d. organ

16. I don't .... to alarm you, but if you don't work harder, you will fail this course.
a. bleed b. operate c. serve d. mean

17. If you find any rocks in the garden, just .... them over there by the big tree.
a. repeat b. shout c. react d. pile

18. The students all gave a/an .... of relief when the exam was over.
a. sigh b. pie c. operation d. duty

19. This man's sweet singing .... back the memories of my father when he sang to amuse us on winter nights.
a. takes b. gives c. gets d. brings

20. When you come to school tomorrow, don't forget to .... the dictionary you borrowed from me.
a. get into b. bring back c. get on d. fall out

Exercises on King Lear

21. No one could leave the house for the last two days as there was a violent storm with thunder and ....
a. lightening b. breeze c. lightning d. energy

22. Please, ... me, dad. I didn't mean to anger you. I promise I won't do it again.
a. reply b. forgive c. tone d. shout

23. During his hunting trip in the forest, the king stayed at an old wooden ....
a. castle b. palace c. mansion d. hut

24. She thinks of herself as a warm-hearted and caring human being. The phrase "warm-hearted" is an antonym for ....
a. hard-hearted b. kind-hearted c. broken-hearted d. big-hearted

Farmers use the .... made from dried grass and stems of wheat as food and bed for animals.

a. cornbread b. straw c. pumpkin d. herring

The streets of London, England were lit at night using .... until 1807, when gaslights were introduced.

a. bulbs b. straws c. flames d. torches

.... tend to have little contact with the outside world. They often isolate themselves and think about things.

a. Psychologists b. Therapists c. Philosophers d. Dukes

I was a real .... when I bought such a terrible car. It's going to drive me mad.

a. fool b. scholar c. cheater d. brain

I thought our neighbour's house was on fire, but it turned out that the children were burning some .... in the garden.

a. games b. herring c. tamales d. straw

Unfortunately, Egypt's foreign debt has .... by over 10% the last five years.

a. fallen b. risen c. increased d. decreased

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I get tired if I .... get enough sleep.

a. won't b. don't c. haven't d. didn't

We'll win if we .... well enough.

a. play b. playing c. played d. had played

If mother .... me to go shopping with her, I'd go with her.

a. asked b. asks c. will ask d. had asked

If I .... exhausted, I would have gone shopping with you.

a. were not b. am not c. have not been d. had not been

Unless you'd studied harder, you .... failed the test.

a. would b. would have c. wouldn't have d. shouldn't have

It didn't rain, so the flowers in the garden died. This means ....

a. If it rained, the flowers wouldn't have died.
b. If it had rained, the flowers wouldn't have died.
c. If it has rained, the flowers wouldn't have died.
d. If it hadn't been for the rain, the flowers would have died.

.... icy, we wouldn't have had an accident.

a. Unless the road was b. Were the road icy
c. Hadn't the road been c. Had the road not been

8. Which one of the following sentences is CORRECT?
   a. Unless I'm sick, I'd go to school today.
   b. Were I not sick, I'd go to school today.
   c. If it weren't for my sickness, I'd have gone to school today.
   d. Weren't I sick, I'd go to school today.
9. If I had known you were coming, I -------- a cake.
   a. will bake b. had baked c. would bake d. would have baked
10. "I don't have enough money right now. I can't buy you this dress. Let's come again some other time." - This means --------.
   a. If he had enough money, he will buy her this dress.
   b. If he had had enough money, he'd have bought her this dress.
   c. Had he enough money, he'd buy her this dress.
   d. Were he enough money, he'd buy her this dress.
11. "I didn't read the paper. I didn't know about the accident." - This means --------.
   a. Were he to read the paper, he'd know about the accident.
   b. Without reading the paper, he wouldn't have known about the accident.
   c. He'd know about the accident if he read the paper.
   d. He'd have known about the accident if he'd read the paper.
12. -------- any help or have any problem, I call my neighbour at once. He is a very kind and helpful man.
   a. Needed b. Should I need c. I have needed d. I should need
13. Had I known the carpenter was going to take three days to show up, I -------- the materials and done the work myself.
   a. would have got b. will get c. had got d. will have got
14. If I can speak Spanish, I -------- next year studying in Mexico.
   a. would spend b. would have spent c. had spent d. will spend
15. Unless you -------- all of my questions, I can't do anything to help you.
   a. answered b. answer c. would answer d. were answering
16. -------- we truly understand others can we show sympathy towards them.
   a. Only if b. Unless c. Even if d. But for
17. Only if you follow a healthy diet, -------- losing weight.
   a. will you start b. you will start c. did you start d. you would start
18. Things would be much worse now -------- the regular donation given by the charity.
   a. unless b. had c. if d. without
19. If you -------- well for next week's exam, you will fail.
   a. hadn't studied b. didn't study c. weren't study d. don't study
20. If I can't finish my work on time, I -------- for help.
   a. could have asked b. will ask c. would ask d. would ask

If I could contact them, I .... them everything.
a. can tell b. would tell c. would have told d. will tell

If I had to stay for another day, I .... and inform you.
a. can phone b. will phone
c. would have phoned d. would phone

If Omar .... all his money, he would have to borrow some.
a. spends b. spent c. has spent d. had spent

If we put the books on that table, Ali .... them.
a. will take b. would take c. would have taken d. took

TEST 6 Unit 6

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some businesses are closed because of the coronavirus pandemic, which has caused an alarming .... in unemployment.
a. lift b. climb c. rise d. descend

2. Don't be .... by people's appearance. Not all of them are truthful.
a. foolish b. fool c. fooled d. felt

3. The old .... between the friends was quickly re-established when they accidently met after 20 years.
a. relationship b. championship c. membership d. scholarship

4. The workers asked for a pay rise, but their .... refused.
a. employment b. employee c. employed d. employer

5. The kind manager accepted Mr. Ali's resignation استقالة with deep .... Mr. Ali has been a loyal and hard-working employee.
a. delight b. regret c. guidance d. technique

6. The .... between the two brothers who hadn't seen each other for 20 years was a really dramatic moment.
a. collection b. champion c. allowance d. reunion

7. If I were in your shoes, I think I .... to the teacher rather than complain.
a. speak b. have spoken c. would speak d. will speak

8. Do you think there would be less conflict in the world if all people .... the same language?
a. will speak b. speak c. had spoken d. spoke

9. Unless they .... enough money, they won't be able to go on holiday.
a. had saved b. saved c. will save d. save

10. A: Can I borrow your car for this evening?
 B: Sure, but Nora's using it now. If she .... it back in time, you can borrow it.
 a. brought b. would bring c. had brought d. brings
11. We .... the game if we'd had a few more minutes.
 a. might have won b. would win c. had won d. will win
12. .... the theft just after it took place, your car would have been found before it was too late.
 a. Were you to report b. If you reported c. Had you reported d. Should you report
13. .... to be fit, you normally need to follow a training program.
 a. Were you want b. Should you want c. If you wanted d. Had you wanted
14. If I had been physically active, I wouldn't have suffered such health problems. The clause "If I had been physically active" has the same meaning as ....
 a. If it hadn't been for my physical inactivity.
 b. I wish I had been physically active.
 c. I should have been physically active.
 d. A, B & C are correct.
15. If I .... more on the article, I could understand what it is about. But there is too much noise in the room.
 a. concentrated b. concentrate c. would concentrate d. had concentrated
16. .... lost your address and telephone number, I would have visited you when I was in Luxor.
 a. If I didn't b. Should I not c. Hadn't I d. Had I not

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

New surveys suggest that the technological tools we use to make our lives easier are killing our leisure time. We are working longer hours, taking fewer and shorter vacations. We are more stressed than ever as the increased use of modern technology is destroying any idea of privacy and leisure.

Since the Industrial Revolution, people have assumed that new labor-saving devices would free them from the burdens of the workplace and give them more time to grow intellectually, creatively, and socially. But here we are in the 21st century, enjoying one of the greatest technological boom times in human history, and nothing could be further from the truth. The very tools that were supposed to liberate us have bound us to our work and study in ways that were inconceivable just a few years ago.

In the old days, the lines between work and leisure time were markedly clearer. People left their offices at a predictable time, were often completely disconnected from and out of touch with their jobs as they traveled to and from work, and were off-duty once they were home. That is no longer true.

This is not what technology was supposed to be doing for us. New technologies, from genetic research to the Internet, offer all sorts of benefits and opportunities. But, when new tools make life more difficult and stressful rather than easier and more meaningful – and we are, as a society, barely conscious of it – then something has gone seriously awry.

A: **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Which of the following could best serve as the title of the passage?
   a. Expectations and Bitter Reality
   b. Benefits of Technology
   c. Research on the Roles of Computers
   d. Changes at the Workplace
2. Which of the following is NOT true about technological tools?
   a. They make our life more stressful.
   b. They bring more leisure to our life.
   c. They are used even during vacations.
   d. They are being increasingly used.
3. This passage has probably been taken from ....
   a. a science review
   b. a political journal
   c. an advertisement
   d. a fashion magazine
4. It can be inferred from the passage that ....
   a. it is compulsory that employees go to the office, even on days off
   b. employees have more freedom to decide what time they start and finish work
   c. employers are more demanding and have efficient means to monitor employees
   d. life is more relaxing with cell phones and other technological devices.

B: **Answer the following questions:**

5. Have technological tools succeed in making our lives easier? Why/Why not?
6. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?
7. Do you think it's easy for an employee to make balance between work and leisure nowadays? Why/Why not?
8. Find words in the passage that are closest in meaning to ....
   a. Something that's difficult to imagine
   b. Advance

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

It is normal for a human being to be afraid of making mistakes. Teachers grade us down for errors on tests, bosses often chastise us for taking risks, and religions may condemn us if we commit a sin.

B: Translate into English:

ليست المشكلة في ان تخطئ، فالخطأ سمة من سمات البشرية، ولكن المشكلة هي أن تكرر الوقوع في الخطأ ولا تتعلم منه. ولولا المحاولة والخطأ لما توصل العلماء الى النظريات العلمية العظيمة التي خدمت البشرية.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

Social networking sites

Unit 6 تدريبـــات الأزهـــر الشريف

1 Find the mistakes and correct them:

1. I'll tell him the news if I'll see him. (..........)
2. If he didn't know what to do, he would have asked us. (..........)
3. Unless she had arrived soon, we'll be late for the first performance. (..........)
4. If you ring the emergency services, help arrived quickly. (..........)
5. If she hadn't gone to university in Paris, she wouldn't be able to speak French so well. (..........)
6. Unless I went to that interview, I wouldn't have got the job. (..........)
7. I would have done the cooking if you buy everything we needed. (..........)
8. He'll call you if he will find a phone. Don't worry. (..........)
9. I had called you if I had known you were in town. (..........)
10. I wouldn't have eaten the yoghurt if I knew it was yours. (..........)

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I am really hungry now. I didn't have any breakfast. **(wouldn't)**

....

2. I didn't see Tony at the party. I wanted to speak to him. **(had seen)**

....

3. If not heated, ice doesn't melt. **(you)**

....

4. You probably wouldn't have had an accident if you hadn't been so tired. **(Unless)**

....

5. If the weather is cool, the electric bill won't be so high. **(The cooler)**

....

TEST 1

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Her condition is not improving as we hoped. You must .... yourselves for the worst.
   a. prepare b. invent c. despair d. repair
2. Every good wish to them on the .... of their 40th anniversary.
   a. occasion b. chance c. occasional d. occasionally
3. When I tried to lift the jug, the handle .... in my hand.
   a. came up with b. came off c. came across d. came on
4. You need to put some ointment مرهم and a .... on your knee.
   a. handbag b. bandy c. shit d. bandage
5. You can .... to the latest version of the software by following these steps.
   a. upgrade b. upload c. download d. consult
6. He escaped across the border .... as a beggar.
   a. persuaded b. disguised c. sighed d. upgraded
7. He was one of the greatest .... of 20th century music
   a. discoverers b. discoveries c. inventions d. innovators
8. Marwa .... heavily and shook her head.
   a. died b. sighed c. tied d. piled
9. If I .... you were in hospital, I would have visited you.
   a. have known b. knew c. had known d. know
10. At a restaurant you .... pay the bill but you don't have to eat everything.
    a. have to b. don't have to c. have got d. shouldn't
11. Every player in a football team .... have a number.
    a. have to b. mustn't c. has to d. should
12. .... he understand the lesson if he read the summary?
    a. Will b. Did c. Would d. Can
13. Are you crazy? We .... have gotten into an accident.
    a. shouldn't b. could c. won't d. should
14. He has .... potential as a footballer than any other boy in the class.
    a. great b. greater c. greatest d. as great
15. My sister thinks she's .... intelligent than me, but I don't agree!
    a. best b. more c. most d. the most
16. Take this gun with you. Perhaps you .... use it to defend yourself.
    a. may be b. are going c. would d. will

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Software piracy is the most common and prominent crime in digital world today. It refers to the unauthorized duplication and use of computer software. Software is intellectual property and is protected by copyright laws in most countries. Software piracy does not kill innovation because most software used today were built by one individual and later someone else built on that same idea to create a better innovation.

Moreover piracy **stimulates** competition, because when a product is developed other developers may see it and want to try to build an even better product and then the original developer will want to build something better. This trend will promote continuous software development. The more people access a software, the better it is for innovation because more people are issued with the software and provide feedback as to what can be changed or even they can change it themselves. Hence, the best way to kill piracy is to innovate.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- .... is the best solution to the problem of piracy.
a. Completion b. Carelessness c. Property d. Innovation

2- The underlined word "stimulates" means ....
a. stops b. encourages c. weakens d. murders

3- The word "prominent" in the passage is the antonym of ".........."
a. known b. unknown c. common d. famous

4- The more people access a software, the better it is for the software ....
a. update b. piracy c. stimulation d. aviation

B: Answer the following questions:

5- In your opinion, How does piracy help to increase competitiveness?

6- Do you think that piracy of software can hinder creativity? Why? Why not?

7- What do you think is meant by software piracy?

8- Do you agree that The more people that can access a software, the better it is for innovation? Why?

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

I dream of a world of everlasting peace; love and friendship. A world where justice prevails and man is honoured, where there is no place for social discrimination, or barrier between the rich and the poor.

B: Translate into English:

- مازال الريف يحتفظ بالمناظر الطبيعية الخلابة والهواء النقي الصحي الذي يساعد علي العيش السليم. مع ذلك فان هناك الكثير يرون ان الحياة المدنية تتميز بالحيوية وكثرة الأنشطة التي يمكن للفرد القيام بها.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

An achievement you are proud of



TEST 2

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They .... a wonderful meal to more than fifty delegates.
   a. carved b. nerved c. attracted d. served
2. Acupuncture الابر الصينية has long been a part of .... Chinese medicine.
   a. custom b. tradition c. traditional d. criminal
3. She is the world .... for the third year in succession.
   a. war b. health c. companion d. champion
4. Do you think you can .... him to lend us the money?
   a. make b. let c. upgrade d. Persuade
5. He walked out leaving a .... of debts behind him
   a. tile b. pile c. belt d. plot
6. I didn't mean to say that. She must have .... what I was trying to say.
   a. misunderstood b. persuaded c. disguised d. misbehaved
7. The teacher .... at him and asked him to sit down.
   a. consulted b. flowed c. drowned d. frowned
8. You shouldn't have done it without .... me.
   a. insulting b. frowning c. consulting d. plotting
9. Mona .... have left the door open. The thief got through it.
   a. should b. shouldn't c. won't d. shall
10. "I heard that she's good." "She is supposed .... the best doctor in town."
    a. to be b. to being c. being d. be
11. .... you talk to the coach this rude way? Maybe he will exclude you from the team.
    a. Mustn't b. Have c. Must d. Shouldn't
12. You .... take food to your room. It's not allowed.
    a. needn't b. have got c. mustn't d. must
13. If you .... lied to me before, I would have believed you.
    a. don't b. didn't c. haven't d. hadn't

14. Which of the three supermarkets do you think has .... range of products?
   a. wide b. wider c. the widest d. the wider

15. In the last few months, competition has become .... tougher
   a. much b. more c. many d. least

16. This school .... 50 years old next year.
   a. is going to be b. will be c. is being d. has been

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The ancient Greeks always asserted that a healthy mind in a healthy body is the **key** to a well-balanced life. Nowadays many schools are decreasing the amount of time given to sports, and some schools are removing it altogether. Although academic subjects are certainly a very important part of the school curriculum, I am strongly opposed to the complete removal of sports. Firstly, schools have a responsibility to educate children in all areas. For that reason, it is just as important to provide sports practice for the professional sportsmen and women of the future, as it is to provide academic training to those who will go on to university. In addition, students these days spend long hours studying or working at their computers. Therefore, they need the opportunity to do some physical activity during school day. This will not only help to increase their level of fitness and make them healthier, it will also mean that they develop better social skills and are able to concentrate on their studies for longer, and thus achieve better results. In **conclusion**, I strongly believe that sports should remain a key part of the school curriculum. All children have the right to get a balanced education, and they should not be deprived of the opportunity to learn how to play sports.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Which statement is not true?
   a. Sports encourage team spirit.
   b. Sports give the change to be physically fit.
   c. Sports help students become more successful.
   d. Sports lead to overweight.

2- The ancient Greeks believe that:
   a. There is a connection between intelligence and a strong body.
   b. Well-balanced food is important.
   c. There is a negative effect of sports on the body.
   d. Studying is more important than sports.

3- The word "**Key**" means:
   a. lock b. necessary c. clue d. guide

4- The word " **conclusion**" in the passage is the antonym of "............"
   a. end b. beginning c. middle d. surface

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Do you think that the writer supports or opposes the issue of increasing sport time at school? Why? Why not?
6. In your opinion, how could practising sports at schools help students later in university and at work?
7. Why do think it is important to practise sports during the school day?
8. From your point of view, What should not children be deprived of ?

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

. Good books are the treasures of human knowledge, experience and wisdom. A good book is a faithful and useful companion. In it we find instruction which enriches our information and humour which helps us to forget our cares.

B: Translate into English:

- إذا لم نتناول الغذاء الصحي ، فإننا سوف نصاب بالأمراض ونفقد قدرتنا على أداء أعمالنا بشكل جيد.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

How has the internet affected our lives?



TEST 3

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The police found a .... of drugs at his home.
   a. quality b. quantity c. amount d. turkey
2. What have I done to .... this severe punishment?
   a. believe b. deserve c. shout d. respects
3. My friend was given .... by a lifeguard on the beach, who I'm convinced saved his life .
   a. CPR b. BCE c. DVD d. USA
4. You never know how your father is going to .... So, be prepared for the worst.
   a. react b. contract c. extract d. attract
5. Don't speak to me in that .... of voice. I'm your elder brother.
   a. tuner b. tone c. sound d. bone

6. Nothing can change, or will change, without technological ....
   a. innovations b. population c. admiration d. abbreviation
7. After a week at sea, it was good to feel the .... beneath our feet again.
   a. ocean b. earth c. moon d. universe
8. Farming is the main activity here. About 50% of the country's population depends on ....
   a. industry b. culture c. trade d. agriculture
9. His results are not as good .... his colleague's.
   a. as b. so c. more d. most
10. You .... use the elevators in case of fire. It's too dangerous.
    a. needn't to b. must c. should d. mustn't
11. Who is .... independent person you know?
    a. best b. more c. most d. the most
12. I'm sorry! I .... have come on time.
    a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. have got
13. I think she is still ill. She looks even .... than last week.
    a. bad b. worse c. the worst d. best
14. If you .... given me the wrong directions, wouldn't have got lost.
    a. don't b. didn't c. haven't d. hadn't
15. I have a party on Saturday. What .... I wear? My pink or my yellow dress?
    a. mustn't b. don't have to c. should d. must
16. I think it .... hot today.
    a. going to be b. would be c. is being d. will be

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Globalisation is the system in which the same products are sold throughout the world by huge multinational companies. Everybody wears the same **trainers**, eats the same fast food, drinks the same drinks and watches the same programmes on television. Supporters of globalisation say that people prefer something from the other side of the world to something local. Globalisation is seen as a threat by increasing numbers of people. They feel that globalisation is growing as consumers are not given a choice. They worry about the effect globalisation will have on the culture of individual countries, cities and towns. Moreover, in a global market, the bigger companies have more money to **expand** and advertise, and they can also make and sell their products cheaply. The result is that people stop buying from the smaller, local companies. Some people might see the global culture as a good thing as it brings people together and means that we have cheap food. In addition, you can travel, eat and shop easily. Unfortunately, many cities now have exactly the same shops that sell exactly the same products. It can be difficult to come across any small local shops at all. The question is, will the world become less interesting when all the people wear the same clothes, eat the same food and speak the same language?

A: **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1- In a global market, ...
a. local companies can compete with big ones.
b. local companies sell cheaper products.
c. big companies sell cheaper products.
d. both big and local companies sell cheap products.

2- In the text the word **"trainers"** means; ....
a. a person who trains people to do a sport.
b. shoes that people wear for sports.
c. a kind of fast food.
d. a utensil used in cooking.

3- A multinational company is ....
a. a company that operates in several countries.
b. a group of different companies in one country.
c. a group of different companies in various countries.
d. one company in one country.

4- The underlined word "expand" may be replaced by ....
a. develop b. decline c. deny d. dismiss

B: **Answer the following questions:**

5- Why do many people consider globalisation a threat?
6- What does globalisation mean from the commercial point of view?
7- Why do big companies benefit from globalisation more than the small ones?
8- Are you for or against a global culture? Why?

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- Childhood is playhood. We ignore this fact because play, to us, is a waste of time. We erect schools with many rooms and expensive apparatus for teaching, but all we offer to the play instinct is a small concrete space.

B: Translate into English:

- التعليم فى الصغر كالنقش على الحجر. ما يتعلمه الاطفال فى الصغر يشكل سلوكهم فى المستقبل. لذا فانه يجب أن نغرس في أبنائنا حب العمل والانتماء ونشجعهم على الابداع.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

Hard work is the only key to success

TEST 4

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "Would you like a/an ...., Madam?" "Yes please, I'll have the cheesecake."
   a. dessert b. desert c. fatta d. eggah
2. How do people .... New Year in your country?
   a. inherit b. deserve c. collaborate d. celebrate
3. Sneezing is the most common way .... spreading an infection.
   a. to b. of c. about d. by
4. Local residents سكان have .... angrily to the news.
   a. bled b. prohibited c. reacted d. injured
5. Five people were killed in the .... that took place last night.
   a. attracts b. attacks c. meals d. survival
6. He was not .... of the crime he had been put in prison for.
   a. gluttonous b. guilty c. innocence d. guilt
7. How .... of you not to offer me something to drink!
   a. nice b. careless c. rude d. cruel
8. A long time ago, milk was delivered by horse and .... in those days.
   a. plane b. rocket c. cart d. chart
9. Out of all my siblings, I visit my grandparents .... often.
   a. best b. more c. most d. the most
10. We .... feed the animals. It's forbidden.
    a. mustn't b. don't have to c. needn't d. must
11. He thinks he always knows .... than anyone else.
    a. good b. better c. best d. worst
12. If Maher loses his job, he .... look for another one.
    a. would b. will c. had to d. have to
13. When I finish my course, I .... probably work in a hospital.
    a. am going to b. would c. will d. may be
14. You .... to go shopping today. We don't need anything.
    a. have b. must c. needn't d. don't have
15. Do you think the Harry Potter films are .... than the books?
    a. good b. better c. best d. the worst
16. I .... have been angry with you. I'm sorry.
    a. should b. shouldn't c. won't d. shall

B Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

ver the past twenty years, computers and the internet have become more and more rtant to us. In fact, computer technology continues to grow everyday. We seem to use puters for almost everything these days: in shopping, driving our cars or communicating h relatives and colleagues. This boom in computer technology has resulted in a rush to ll computers in every classroom and to "wire" every school to the Internet. In the USA, ween 1984 and 1997 alone, the number of computers in secondary schools increased to e than 8 million units. Both educators and students alike have been forced to **keep up** h this new wave of technology. Teachers have found that even though they themselves e still trying to learn the most basic of computer skills, they are expected to teach students out computer know-how. **Few people would question the role that computers could** ay in education. Some educators claim that students given the opportunity to use them a classroom setting, will get better grades than those who learn without having had any mputer experience. These people say that just as computer technology has improved the ay cars work, computers will make the classroom a better place to teach **concepts** and ideas at students need to become brighter, more successful adults.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Teachers are expected to teach students how to use computers although ....

a. they know how to use computers.

b. they are still learning how to use computers.

c. they know all the basics of computer skills.

d. they are forced to use computers.

2- **"Few people would question the role that computes could play."** means ....

a. Many people are certain about the importance of computers.

b. Some people ask questions about computers.

c. Many people doubt the importance of computers.

d. Some people want more computers.

3- The expression **"keep up with"** means: ....

a. keep in touch b. support c. manage d. continue to learn

4- The **underlined** word **"concepts"** may be replaced by ....

a. approaches b. photos c. people d. devices

B: Answer the following questions:

5- How could computers help students become more successful ?

6- Give an example from the passage that shows that computers have been widely used in secondary education.

7- Give some examples of everyday uses of computers in our lives.

8- In your opinion, what are the possible disadvantages of using computers in education?

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- The rise in prices is due to inflation. To bring prices down, both the government and the individuals should work together, investment should be encouraged, production should be increased and consumption should be cut down.

B: Translate into English:

- يجب أن نستصلح الصحراء ونحولها إلى أرض خضراء لتوفير الغذاء لكل مواطن. لكن نقص المياة قد يحول دون ذلك . و لذلك فان الحكومة تبذل قصارى جهدها لتحسين العلاقات مع دول حوض النيل.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

How to solve the problem of over population

TEST 5

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The emergency .... are struggling to cope with the number of call-outs.
   a. services b. servant c. causes d. car
2. Who cooked this? It's absolutely ....
   a. grapes b. survival c. religious d. delicious
3. There is particular concern over the welfare رفاهية of .... Americans who live in the area.
   a. Native b. Dative c. Nature d. Matins
4. I don't think it's .... to teach your children at home. It has no benefits.
   a. wrong b. wise c. foolish d. cruel
5. The bullet hit him in the .... and killed him.
   a. chest b. thumb c. toe d. chess
6. His .... towards her was becoming more and more aggressive.
   a. performances b. behaviour c. situations d. attitudes
7. Your sister has cut her finger in the kitchen. Please, wrap her finger with a .... to stop the bleeding.
   a. herring b. pumpkin c. shit d. bandage

It was decided that the entire computer system should be ....

a. download b. graded c. uploaded d. upgraded

If you can't dictate your conditions, you .... negotiate.

a. will b. should c. need d. ought

I was late this morning because I .... wait a long time for the bus.

a. mustn't b. don't have to c. had to d. must

I .... have phoned my friend yesterday, but I didn't.

a. should b. shouldn't c. won't d. shall

In Spain, teachers .... wear uniforms. It's not necessary.

a. mustn't b. don't have to c. should d. must

Out of all the students, Shimaa studied ...., but got the best grade.

a. less b. the least c. the best d. better

I always .... a severe headache if I spend much time on the computer.

a. will get b. got c. am getting d. get

My friend will lend me his book as soon as he .... it.

a. will finish b. has finished c. would finish d. will have finished

Avatar is probably .... film I've ever seen!

a. bad b. worse c. the worst d. best

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

For most of us, the idea of soup which stops us getting ill, or crisps which relax us seems like something from a science-fiction film. However, these are not foods of the future. In fact, they are part of a new group of food products known as «functional foods», and they may already be on your supermarket's shelves. In today's world, we all know that our diet affects our health and more people are watching what they eat. Food companies are taking advantage of this fact. They have already started to use ingredients in their products which will offer extra health benefits to their customers. For example, orange juice already contains vitamin C, but now you can buy orange juice with added calcium to **strengthen** your bones and teeth, so it is even better for you than ever before. Of course, there are people who believe that functional foods are a bad idea. They claim that products such as these can be dangerous, as people may end up taking more vitamins than they need and may damage their bodies as a result. Nevertheless, functional foods are becoming increasingly popular, and supporters feel that it won't be long before there are foods which prevent cancer, protect eyesight and much more.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Functional foods are ....

a. imaginary products b. real products

c. science-fiction products d. science-fiction films

2- Some food companies benefit from functional foods by ....

a. offering extra health advantages to their customers.

b. reducing vitamins in their products.

c. helping customers save more money.

d. helping customers consume more food.

3- A suitable title for the passage can be ....

a. "The Advantages of Functional Foods"

b. "The Disadvantages of Functional Foods"

c. "Functional Foods in Science Fiction"

d. "A New Type of Foods

4- The underlined word **"strengthen"** may be replaced by ....

a. support b. hurt c. damage d. kill

B: Answer the following questions:

5- Why are some people against functional foods ?

6- What are the advantages of functional foods ?

7- Would you like your regular meals to include functional foods ? Why ?

8- Find words in the passage which mean the following:

a. Practical and useful.

b. Any of the foods that are combined to make a particular dish.

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- Education is not an end, but a means to an end. In other words, we do not educate children for the purpose of educating them; our purpose is to fit them for life.

B: Translate into English:

- الشمس نعمة من نعم الله وفوائدها كثيرة منها الدفء والنور والمطر الذي تكون بفعل تسخين الشمس للمياه فيصعد بخار الماء فيكون مطرا بعد ذلك. ولكن الشمس لا تُعطينا الحرارة والضوء فحسب لكنها أيضاً تُعطينا الأشعة فوق البنفسجية الضارة.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

The different ways people can do to keep fit and avoid disease

TEST 6

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The bacteria can cause infection and, in .... cases, blindness.
   a. care b. dare c. rare d. bare
2. We need both positive and negative .... from our customers.
   a. blacksmith b. flashback c. facebook d. feedback
3. The victim suffered .... brain damage.
   a. fantastic b. severe c. regular d. skillful
4. Her .... has improved a lot over the past season.
   a. technique b. emergency c. cause d. performances
5. Thanks to modern medicine, these babies will ....
   a. alive b. survival c. suicide d. survive
6. The drought has affected more than a million people in the town and 300,000 head of ....
   a. livelong b. livestock c. stocks d. liverish
7. Your local library will be a useful .... of information.
   a. cause b. book c. reason d. source
8. They have offered me the job, but I don't yet have a .... contract.
   a. formal b. form c. informal d. false
9. I .... have stayed up late, but I decided to go to bed early.
   a. shouldn't b. could c. won't d. shall
10. If our heart stops working, death soon ....
    a. follow b. will follow c. follows d. followed
11. You .... come with us if you don't want to.
    a. mustn't b. don't have to c. shouldn't d. must
12. Shop assistants .... deal with the public.
    a. mustn't b. don't have to c. have to d. shouldn't
13. It's becoming harder and .... to attract new customers. What we need is a new strategy.
    a. harder b. hard c. more harder d. hardest
14. Amany has a beautiful baby, but my daughter has .... beautiful baby on earth.
    a. best b. more c. most d. the most
15. Girgis drives .... recklessly than his brother.
    a. best b. more c. most d. the most
16. In the future, computers .... smaller.
    a. will make b. will be making c. will have made d. will be made

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

With the introduction of the internet into our daily lives, we have changed from a society of eight to towers (that works from 8 am to 2 pm) into a twenty four-hour society. Everything in this lifestyle is open all hours. You can buy your grocery at midnight, book your holiday on the Internet at 3 am and do business online at dawn.

Before you join the 24-hour revolution, take a minute to listen to what your body is trying to tell you. This "round the clock" lifestyle is not what the Great Creator intended for us. In an area of our brains, we have a "body clock" that controls our body's natural rhythms. It tells us when it is the right time to eat, sleep, work or play. **It** plays an important part in our physical and psychological well-being. It is, in fact, what makes us control many thing including our hormones, temperatures, immune system and activity. It regulates the tempo and brings in all the different instruments on time to make music rather than noise. If we try to ignore our body clocks, or even to switch them off for a while, we not only deprive ourselves of much needed rest, but we also run the risk of seriously damaging our health. Accordingly, we need to have a daily routine.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- A 24-hour society means a society that works ....
   a. day and night   b. day only   c. night only   d. from 8 am to 2 pm

2- If you switch off your "body clock", ...
   a. you'll miss the train   b. you'll damage your health
   c. you won't attend the match   d. you'll be late for school

3- A suitable title for the passage is: ....
   a. Business on line   b. Free Time   c. Music in Our Life   d. Body Clock

4- The above passage can be a part of a / an ....
   a. story   b. poster   c. essay   d. interview

B: Answer the following questions:

5- Which lifestyle does the writer prefer ?
6- Are you for or against the daily routine ? Why ?
7- What does "**It**" in the third paragraph refer to ?
8- Mention TWO only of the functions of the "body clock".

C Translation only

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- The government continues her war and campaigns against traders of narcotics and sellers of white poisons that destroy the youth and their future. It is our duty to spread awareness among our youth.

6. Translate into English:

- وجدت شبكات التواصل الاجتماعي إقبالًا كبيرًا من جميع فئات المجتمع خاصة الشباب، حيث أنها تسمح بتبادل الآراء والأ
مع الآخرين.

D Writing

7. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

A day you will never forget

TEST 7

A Vocabulary and Structure

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I tried to stay calm and just .... him.
   a. climb   b. danger   c. ignore   d. harmful
2. It's illegal to use the fire alarm except in case of ....
   a. fluency   b. allergy   c. frequency   d. emergency
3. Local companies were asked to complete a .... about their exports.
   a. farm   b. questionnaire   c. occasion   d. amount
4. Please don't take this ...., but would you mind leaving us alone for a few moments?
   a. person   b. personally   c. particular   d. personality
5. She had .... herself that life was not worth living.
   a. persuaded   b. consulted   c. accused   d. asked
6. .... with your physician about possible treatments.
   a. Consult   b. Insult   c. Ignore   d. Fight
7. We are looking for someone who is .... and hard-working.
   a. available   b. irresponsible   c. deniable   d. reliable
8. We'll have to bring our equipment ....
   a. out of date   b. up to date   c. up to you   d. upside
9. They .... have won the race, but they didn't try hard enough.
   a. shouldn't   b. could   c. won't   d. shall
10. Sorry, I .... go now. I don't want to be late.
    a. mustn't   b. don't have to   c. shouldn't   d. must
11. If you face a problem, ... the police.
    a. will call   b. would call   c. call   d. can call
12. I .... hire a car to travel around London. This is my intention.
    a. am going to   b. may   c. could   d. will

13. In the last holidays I read a .... book, but father gave me an even better one last weekend.
a. well　b. good　c. best　d. better

14. Who is .... singer in the world?
a. the best　b. better　c. good　d. the most

15. There are more accidents on this road because it's .... than the others.
a. most narrower　b. narrow　c. narrower　d. the narrowest

16. We .... leave now or we'll miss the plane.
a. mustn't　b. don't have to　c. shouldn't　d. must

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It was believed that being overweight was healthy, but nowadays few people agree to this viewpoint. While many people are fighting the battle to reduce weight, studies are being performed concerning appetite and how it is controlled by both emotional and biochemical factors. Some of the conclusions of these studies may give us the ability to understand how to deal with weight problems. For example, when several people were. asked about their eating habits in times of stress, 44 % said they reacted to stressful situations by eating. Further investigations of both humans and animals indicated that it is not food which relieves tension, but rather the act of chewing. A test showed that extremely fat people have a high sense of taste, and love more flavoured food than thin people. When deprived of the variety of tastes, extremely fat people are not satisfied and consequently eat more to fulfill this need. Exercise has been recommended as an important part of weight-loss programmes. However, it has been found out that mild exercise is a way of losing weight because using the stairs instead of the lift is better in the long run than taking on a severe programme such as running slowly (jogging). Many people find jogging difficult to continue over long periods of time, it also increases appetite.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- One of the emotional factors which control appetite is.......... .
a. jogging　b. chewing　c. eating　d. stress

2- When fat people are deprived of the variety of taste they .....
a. lose weight　b. practise exercises　c. eat more　d. use flavour

3- The above passage can be a part of a / an ....
a. story　b. poster　c. essay　d. interview

4- The underlined word " **further** " means ....
a. more　b. super　c. greater　d. extreme

B: Answer the following questions:

5- What is the main idea of the passage ?

6- What is the best treatment for overweight, according to the writer's point of view ?

7- What are the two kinds of exercises that help lose weight ?

8- How does eating relieve tension?

C Translation

A: Translate into Arabic:

Egypt's new economic policy and the migration of many Egyptians to work in oil countries have had profound effects on Egyptian society. It has become a society with consumer tastes it can ill afford. Imported luxury items are flooding the market.

Translate into English:

- أصبح الاهتمام بالبحث العلمي من الركائز الأساسية التي تستند إليها الشعوب لتحقيق تقدمها ورخائها. لذلك تشجع ال
العلماء على القيام بأبحاث في مختلف مجالات الحياة وتقدم لهم كل سبل الدعم.

D Writing

Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

What do you think life will be like in the year 2040?

TEST 8

A Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's a film that holds a .... place in my heart.
a. specially b. private c. especially d. special
2. A cultural .... will celebrate the traditions of the local people.
a. festival b. oyster c. festive d. summit
3. Some plants grow better in .... soil.
a. distance b. drought c. dry d. dirt
4. He resigned for a .... of reasons.
a. variety b. very c. various d. vary
5. Drinking and driving is one of the most .... causes of traffic accidents.
a. comment b. common c. infectious d. fantastic
6. In the .... past this land was covered in forests.
a. distant b. distance c. absence d. distend
7. The public was not aware of the .... from nuclear tests in Korea.
a. endanger b. endangered c. dangerous d. danger
8. The movie helped .... her screen career.
a. boost b. cost c. bleed d. fight
9. Rahma .... have bought the book, but she borrowed it from the library instead.
a. shouldn't b. could c. won't d. shall
10. I would put on protective glasses if I .... you.
a. were b. will be c. had been d. am

11. Students .... listen to the teacher or they won't understand.
   a. mustn't b. don't have to c. shouldn't d. must
12. You .... turn on the central heating. It's automatic.
   a. mustn't b. don't have to c. shouldn't d. must
13. He has an interesting hobby, but my sister has the .... interesting one in the world
   a. little b. most c. more d. much
14. The test in geography was easy, but the test in biology was ....
   a. easier b. easiest c. more easier d. most easier
15. Luxor is sunny. Do you know the .... place in the Egypt?
   a. most sunniest b. sunniest c. more sunny d. sunnier
16. In your opinion, will traditional books .... by e-books?
   a. be replaced b. replace c. have to replace d. have replaced

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

If a person suddenly encounters any terrible danger, the change of nature one undergoes is equally great. Sometimes fear numbs our senses. Like animals, one stands still, powerless to move a step in fright or to lift a hand in defense of our lives, and sometimes one is seized with panic, and again, act more like the inferior animals than rational beings. On the other hand, frequently in cases of sudden extreme **peril**, which cannot be escaped by flight, and must be instantly faced, even the most timid men at once as if by miracle, become possessed of the necessary courage, sharp quick apprehension and swift decision. This is a miracle very common in nature. Man and the inferior animals alike, when confronted with almost certain death "gather" resolution from despair' but there can really be no trace of so weakening a feeling in the person fighting, or prepared to fight for dear life. At such times the mind is clearer than it has ever been; the nerves are steel, there is nothing felt but a wonderful strength and daring. Looking back at certain dangerous moments in my own life, I remember <u>them</u> with a kind of joy, not that there was any joyful excitement then, but because they broadened my horizon, lifted me for a time above myself.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This passage can be part of a/an..........
   a. novel b. interview c. poem d. article
2. What is the meaning of the word "**peril**"?
   a. great pride b. great happiness c. great danger d. great fun
3. The author feels happy in the recollection of dangers faced and overcome because ....
   a. They brought him a new experience.
   b. They added a new perspective and lifted him above himself for a time.
   c. These experiences boosted his confidence.
   d. He felt elated as he was alive.
4. Explain the phrase 'gather resolution from danger'.
   a. Find peace in times of difficulty.
   b. To remain calm and not to lose hope.
   c. To be enthusiastic and brave the odds.
   d. A state of complete hopelessness makes one determined to face the difficulty

Answer the following questions:

5. Suggest a suitable title for the passage.
6. A man may react to sudden danger in three different ways . What are they?
7. What does the underlined word '**them**' in the last sentence refer to?
8. What would you do if you suddenly encountered any terrible danger?

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- Man should exert efforts to solve the problem of war. If he is, all the new discoveries will turn to weapons of destruction and the best traditions of our civilization may cease to exist .But our civilization must be preserved and human discoveries must be used in such a way as to bring life and to bring happiness to mankind.

B: Translate into English:

- يلعب الإعلام دوراً رئيسياً ومهماً خلال الأزمات على اختلافها، حيث يناط به كثير من المهام، بالإضافة إلى كونه وسيلة تو
بين الناس.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

One favourable character you look up to as a model.



TEST 9

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You must leave immediately. You're in great .... here.
   a. dangerous b. danger c. safe d. safety
2. We were told to stay .... as help was on the way.
   a. column b. claim c. calm d. cattle
3. Her life .... completely when she won the lottery.
   a. changed b. attracted c. celebrated d. extracted
4. Her husband has been .... her for years.
   a. cheated b. eating c. achieving d. deceiving
5. My parents are .... about relationships and marriage.
   a. old-fashioned b. fashion c. out off fashion d. upgrated
6. I didn't know they .... rice in France. It's an important crop there.
   a. flew b. glue c. grew d. made

7. For the first time she could smell the dankness and the odour of rotting .... growing near the shore.
   a. seabed b. seaweed c. seaport d. seaman
8. Our aim is to .... the number of women in the sport.
   a. increase b. deceive c. consult d. disguise
9. He .... have studied harder, but he was too lazy and that's why he failed the exam.
   a. shouldn't b. shall c. won't d. could
10. If Wael lost his job, he .... look for work in the city.
   a. will b. would c. will not d. would not
11. There is a big sale in this mall. Prices .... much reduced.
   a. will b. is c. will be d. will have
12. You .... remember to take your umbrella. It's going to rain.
   a. mustn't b. don't have to c. shouldn't d. must
13. You .... cross the roads without looking. It's dangerous.
   a. mustn't b. don't have to c. shouldn't d. must
14. Amir is a successful sportsman, but his sister is .... successful than him.
   a. little b. most c. more d. much
15. The red dress is the .... attractive in the shop.
   a. little b. most c. more d. much
16. Your hair is .... than my hair.
   a. curlier b. curly c. curliest d. the curliest

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Tropical cyclones are called typhoons in Asia and hurricanes in North and South America. These storms go around like a wheel turning to the left when they hit in the northern part of the world. **They** have wind speeds of 60 kph or more. In the United States, the Tropical Prediction Center in Miami, Florida keeps an eye out for hurricanes.

When meteorologists detect a hurricane, they give it a name. They can use either a male or female name. Why should tropical cyclones have names? The name makes it easier for people to keep up with information about a hurricane and its possible dangers.

The World Meteorological Organization (WMO), an international weather group, decides what names will be used. The WMO makes lists of names using the English alphabet. Each name on the list starts with a different letter. The first hurricane of the year gets the first name on that year's list. The second hurricane gets the next name. For example, if the first hurricane is named Abel, the second might be named Betty. The name lists do not include names beginning with the letters Q, U, X, Y, and Z. There aren't many names that begin with these letters.

Asian countries use a different list, which is made up by the WMO's Typhoon Committee. This list has a few personal names, but most of the names are of flowers, animals, trees, and other similar things.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- In which direction do tropical cyclones go around in the northern part of the planet?
   a. Down b. The same direction as a clock
   c. The opposite direction of a clock d. Up

2. The fifth hurricane of 2015 might have the name ....
   a. Diana b. Darren c. Eric d. Connie
3. Which name would a hurricane NOT have?
   a. Rita b. Veronica c. William d. Yanni
4. Why should tropical cyclones have names?
   a. It sounds interesting. b. The names help people.
   c. The names are a code for the WMO. d. It is traditional.

Answer the following questions:

5. What is the main idea of this reading?
6. Find words in the passage which mean:
   a. a smart guess about the future b. scientists who study the weather
7. What does the underlined word "**They**" refer to?
8. What kinds of names are better for cyclones--human or non-human names? Give reason for your answer

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- Statistics show that the rapid growth in population creates problems for developing countries. So why don't people have fewer children? People must know that with smaller families, there will be more food, better schools, more possibilities of work, more money and thus a better standard of living

B: Translate into English:

– تعتبر مشاركة المعرفة واحدة من أبسط وأسهل الطرق للتعاون حيث يُمكنك كل يوم إضافة معلومة لشخص ما في مجال معرفته وعليك تحديد من هم بحاجة فعليًا للتعاون.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

The duties of young people towards their parents.



TEST 10

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They spent two months in the jungle, ... on small animals and fruit.
   a. survival b. deceiving c. surviving d. inheriting
2. The book opens with an .... of why some drugs are banned.
   a. evacuation b. application c. expression d. explanation

3. I don't eat meat, only fish, but there's a good .... available here.
   a. various   b. very   c. variety   d. vary
4. I have the utmost .... for her and her work.
   a. compare   b. respect   c. aspect   d. aspirate
5. It is important not to let .... levels fall.
   a. production   b. consumption   c. inflation   d. destruction
6. We had a very good .... of apples last year.
   a. kilo   b. crop   c. corp   d. corporation
7. There's a dangerous .... going around the world.
   a. infections   b. virus   c. bacterial   d. illness
8. His only chance of .... was a heart transplant.
   a. survival   b. deceiving   c. survived   d. inheriting
9. This is a nice cat. It's .... nicer than my friend's cat.
   a. much   b. more   c. many   d. least
10. Have you visited Luxor temple ? It was .... one we visited during our holidays.
    a. old   b. older   c. the oldest   d. the most oldest
11. The store is having a great sale today. Most televisions are 25% .... than they were yesterday.
    a. cheap   b. many cheap   c. more cheaper   d. cheaper
12. He .... have passed the exam, even if he had studied harder.
    a. shouldn't   b. couldn't   c. won't   d. shall
13. I expect they .... the match tomorrow.
    a. win   b. will win   c. are winning   d. are going to win
14. If Mona had come ten minutes earlier, she .... her boss.
    a. would meet   b. will meet   c. meets   d. would have met
15. The exams are next week. I .... work harder.
    a. mustn't   b. don't have to   c. shouldn't   d. must
16. At our school we .... wear a uniform. It's obligatory to wear it.
    a. have to   b. doesn't have to   c. shouldn't   d. mustn't

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

When Helen Keller was a small baby, she had a very high fever for several days. As a result of her sudden illness, she lost her eyesight and her hearing. Because she was so young when she went deaf and blind, Helen Keller never had any recollection of being able to see or hear. Since she could not hear, she could not learn to talk. Since she could not see, it was difficult for her to move around. For the first six years of her life, her world was very still and dark. She could not communicate with her parents in any way. She could not express her feelings or tell them the things she wanted. It must have been a very sad childhood.

When Helen was six years old, her parents hired her a teacher named Anne Sullivan. Anne was a young woman who was almost blind. However, she could hear and she could read Braille, so she was a perfect teacher for young Helen. At first, Anne had a very hard time teaching Helen anything. She described her first impression of Helen as a "wild thing, not a

child." Helen did not like Anne at first either. She bit and hit Anne when Anne tried to teach her. However, the two of them eventually came to have a great deal of love.

Anne taught Helen to hear by putting her hands on people's throats. She could feel the sounds that people made. In time, Helen learned to feel what people said. Next, Anne taught Helen to read Braille, which is a way that books are written for the blind. Finally, Anne taught Helen to talk. Although Helen did learn to talk, it was hard for anyone but Anne to understand her.

As Helen grew older, more and more people were amazed by her story. She went to college and wrote books about her life. She gave talks to the public, with Anne at her side, translating her words. Today, both Anne Sullivan and Helen Keller are famous women who are respected for their lives' work

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Helen Keller could not see and hear and so, what was her biggest problem in childhood?
 a. Inability to communicate b. Inability to walk
 c. Inability to play d. Inability to eat

2- Helen learned to hear by feeling the vibrations people made when they spoke. What were these vibrations were felt through?
 a. Mouth b. Throat c. Ears d. Lips

3- This passage can be part of a/an ----------.
 a. poster b. interview c. poem d. article

4- Helen Keller learned to speak but Anne translated her words when she spoke in public. The reason Helen needed a translator was because ----------.
 a. Helen spoke another language. b. Helen spoke very quietly.
 c. Helen's words were hard for people to understand
 d. Helen did not speak but only used sign language.

B: Answer the following questions:

5- Anne Sullivan was a patient teacher. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

6- Find words in the passage that mean:
 a. physically unable to hear anything
 b. admired by many people for good work or achievements

7- Helen Keller was born blind and deaf. Is that right? Give reasons for your answer.

8- Suggest a suitable title for the passage.

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- In some people's opinion, life is a constant struggle between good and evil. In others, it is nothing but a stage on which an actor is playing his part. Whether the two views are different or alike, it does not matter since the majority of people never worry about its nature.

B: Translate into English:

- إن الوقت كالسيف إن لم تقطعه قطعك، فالوقت قد يذهب هباءً دون أن يستفيد منه صاحبه وبالتالي يذهب من عمره، لذلك يجب علينا أن نحسن استغلال وقت الفراغ، فالذي يحسن استغلال وقته في سبيل منفعته لا يجد وقت فراغ.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

Describe what you would like a tourist to see in your country

TEST 11

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Shhh! You .... talk loud in the library.
 a. mustn't b. don't have to c. shouldn't d. must
2. We live in a small house, but my grandparents' house is even .... than ours.
 a. big b. small c. smaller d. the smallest
3. I have always been regarded as a .... by the local folk.
 a. foreign b. foreigner c. earner d. oyster
4. Beans and .... are a staple here in the South as a breakfast meal.
 a. court b. bricks c. cornbread d. rocks
5. Pumpkin .... is a traditional American dish served on Thanksgiving.
 a. pie b. tie c. lie d. die
6. It is not yet known whether these chemicals are .... to humans.
 a. bleeding b. prohibition c. courageous d. dangerous
7. Nobody can be an .... at everything.
 a. exsert b. expect c. intelligent d. expert
8. BBC is an .... for British Broadcasting Corporation.
 a. abbreviation b. application c. information d. imagination
9. European .... say olive oil could help prevent cancer.
 a. divers b. union c. searchers d. researchers
10. House prices dropped 8 .... last year.
 a. pies b. percipient c. percent d. percentage
11. You .... have called me when you arrived. I was very worried about you.
 a. shouldn't b. couldn't c. won't d. should
12. You .... wash your teeth before going to sleep.
 a. mustn't b. don't have to c. shouldn't d. must
13. The doctor told me that I could go back to work if I feel .... tomorrow.
 a. bad b. more good c. best d. better
14. We have only little time for this exercise, but in the examination we'll have even .... time.
 a. least b. many c. most d. less

5. If it .... so heavily, we would not have had floods.
a. didn't rain b. hadn't rained c. rained d. rain

6. - What's your plan for the next Ramadan? - I .... Omra.
a. 'm performing b. 'll perform c. perform d. 'm going to perform

B Reading Comprehension

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Solar power is technology that uses energy from the sun. The sun's heat and light can be turned into electricity. Scientists are now working on ways to use solar power instead of petrol of vehicles. Solar-powered vehicles have batteries which are charged by the sun's rays. Unfortunately, the batteries run out very quickly and it takes a long time to charge them again.

Students at Dovedale High School in the UK were learning about solar power in their science classes. They decided to build a solar-powered bicycle and enter an international solar bike race. They had to raise money for the project, design and build the bike and train for the race. Local companies helped by giving them money and equipment. The students also raised money by selling T-shirts with a picture of their bike on the front. While the rest of the team built the bike, the rider trained hard. Solar bike riders use the pedals of the bike in the usual way so they have to be fit. The solar-powered motor just gives them extra speed.

The race was in Missouri where the land is flat and the sun shines strongly. The riders had to do 13 laps of the course. They then had a two-hour break to re-charge their batteries. Finally, they had to do 12 more laps. Each lap was 4 km long. The team from Dovedale finished second and were very pleased with their result.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Why was the race in two parts?
a. So that the riders could have a rest.
b. So that the riders could have lunch.
c. So that they got the strongest sunshine.
d. So that the teams could recharge the batteries.

2- Something which is local ....
a. involves more than one country b. relates to a particular place or area
c. has a lot of money d. is connected with technolog

3- The underlined pronoun "their" refers to the ....
a. classes b. students c. cars d. results

4- The underlined word "unfortunately" is close in meaning to ....
a. luckily b. unluckily c. likely d. unlikely

B: Answer the following questions:

5- What is the main idea of the passage?

6- What disadvantage do solar-powered vehicles have?

7- Name two ways the students raised money for their project.
8- Why were the team from Dovedale pleased with their result?

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- The United Nations has its specialized agencies all over the world. One of them is the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organizations (UNESCO). Food production, the most urgent problem for many parts of the world, is being dealt with by the Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO).

B: Translate into English:

- يلاحظ أن ظاهرة الإدمان لم تعد مقصورة على الأغنياء فقط بل أصبح الأمر يشمل فئات من الطبقات الفقيرة وربما بشكل أكبر من عدد الأغنياء المدمنين كما كان تناول المخدرات يقتصر في الماضي بصورة كبيرة على فئة الذكور أما الآن فأصبحت فئة الإناث أيضًا تتعاطى المخدرات المختلفة.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

Computers in Society

TEST 12

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I live in a large family, but my grandfather lived in a .... one.
   a. larger b. large c. more larger d. most largest
2. The children are .... to each other in age.
   a. close b. clause c. open d. forward
3. In 19th century England, ... diseases were the principal cause of death.
   a. intelligent b. infectious c. cautious d. marvelous
4. If you put your .... in me, I will not let you down.
   a. trust b. loyal c. inherit d. deserve
5. Don't .... him a cigarette, he's trying to give up.
   a. offer b. smoke c. damage d. offend
6. Many birds can't .... the severe winter.
   a. fly b. deceive c. hurt d. survive

1. I find men look more .... as they age.
 a. attractive b. attract c. attracted d. attracted
2. Fortunately, there are things we can do to help keep our homes and families ....
 a. safe b. safari c. safety d. save
3. There are changes in the number and species of .... and bacteria
 a. algae b. algebra c. Algeria d. Algerian
4. John .... have left early, then he wouldn't have missed the plane
 a. shouldn't b. couldn't c. won't d. should
5. If I .... a taxi, I'd have arrived on time.
 a. have taken b. had taken c. took d. take
6. You .... eat fruit and vegetables to be healthy.
 a. mustn't b. don't have to c. shouldn't d. must
7. Children .... interrupt when adults are speaking.
 a. mustn't b. don't have to c. should d. must
8. My mother has a soft voice, but my teacher's voice is .... than hers.
 a. softest b. more softer c. softer d. health
9. Here is Eman. She's six years old. Her brother is nine, so he is ....
 a. old b. older c. more older d. oldest
10. .... you be going to Alexandria again this summer?
 a. Will b. Shall c. Would d. Should

B Reading Comprehension

1. **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

There are nearly a thousand different species of bats throughout the world, ranging in size from just over two centimetres to nearly two metres from wing to wing. They live on every continent except Antarctica. Most bats feed on insects, but some eat fruit, nectar from flowers and even small animals such as fish, frogs and mice. Vampire bats from South America eat blood, which they suck from animals or birds. The host animal is not injured as the bat takes only a little blood, but bats that feed in this way can spread disease and are unpopular with farmers.

Insect-eating bats are very helpful to humans. A single little brown bat can catch around 1200 insects in one hour and in many places farmers rely on bats to reduce the amount of chemical pesticides needed to keep insects from damaging their crops.

Many people believe that bats are blind, but this is not true. <u>They</u> can see, but as they are nocturnal they use a special system called echolocation to move around in the darkness. Echolocation is rather like radar: the bat makes a high-frequency sound and then listens for the echo to bounce off objects in front of it. It is then able to form a picture in its brain of the surrounding area and can avoid **<u>predators</u>**, fly around objects and find and catch food in total darkness.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- For farmers, bats can make up for the absence of ....

a. predators b. pictures c. fruits d. insecticides

2- A nocturnal animal is ....

a. an animal which feeds on insects
b. an animal which sucks blood from a host
c. an animal that feeds and moves around at night
d. an animal that uses echolocation to find its way around

3- A "**predator**" is ....

a. an animal that kills other animals
b. an animal eaten by other animals
c. an animal hunted by other animals
d. an animal that kills and eats other animals

4- The **underlined** pronoun "They" refers to ....

a. people b. bats c. predators d. pesticides

B: Answer the following questions:

5- What is the one place in the world where you cannot see a bat?
6- Why are bats both popular and unpopular with farmers?
7- How does echolocation help bats to fly around at night?
8- Mention in detail the main idea of the passage.

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- We can not go on working without stopping to have some rest. If we did not, we could make mistakes and our work might get worse. Sleep is one of the ways in which nature renews our energy.

B: Translate into English:

- تعدّ السياحة في مصر أحد أهم مصادر الدخل القومي بما توفره من عائدات سنوية، حيث أن مصر تعد من أبرز الدول السياحية في العالم بما تستحوذ عليه من أعداد السائحين الوافدين في العالم، وتميزها بوفرة المزارات السياحية على اختلاف أنواعها.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

Why is physical activity important for you?

TEST 13

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. School is boring, but homework is .... boring than school.
   a. more b. most c. many d. much
2. My favourite meal is .... and caviar.
   a. oysters b. dogs c. donkeys d. buffalos
3. She has been a good and .... friend to me.
   a. false b. deceitful c. loyalty d. loyal
4. My chest felt painful, and I was .... uncontrollably.
   a. covering b. coughing c. weaving d. waving
5. The body often .... to stress by becoming ill.
   a. responds b. calls c. answers d. asks
6. He .... have told the truth about what he saw, but he lied.
   a. shouldn't b. couldn't c. won't d. should
7. This .... will give your snapshots a vintage look.
   a. cap b. app c. ape d. sab
8. The internet sometimes makes you lose .... in your real life.
   a. interesting b. interest c. interested d. interact
9. Some people are .... modern technology, others are against it.
   a. for b. again c. to d. favour
10. If I .... you, I would do research into new kinds of wheat.
    a. am b. were c. is d. had been
11. You .... go to the doctor because you're very ill.
    a. mustn't b. don't have to c. shouldn't d. must
12. I will inform you as soon as I .... home tomorrow.
    a. will arrive b. had arrived c. arrive d. arrived
13. Football is .... popular than handball.
    a. little b. most c. more d. much
14. This magazine is cheap, but that one is ....
    a. cheap b. many cheap c. more cheaper d. cheaper
15. She .... to understand most of what we say.
    a. seems b. was seemed c. seeming d. is seeming
16. If you want to be healthy, you .... do some exercise.
    a. mustn't b. don't have to c. shouldn't d. should

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Press freedom is under assault around the world. This has been the most urgent case this year, including journalists receiving threats, subjected to unfair trials, and their murders left unsolved.

Many people think they can avoid bad publicity by threatening journalists with violence, or with legal action. Such threats should always be resisted.

Junior journalists should always report any threat which they have received to their editor. If the threat was a threat of violence, then the editor should seriously consider informing the police. It is usually a criminal offence to threaten violence against somebody, and journalists are protected by such a law as much as anybody else.

If the threat is of legal action, then the editor's response will depend upon the facts of the case. The editor should know the law well enough to judge whether or not to take the threat seriously. If he suspects that there may be grounds for legal action, he should **consult** a lawyer. Then, if he finds that he or his reporter is in the wrong, of course he should immediately set things right. If, however, he finds that there is no basis for legal action, then he and his reporter can happily ignore the empty threat.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Dealing with threats needs an editor who is .... about law.
a. ignorant b. lawyer c. knowledgeable d. offensive

2- Editors and journalists don't care about threats if ....
a. they are violent b. they are in the right
c. they do illegal actions d. they are suspected

3- The **underlined** word "**consult**" may be replaced by ....
a. advise b. ask for advice c. doubt d. attack

4- The passage may be taken out of ....
a. magazine b. dictionary
c. story d. poem

B: Answer the following questions:

5- Why do some people give threat to journalists?
6- When does an editor have to take legal advice?
7- What two kinds of threats do journalists receive?
8- Give your opinion concerning violence towards others.

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- Why do we no longer think of the beauty of nature? Have we stopped enjoying an attractive scene? We wonder what the reason is. Is it the rush of the modern life, or the heavy burden of earning a living?

Translate into English:

- يشتكي العديد من الآباء من سلوكيات أطفالهم غير المرغوبة، ويحاولون بشتى الطرق تغييرها ولكنهم لا يفلحون. لذلك ر... الآباء الاهتمام جيدًا بالعلاقة التي تربطهم معهم لأنها تبني شخصيتهم المستقبلية.

D Writing

Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

Has reading become an old-fashioned habit?



TEST 14

A Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You're ---------- yourself if you think he'll change his mind.
   a. deceiving b. receiving c. achieving d. cheated
2. He did wrong, and he got what he ----------.
   a. succeeded b. deserved c. served d. respected
3. Everyone has a right to be treated with ----------.
   a. compare b. respect c. aspect d. aspirate
4. I think the internet is the best ---------- ever.
   a. invention b. machine c. discovery d. exploration
5. Measure the ---------- between the two points.
   a. distract b. distant c. distantly d. distance
6. Students can ---------- an electronic program app on their phones.
   a. upload b. downside c. downpour d. download
7. She pulled her knees to her chest, and hugged them ----------.
   a. fight b. tight c. height d. light
8. He was ---------- from a gash جرح بليغ on his head.
   a. bleeding b. breeding c. building d. breathing
9. Of all the students in the class, Nancy is the ----------.
   a. thin b. thinner c. thinnest d. most thinnest
10. If the money he had, ---------- enough, he would have built a new hospital.
    a. has been b. had c. had been d. had to
11. I'm sorry that I'm late for work. I ---------- have woken up earlier.
    a. shouldn't b. could c. won't d. should
12. In my opinion, the population of Egypt ---------- by 20 % next year.
    a. is increasing b. has increased c. is going to increase d. will increase
13. Gold is ---------- expensive than silver.
    a. more b. most c. many d. much

14. She .... have been on that flight because I just saw her at work.
    a. shouldn't b. could c. won't d. couldn't
15. You .... smoke in the theatre because smoking is forbidden.
    a. mustn't b. needn't c. hadn't to d. oughtn't
16. It was very kind of her to bring me some flowers, but she .... have done it.
    a. needn't b. doesn't need c. should d. must

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

'Family' is a single word, with many different meanings. People have many ways of defining a family and what being a part of a family means to them. Families differ in terms of economic, cultural, social, and many other facets.

Family is an important social organization and the basic unit of social life. It is the cradle of civic virtues. According to some philosophers: "The family takes the individual, out of himself, into life of loyalty, cooperation, altruism الإيثار, self-control, and sympathy." The process of socialization starts in the family and this prepares the child for a world outside his home. It not only enables him to identify himself as an individual but also prepares him to be an ideal citizen.

Qualities of obedience and discipline are imbibed in the child within a family. Obeying and respecting the elders in a family result in a disciplined life. These qualities enable the child to be a good citizen and abide by the laws laid down by the government.

Qualities of tolerance and sacrifice are also instilled within the family. The younger generation may not agree with the ideas of the elders in the family, but they still **accommodate** their viewpoints, opinions and beliefs. This quality has a great value because of the diversity تنوع in our society.

Parents happily sacrifice their resources, for the child's education and thus teach him/her to be devoted.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Parent's sacrifices for their children help to make them ....
   a. ready to help others b. hate their parents
   c. mock old people d. devote their time for evil
2- The family is the basic provider of .... for their children.
   a. crimes b. virtues c. vice d. cheating
3- The **underlined** word "**accommodate**" may be replaced by ....
   a. accept b. refuse c. refute d. construct
4- The antonym of the **underlined** word "**disciplined**" may by ....
   a. careful b. planned c. neat d. disorganized

B: Answer the following questions:

5- What makes a child ready to face social variation?
6- How is the child prepared for dealing with the outside world?
7- Mention four values a family can teach a child.
8- Give your opinion regarding the importance of a family.

C Translation

A: Translate into Arabic:

...d habits are not easy to uproot. In spite of anti smoking campaigns, people keep on smoking more and more than before. They claim that smoking helps them think over ...fficult matters. Some others believe firmly that it is a perfect way of getting over stress ...nd trouble.

...anslate into English:

- البحث العلمي هو أمل الشعوب؛ من أجل التمتع بالرفاهية، وإيجاد الحلول لمختلف المُعضلات التي تتعرض لها المجتمع... سواء على الجانب العلمي أو المجتمعي.

D Writing

Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

How to share in the progress of our country

TEST 15

A Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

...He lies .... at night worrying about his job.
a. awake b. week c. awash d. award

...She is looking for a job .... to home.
a. causer b. closer c. cluster d. exposer

...I didn't intend to show any ...., sir. It was just a joke.
a. aspect b. disrespect c. respect d. affect

...Our local university offers a .... of language courses.
a. vary b. variable c. various d. variety

...Family .... prevented her from telling what she knew.
a. quantity b. turkey c. loyalty d. loyal

...Most e-books will be available .... in the future.
a. online b. outline c. line d. offline

...I'm going to .... some information about space invasion from the internet.
a. download b. unload c. overload d. upload

...Young people are .... for protecting their country's folk music.
a. responsible b. responsive c. ability d. responsibility

...She would have been successful if she .... well.
a. plans b. planned c. had planned d. has planned

...I .... probably be away for a week this summer.
a. am going to b. had to c. would d. will

11. He has plenty of money, so he .... worry about earning a living.
 a. needn't b. mustn't c. don't have d. should have
12. Haneen is .... thoughtful person I've ever met.
 a. more b. most c. much d. the most
13. Of all the taxi drivers, Ali is .... careful.
 a. more b. most c. much d. the most
14. My dog is the .... of all the dogs in the neighborhood.
 a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. most biggest
15. I .... have yelled at you yesterday. I'm sorry.
 a. shouldn't b. could c. won't d. should
16. This is a one-way street. You .... go that way.
 a. mustn't b. needn't c. shouldn't d. aren't

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Sometimes you may think, the city life is better than village life. However there are so many advantages and disadvantages in city life. Actually the city life is more comfortable. Moreover, there are a lot of facilities for people and they have more opportunities for making money and progressing in their lives. Children can get a good education, because there are better schools in the city than in the village. When a person falls ill, there are good government and private hospitals to get treatment. There are large shop complexions, banks, offices, cinemas, hostels, clubs, hospitals etc. in and around the city. People have better transport facilities than people inthe village. There is electricity, highway, communication, telecommunication and plumb facilities. However, the cost of living is very high in the city. Most goods are very expensive. There is no fresh air and pure water. The environment is polluted with dust, smoke, garbage and dioxide gases from factories. Most of the people who live in the city are corrupted, so lots of crimes such as thefts and murders often take place there. The city is always busy and noisy. There are a lot of vehicles and people in the road. The streets are dusty and unclean. So it is hard to lead a healthy life in the city.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- One of the disadvantages of city life is ....
 a. the absence of corruption b. the high cost of living
 c. the telecommunication facilities d. the fresh air people breathe

2- People living in cities have more .... to achieve progress.
 a. obstacles b. drawbacks c. chances d. complexions

3- According to the writer's point of view, the city life ....
 a. has only merits b. has only demerits
 c. has both merits and demerits d. has to be abandoned

4- The **underlined** word "**garbage**" may be replaced by ....
 a. litter b. air c. letter d. both a & b

B: Answer the following questions:

5- What makes it difficult to live a healthy life in the city?

6- How are the conditions of health and education better in cities?
7- How high is the level of rot in cities?
8- Would you like to live in a city or a village? Why?

C Translation

3 **A: Translate into Arabic:**

- A punctual person is always in the habit of doing his / her work in the proper time and is never late in keeping an appointment. On the other hand, an unpunctual person is a source of annoyance both to himself / herself and others. He is always in a hurry and in the end he / she loses both time and his / her good name.

B: Translate into English:

- تعد المياه إلى جانب الهواء من أهم عناصر الحياة، ولكنها تعتبر مع الأسف من الموارد غير المتجددة، والتي قد يؤدي الاستخدام غير المنظّم لها إلى نفاذها في المستقبل القريب.

D Writing

4 **Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:**

The mobile phone is a mixed blessing

TEST 16

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My brother and I always had .... rooms .
   a. despair b. separate c. desperate d. aspirate
2. I don't pretend to be an .... on the subject.
   a. exsert b. expect c. intelligent d. expert
3. Most creatures have some .... features.
   a. common b. comment c. complaint d. insulated
4. It is .... to find such loyalty these days.
   a. pair b. dear c. rare d. bare
5. The shop left the old place and moved to a more .... address.
   a. old-fashioned b. fashionable c. out off fashion d. fation
6. This data is still .... for download on the company's website.
   a. available b. availability c. vertical d. loyal
7. Whose .... is it to organize this meeting with the foreign group?
   a. responsible b. responsibility c. responsibly d. respond
8. The poet compares the girl .... a sea.
   a. for b. of c. at d. to

9. If you had an invitation to the party, you .... in easily.
   a. would allow
   b. would have been allowed
   c. would be allowed
   d. would have been allowing
10. You should have studied. You .... have played video games all weekend.
   a. shouldn't
   b. could
   c. won't
   d. should
11. He .... a geologist when he leaves university. This is his plan.
   a. is going to become
   b. will become
   c. becomes
   d. is becoming
12. You .... follow the doctor's prescription to get well soon.
   a. may
   b. would
   c. need
   d. have to
13. My grandpa is .... than my grandma.
   a. old
   b. older
   c. oldest
   d. the oldest
14. Your mother's cooking is .... than my mother's cooking.
   a. bad
   b. worse
   c. the worst
   d. best
15. Shery is happier today .... she was yesterday.
   a. then
   b. so
   c. than
   d. that
16. You .... brought such heavy clothes. It's not that cold in Luxor.
   a. mustn't have
   b. can't have
   c. ought to have
   d. needn't have

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Specific symptoms of mental illness are related to suicide attempts and completed suicide. A feeling of hopelessness, being unable to imagine that things could get better, is common in depression and related to suicide attempts. Sometimes these feelings can be due to being bullied, abused, raped, or put through other trauma. Helplessness, a sense that nothing can be done to change things or to solve their problems, is also a common cause. Stress levels are also connected to suicide rates. People who feel isolated or different may turn to suicide attempts as an escape. Similarly, veterans of the military, especially those who have served in combat or wartime, are at increased risk of suicide. Loss is also a reason people consider suicide. Loss could include the death of a friend, family member, or loved one. Other triggers may include a breakup, loss of a romantic relationship, a move to another place, loss of housing, a loss of privilege or status, or a loss of freedom. It could be financial losses such as losing a job, a house, or business.

Certain religious beliefs may influence people to commit suicide. Some religions may leave people feeling guilty for things they have done and may lead them to believe they can't be forgiven. Some individuals may believe that sacrificing **their** lives will earn them a reward like going to heaven.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- .... makes people commit suicide to get rid of their guilt.
   a. Freedom
   b. Depression
   c. Religion
   d. Stress

2- Some people resort to suicide attempts to escape from ....
   a. death
   b. heaven
   c. the army
   d. isolation

3- The underlined word "**their**" refers to ....
   a. lives
   b. individuals
   c. rewards
   d. religions

4- Some people commit suicide because of a high level of ....
a. stress b. freedom c. feeling d. imagination

B: Answer the following questions:

5- What kinds of losses can lead to suicide?

6- What is the distinction between helplessness and hopelessness?

7- What often causes people to feel depressed?

8- Suggest a suitable title for the passage.

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- To bring up a child is a very complex process. The father and the mother are the child's first educator. Every mistake they make in bringing up their children is a battle lost in the fight for a better future. Children should be armed with good qualities in order to become good citizens

B: Translate into English:

- من المتعارف عليه أن الرياضة مفيدة لصحتك البدنية، ولكن هل تعرف أنها تؤثر إيجاباً على صحتك النفسية أيضاً؟ النشاط البدني يعمل على تحفيز المواد الكيميائية المتواجدة في المخ، والتي تجعلك تشعر بالسعادة والاسترخاء.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

Your plans for next year.

TEST 17

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can't think of any possible .... for his absence.
   a. evacuation b. application c. expression d. explanation
2. I asker her whether she was married or not. She answered almost ....
   a. immediately b. emergency c. regularly d. prohibit
3. She wants to be a/an .... mother, staying at home and looking after the children.
   a. old-fashioned b. fashion c. out off fashion d. updated
4. We must .... for a drink sometimes.
   a. get among b. get other c. get another d. get together
5. Her family .... with horror when she told them about the crime.
   a. reacted b. prohibited c. bled d. laughed

6. Today, you can also use digital libraries, where thousands of books and magazines are .... to people online.
   a. popularity b. availability c. available d. invaluable
7. The doctor suggested that my father should spend a few days at his own .... hospital.
   a. private b. particular c. pirate d. privet
8. My mother has a .... that children learn best by playing games.
   a. believer b. believable c. believe d. belief
9. If Egypt had a lot of rain, it .... a lot more trees.
   a. may have b. had had c. might have d. will have
10. If I had gone to college, I .... have got a better job.
    a. shouldn't b. could c. won't d. should
11. I want to buy a new villa, so I .... save a lot of money.
    a. am going to b. will c. going to d. will be
12. When we were children, we didn't have e-mails so we .... write letters.
    a. must b. had to c. have to d. has to
13. You don't need .... add more salt to this dish.
    a. for b. on c. to d. of
14. Ramy did .... than he thought he would do on his test.
    a. bad b. worse c. the worst d. best
15. I did .... out of all the students on my test.
    a. bad b. worse c. the worst d. best
16. The two guys who enjoyed the game .... were Felo and Bebo.
    a. fewer b. most c. many d. few

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Everything in our world can be useful or harmful according to the way we use them. A knife is certainly useful because we use it for cutting things, but it is harmful in the hands of a child or a mad man. Fire is necessary for us because it gives us heat and light and helps us cook our food, however it can be the cause of death and destruction if it is used carelessly. On the other hand poison, which is certainly harmful, can be helpful when <u>it</u> is used, for example in treating a sick man. We can make good use of anything, if we ourselves are good. In the hands of a bad person everything is bad and destructive. On the contrary, in hands of a good person everything is good and useful. Money which can be spent on making guns, bombs and poisonous gases, can be spent on useful purposes such as reclaiming the desert, building new cities, treating sick people and so on. So, the only way to make life better is to make ourselves better. The world around us is nothing but a mirror in which we see ourselves.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The underlined word "it" refers to ....
   a. money b. death c. poison d. hand

2- Fire can cause .... when used in a carless way.
a. damage b. benefit c. promotion d. innovation

3- According to the passage, ... is a double - edged weapon.
a. a gun b. money c. a mirror d. death

4- A child may use a knife ....
a. reasonably b. carefully c. carelessly d. clearly

B: Answer the following questions:

5- What are the things mentioned in the passage that can have good or bad use?
6- How can we make good use of money?
7- Why do you think poison is useful?
8- Suggest a suitable tille for the passage.

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- All future progress depends on the abolition of war which eats up the wealth and energy of man. It destroys man and the products of his skill and labour. Each war is more destructive than the last, not only in its immediate, but in its more lasting effects.

B: Translate into English:

- الانترنت وشبكات التواصل الاجتماعي فتحت الباب على مصراعيه أمام الشباب للانفتاح على ثقافات العالم من حولهم.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

Watching and playing football is the most enjoyable hobby for many people.

TEST 18

A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This wealthy woman raises money to help poor and .... people.
a. ability b. disability c. disabled d. able

2. I must have caught a .... on holiday. I feel sick.
a. virus b. organ c. cell d. fish

3. She was admired for her deep .... to her colleagues.
a. quantity b. turkey c. loyalty d. loyal

4. I was still .... when he came to the room. I could feel him.
   a. awake   b. living   c. asleep   d. awoke
5. As you probably know, people in China usually use .... to eat their food.
   a. spears   b. chopsticks   c. sowrds   d. guns
6. Customs are things that people do because they are ....
   a. conditional   b. eventual   c. controversial   d. traditional
7. He walked away suffering from nothing more than .... pride.
   a. injuries   b. injury   c. injured   d. injure
8. He was known to be an expert .... Arab culture.
   a. with   b. by   c. for   d. on
9. Riders of motorcycles .... wear helmets.
   a. must   b. can't   c. mustn't   d. may
10. He said to his guest, "If you don't like the tea, you .... drink it. I'll bring you orange juice."
   a. must   b. should   c. have to   d. needn't
11. Water .... if the temperature is zero or below.
   a. will freeze   b. would freeze   c. freezes   d. can freeze
12. She .... have won the gold medal if she hadn't fallen three times.
   a. shouldn't   b. could   c. won't   d. should
13. I expect he .... pass his exams easily.
   a. would   b. should   c. will   d. must
14. It was a very happy day. It was .... of my life.
   a. happy   b. happier   c. happiest   d. the happiest
15. These sofas are .... comfortable than ours.
   a. more   b. most   c. many   d. the most
16. Mr Hosam is supposed .... the representative of our company in the conference.
   a. being   b. be   c. to be   d. to being

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Television has been changing the way people live for thirty years. **It** influences nearly every aspect of modern life: how people use leisure time, how news is reported, how information is learned, and how people think and feel. Children are particularly susceptible to the effects of television because their minds are growing, developing and learning much faster than those of adults. Whereas television could be used as an educational tool for children, more often simple, entertaining cartoons with little or no educational value are shown.

Social scientists, teachers and parents are troubled by the kinds of television programs children choose to watch. These groups of people are concerned about the media's effect on young children. They are worried about the effects of televised violence on society as well as commercials for sugar-rich food. According to several studies, televised violence may cause children to become more aggressive. Also, because so much violence is seen by children on

television, they become more used to it as the only solution to difficult situations. Exposing children to advertisements about products containing a lot of sugar has a bad effect on their health. These food products have a negative influence on their teeth and on proper nutrition.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The best title for this passage is ....

a. The Effects of Television on Society
b. The Negative Effects of Television on Children
c. The Effects of Television on Children's Behaviour
d. The Influence of Television on Reading

2- The underlined word "It" refers to ....

a. children b. television c. violence d. solution

3- Children's minds grow .... than adult's minds.

a. slower b. deeper c. faster d. lazier

4- Commercials may have a .... effect an children's health.

a. bad b. possitive c. good d. proper

B: Answer the following questions:

5- How has television affected children's behaviour?
6- How has television affected children's health?
7- Why are children more likely to be affected by TV?
8- How can television be used usefully for children?

C Translation

3 A: Translate into Arabic:

- Our world has become smaller than before due to rapid means of transport and communication. We can get to any part of the world by air, sea and land. By means of the mobile and internet we can communicate with people wherever they are in no time.

B: Translate into English:

- المعرفة قوة، وهى ما يميز البشر عن غيرهم من المخلوقات. و الإنترنت يسهل علينا سبل المعرفة. فأجهزة الحاسب الآلي والإنترنت تُمكننا من الاتصال بكل أنحاء العالم.

D Writing

4 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following:

Thinking of others' problems is a must.